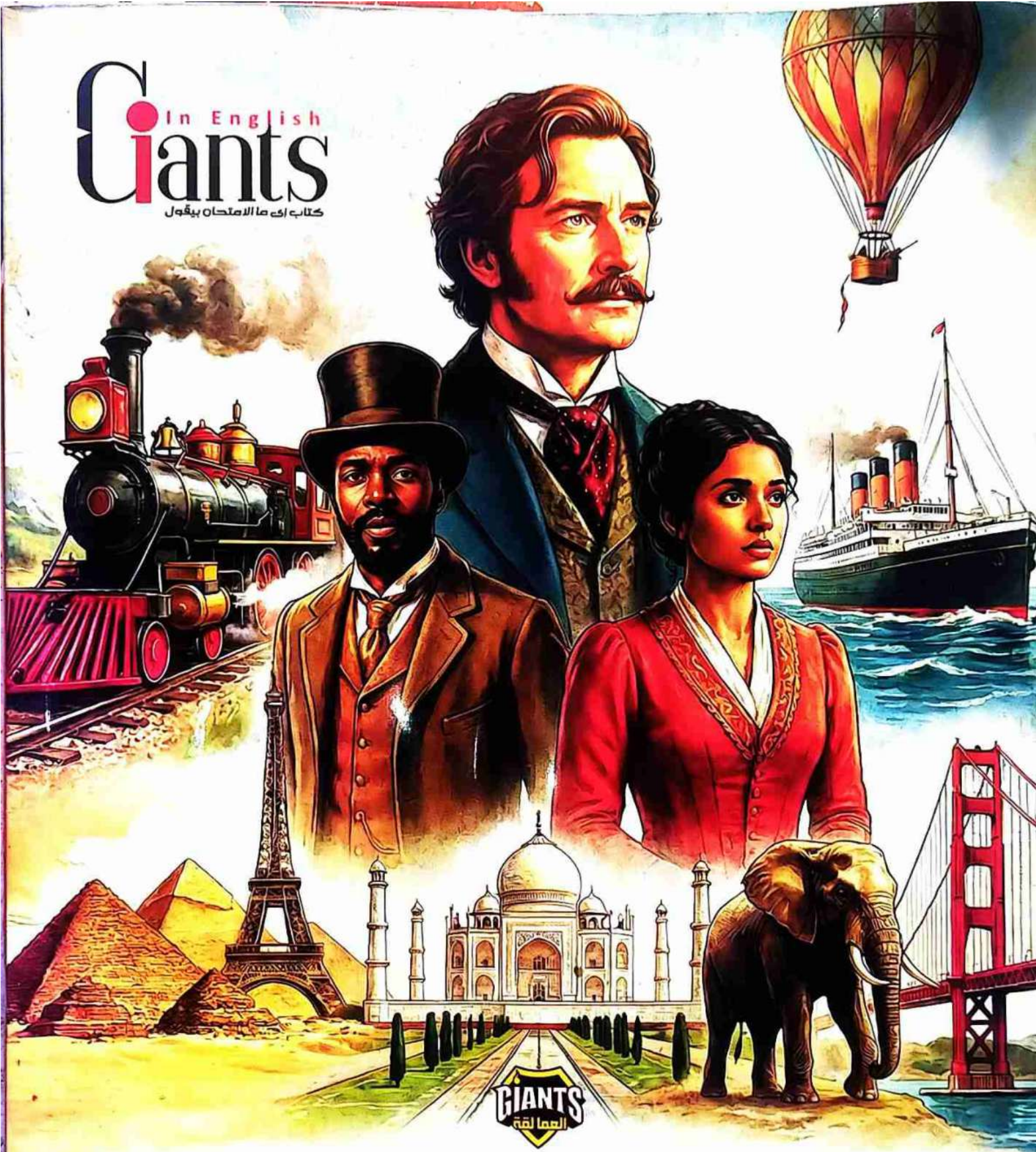


Giants
In English
كتاب إيه ما الامتحان بيقول



الصف الثاني الثانوي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني

English
& Around the world in 80 days



Unit 7 | Caring Communities

Learning Outcomes

Reading

- Skim a text about inclusive playgrounds to identify the main idea and general purpose of the text.
- Scan the text to locate specific information, such as examples of inclusive equipment or rules that promote fairness.

language

- If Clauses

Listening

- Recognize specific details heard in an audio recording regarding an "Inclusive Play Hour".
- Categorize three benefits of a "Gratitude Challenge" mentioned in an audio track.

Writing

- Write a 180-word problem-solution paragraph regarding a community issue like social isolation.

Speaking

- Describe a personal experience of inclusion in a 2-minute oral narrative.

Unit 7

Lessons

Caring Communities

- 1 Everyone Belongs to the Playground
- 2 Fairness & Taking Turns



Key Vocabulary

include (v)	يشمل / يضم	cooperation (n)	تعاون	empathy (n)	تعاطف
inclusive (adj)	شامل / يتضمن الجميع	belong (v)	ينتمي / يخص	respected (adj)	محترم / مقدر
value (n/v)	قيمة / يقدر	confident (adj)	واثق	background (n)	خلفية / بيئة
valued (adj)	مقدر / ذو قيمة	encourage (v)	يشجع	participate (v)	يشارك
diversity (n)	تنوع	invite (v)	يدعو	competition (n)	منافسة / مسابقة
fairness (n)	عدالة / إنصاف	community (n)	مجتمع	competitive (adj)	تنافسي

Main Vocabulary

shy (adj)	خجول	left out (adj)	مستبعد / غير مشارك	space (n)	مساحة / فراغ / مكان
create (v)	يخلق / ينتج	welcoming (adj)	مرحب / ودود	solve (v)	يحل
ignore (v)	يتجاهل	mixed (adj)	مختلط	pass (v)	يمر / ينجح / يجتاز
celebrate (v)	يحتفل بـ	lead (v)	يقود / يرشد	classmate (n)	زميل / زميلة في الصف
confuse (v)	يربك / يشوش	caring (n)	إهتمام / عناية	identify (v)	يجدد / يتعرف على
playground (n)	ملعب	challenge (n/v)	تحدي / يتحدى	friendly (adj)	ودود / لطيف
prepare (v)	يحضر / يعد	equipment (n)	معدات	chance (n)	فرصة
treat (v)	يعامل / يعالج	fairly (adv)	بعدل / بشكل منصف	self-assured	واثق من نفسه / مطمئن
guide (v)	يرشد / يوجه	differences (n)	اختلافات	leadership (n)	قيادة
responsibility (n)	مسؤولية	equally (adv)	بالتساوي / بنفس القدر	issue (n/v)	قضية / يصدر / يطرح
personality (n)	شخصية	matter (n)	مادة / أمر / قضية	wave (v)	يلوح
experience (n/v)	تجربة خبرة / يمر بـ	purpose (n)	هدف / غرض	swing (n)	أرجوحة
join (v)	ينضم إلى / يشارك	belonging (n)	شعور بالانتماء	slide (n/v)	منزلق / زلافة / يتزحلق

Collocations

feel welcoming	يشعر بالترحيب	make an effort	يبذل جهداً
feel included	يشعر بأنه جزء من المجموعة	make sure	يتأكد من
feel valued	يشعر بأن له قيمة	make space for	يفسح المجال لـ
feel respected	يشعر بالإحترام	build friendships	يبنى صداقات
feel left out	يشعر بالإقصاء / مستبعد	create a friendly environment	يخلق بيئة ودية
feel ignored	يشعر بالتجاهل	join an activity	ينضم إلى نشاط / يشارك في نشاط
take turns	يتناوب / يأخذ دوره	win a game	يفوز بمباراة
appreciate diversity	يقدر التنوع / يحترم الاختلاف	give a chance	يعطي فرصة

Expressions & Prepositions

support inclusive learning	يدعم التعلم الشامل	belong to	ينتمي إلى
an inclusive playground	ملعب شامل	good at	جيد في / ماهر في
mixed groups	مجموعات مختلطة	shout at	يصرخ في وجه
prepare them for life	يهيئهم للحياة	work together	يعمل معاً / يتعاون
play in silence	يلعب في صمت	treat ... with	يعامل ... بـ
Inclusive Play Hour	وقت مخصص للعب يشمل الجميع	stand alone	يقف بمفرده
Circle Challenge	لعبة أو نشاط يتم بشكل دائري لتعزيز المشاركة	It is your turn	حان دورك

Definitions

inclusive	شامل / يتضمن الجميع	▶ all people included
valued	مقدّر / ذو قيمة	▶ given importance or respect
diversity	تنوع	▶ different backgrounds or abilities
fairness	عدالة / إنصاف	▶ treating people equally
cooperation	تعاون	▶ working together peacefully
encourage	يشجع	▶ to give support, confidence, or hope to someone
confident	واثق	▶ feeling or showing certainty about something; self-assured
invite	يدعو	▶ to ask someone to come somewhere or to do something
include	يضم / يشمل	▶ to make someone or something part of a group or total
belong	ينتمي	▶ to be a member of a particular group or organization; to feel comfortable and accepted

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
inclusive	شامل / يتضمن الجميع	comprehensive, universal	exclusive, limited, partial
include	يضم / يشمل	contain, involve, comprise	exclude, leave out, omit, ignore
valued	مقدّر / ذو قيمة	appreciated, respected, esteemed	worthless, undervalued, hated
diversity	تنوع	variety, difference, distinction	similarity, sameness, equality
fairness	عدالة / إنصاف	justice, equality, equity	injustice, bias, discrimination
cooperation	تعاون	collaboration, partnership	conflict, opposition, disagreement
encourage	يشجع	motivate, inspire, support	discourage, demotivate, hinder
participate	يشارك	join, engage, take part, contribute	abstain, avoid, ignore, withdraw
empathy	تعاطف	compassion, sympathy, kindness	indifference, cruelty, apathy
respected	محترم / مقدّر	honored, esteemed, valued, trusted	dishonored, despised, undervalued
competition	منافسة / مسابقة	contest, rivalry, challenge	cooperation, agreement, collaboration

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
diversify	يُنوع	diversity	تنوع	diverse	متنوع
include	يضم / يشمل	inclusion	إدراج / شمول	inclusive	شامل
cooperate	يتعاون	cooperation	تعاون	cooperative	متعاون
empathize	يتعاطف	empathy	تعاطف	empathetic	متعاطف
encourage	يشجع	encouragement	تشجيع	encouraging	مشجع
participate	يشارك	participation	مشاركة	participatory	تشاركي



Language Notes



Notice the Difference

inclusive	شامل / يتضمن الجميع	↔	exclusive	حصري / خاص / يستثني الآخرين
shy	خجول	↔	ashamed	يشعر بالخجل أو العار بسبب فعل خاطئ
member	عضو في مجموعة أو نادي	↔	organ	عضو من أعضاء الجسم
responsible	مسؤول	↔	responsibility	المسؤولية
fair	عادل	↔	fairness	العدالة
safe	آمن	↔	safety	الأمان / السلامة
feel welcoming	الموضوع أو المكان أو الجو يعطي إحساس بالترحاب	↔	feel welcomed	الشخص نفسه يشعر بأنه مرحب به
community	مجتمع (عادة أصغر، مجموعة محددة من الناس)	↔	society	مجتمع (أكبر غالباً على مستوى مدينة أو دولة)

value, valuation, valued & valuable

value	يقدّر / يقيم / قيمة	▶ I really value your friendship.
valuation	تقدير / تقييم	▶ The house has a high valuation .
valued	مقدّر / ذو قيمة	▶ He is a valued employee in our company.
valuable	ثمين / ذو قيمة	▶ This necklace is extremely valuable .

respect, respected, respectable & respectful

respect	يحترم / احترام	▶ You should always show respect to your teachers.
respected	محترم / يحظى بالاحترام	▶ He is a highly respected scientist.
respectable	محترم / لائق اجتماعياً أو أخلاقياً	▶ He comes from a respectable family.
respectful	محترم / موقر في التعامل	▶ She gave a respectful bow to the elders.

experience & experiment

experience ⁽ⁿ⁾	خبرة (لا تعد)	▶ She has ten years of teaching experience .
experience ⁽ⁿ⁾	تجربة حياتية (تعد)	▶ Traveling abroad was an unforgettable experience .
experience ^(v)	يجرب / يمرّب	▶ She experienced a lot of challenges during her trip.
experiment ⁽ⁿ⁾	تجربة علمية	▶ He designed a new experiment to study plant growth.

include, contain & consist of

include	يشمل / يتضمن (جزءاً من الكل)	▶ The price includes taxes and service charges.
contain	يحتوي على (داخل شيء مادي أو معنوي)	▶ This article contains useful information.
consist of	يتكون من (الكل - الأجزاء)	▶ The team consists of ten skilled players.

make

make + object + inf.		▶ Studying history makes him appreciate his heritage.
make + object + adj. يجعل		▶ The sad movie made her unhappy .
be made + to + inf. يجبر		▶ He was made to apologize for his mistake.

Everyone Belongs to the Playground

What life skills do students learn from inclusive play?

A caring **community** ⁽¹⁾ is a place where everyone belongs, no matter their **background**, ⁽²⁾ abilities, or **personalities**. ⁽³⁾ One of the best examples of this is a school playground. Every day, students meet, play, and learn how to **build friendships**. But an **inclusive** ⁽⁴⁾ playground is more than **swings** and **slides**—it is a space where everyone **feels safe**, **respected**, and **valued**. ⁽⁵⁾



- (١) مجتمع
- (٢) خلفية
- (٣) شخصية
- (٤) شامل / جامع
- (٥) مقدر
- (٦) يدعو
- (٧) يقدر / يثمن
- (٨) تنوع
- (٩) يشارك
- (١٠) صراع / نزاع
- (١١) عدل / إنصاف
- (١٢) تعاضف
- (١٣) تعاون
- (١٤) مسؤولية

In an inclusive playground, students **take turns**, share **equipment**, and **invite** ⁽⁶⁾ others to join. When a new student arrives or someone is **shy**, classmates **make an effort** to speak kindly and **offer** help. These small **actions** create a friendly environment where no one **feels left out**. It is also a place where students learn to **appreciate** ⁽⁷⁾ **diversity**. ⁽⁸⁾ Some children may be good at sports, others at drawing, and some may have different needs. When students **celebrate** these differences, they begin to understand that diversity makes the community stronger.

Teachers also **play a role**. They **encourage** students to work in **mixed** groups so everyone can **participate**. ⁽⁹⁾ When **conflicts** ⁽¹⁰⁾ happen, they guide students to solve problems fairly. **Fairness** ⁽¹¹⁾ means giving each student a chance to play, listen, speak, or lead. Through these experiences, children learn important life skills like **empathy**, ⁽¹²⁾ **cooperation**, ⁽¹³⁾ and **responsibility**. ⁽¹⁴⁾

Inclusive play and learning prepare students for life. When we include others and **treat** them **with** fairness, we help **create a community** where everyone feels they truly belong.



Listening



At school, students enjoy a weekly **"Inclusive Play Hour."** During this time, everyone joins together in the playground. The goal is simple: to **make sure** ⁽¹⁾ every student feels welcome. Teachers remind students that games are more fun when everyone belongs.

Last Tuesday, the students played a team-building game called **"Circle Challenge."** ⁽²⁾ In the game, each student had to **pass** ⁽³⁾ a ball around the circle. **However**, they could only pass it when another classmate **encouraged** ⁽⁴⁾ them by saying, **"It's your turn!"** This rule helped shy students feel more **confident** ⁽⁵⁾ and **supported** ⁽⁶⁾.

During the game, a new student named Maya stood quietly at the back. She wasn't sure how to join. When Hana noticed her, she **waved** ⁽⁷⁾ and said, **"Come stand next to me. You're part of our team."** The other students smiled and made space for her. Maya felt safe, included, and ready to play.

By the end of the hour, the whole class learned an important lesson: when we listen, encourage, and **take turns**, everyone has a place in the community.

- (١) يتأكد
- (٢) تجلّدي
- (٣) يمرر
- (٤) يشجع
- (٥) واثق من نفسه
- (٦) مدعوم
- (٧) يلوح



Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

SB 73

1. Volunteers often help improve their
a. community b. routine c. schedule d. argument
2. The company's approach ensures no employee feels left out.
a. narrow b. limited c. restricted d. inclusive
3. Respecting elders is a/an quality in every civilized society.
a. dismissed b. valued c. ignored d. rejected
4. Promoting in society helps reduce conflicts and build trust.
a. fairness b. injustice c. corruption d. discrimination
5. The festival will performances from many talented young artists. It'll be amazing.
a. include b. separate c. dismiss d. reject
6. Companies benefit from workforce to encourage creativity and innovation.
a. similarity b. diversity c. playground d. community
7. The company aims to sustainable practices for long-term benefits.
a. abandon b. ignore c. dismiss d. value
8. Successful projects require teamwork, mutual trust, and close
a. competition b. rivalry c. cooperation d. conflict
9. Every student should feel that they to the school community.
a. belong b. exclude c. ignore d. abandon
10. She felt speaking in front of the large audience without hesitation.
a. nervous b. confident c. anxious d. shy
11. Volunteers community members to participate in local charity projects.
a. hinder b. prevent c. encourage d. punish
12. They neighbors to join the community clean-up event to include everyone.
a. reject b. invite c. refuse d. block
13. Students from different cultural brought diverse ideas to the discussion.
a. backgrounds b. habits c. personalities d. routines
14. There is fierce among students for top grades.
a. festival b. celebration c. competition d. event
15. Volunteers help the local by organizing events and supporting families.
a. community b. nation c. society d. social
16. Volunteers often show when helping victims of natural disasters.
a. apathy b. cruelty c. indifference d. empathy
17. The business environment is highly , requiring constant innovation and planning.
a. careless b. competitive c. relaxed d. indifferent
18. Citizens are encouraged to in local elections and public meetings.
a. neglect b. ignore c. participate d. avoid
19. means all people are included, no one is left out.
a. Exclusive b. Inclusive c. Separate d. Limited
20. means different backgrounds, cultures, or abilities within a group.
a. Cooperation b. Equality c. Inclusion d. Diversity
21. means given importance or respect by others.
a. Valued b. Ignored c. Hidden d. Ordinary

22. Honesty and hard work are highly in every successful company.
 a. neglected b. ignored c. valued d. rejected
23. means working together peacefully to achieve a common goal.
 a. Competition b. Cooperation c. Argument d. Conflict
24. Abu Hurayra was a/an companion of Prophet Muhammad for his knowledge.
 a. dismissed b. rejected c. ignored d. respected
25. To someone means to give them support, confidence, or hope.
 a. warn b. criticize c. encourage d. doubt



Exercise Ph

Main Vocabulary

26. Inclusive playgrounds encourage students to with each other. S3 R 3
 a. complain b. compete c. cooperate d. argue
27. People their cultural heritage through ceremonies and exhibitions.
 a. celebrate b. abandon c. reject d. confuse
28. Students who homework deadlines face penalties from teachers.
 a. obey b. follow c. respect d. ignore
29. Companies aim to new products that meet customer needs effectively.
 a. remove b. exclude c. create d. ignore
30. Hesitant and children often need encouragement to participate actively.
 a. confident b. shy c. bold d. outgoing
31. Parents have a/an to provide food, shelter, and education to their children.
 a. responsibility b. hobby c. entertainment d. indifference
32. Leaders must their teams with clear instructions and proper support.
 a. mislead b. confuse c. guide d. trick
33. The team must for emergencies with proper drills and procedures.
 a. avoid b. prepare c. confuse d. ignore
34. Doctors must patients with respect and provide proper medical care.
 a. treat b. ignore c. neglect d. confuse
35. She gained a lot of by volunteering in community service projects.
 a. routine b. experience c. obstacle d. experiment
36. Schools often organize outdoor activities on the to encourage exercise.
 a. library b. office c. classroom d. playground
37. Loud noises and distractions can people trying to concentrate on work.
 a. guide b. assist c. confuse d. clarify
38. Volunteers can community projects to gain experience and help others.
 a. join b. ignore c. avoid d. skip
39. She was chosen to the school's charity campaign this year.
 a. ignore b. challenge c. lead d. pass
40. Parents' can positively impact children's emotional and social development.
 a. neglect b. caring c. ignorance d. indifference
41. Every sport presents a unique that tests physical and mental strength.
 a. challenge b. space c. equipment d. personality
42. Teachers encouraged a/an approach in teaching, combining theory and practical activities.
 a. similar b. identical c. confusing d. mixed

43. Judges must evaluate contestants according to the competition rules.
 a. carelessly b. unfairly c. fairly d. fearful
44. Every student deserves a fair to show their talents and skills.
 a. danger b. risk c. obstacle d. chance
45. She tried to the conflict between her friends with patience and wisdom.
 a. guide b. solve c. raise d. promote
46. Students should handle school carefully to avoid damage or loss.
 a. empathy b. fairness c. responsibility d. equipment
47. Police officers must suspects quickly to prevent further crimes.
 a. identify b. identity c. care d. guide
48. Teachers encourage students to be toward classmates to maintain harmony.
 a. rude b. friendly c. unfriendly d. aggressive


Exercise 04
Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

49. Students may feel if teachers forget to include them in group activities.
 a. left out b. valued c. included d. respected
50. Students can show fairness by SB
 a. competing only b. shouting loudly c. playing alone d. taking turns
51. An inclusive community makes people feel..... SB R 3
 a. excluded b. ignored c. welcome d. confused
52. Visitors always welcomed in our school because teachers greet them kindly.
 a. make b. feel c. take d. give
53. Children will feel if teachers ensure activities involve every single student.
 a. unappreciated b. including c. excluded d. included
54. Everyone wants to feel for contributions they make to society and family.
 a. value b. valued c. valuable d. valuation
55. Children can feel if parents do not pay attention to their daily concerns.
 a. welcoming b. respected c. ignored d. appreciated
56. Everyone should an effort to improve teamwork and cooperation.
 a. make b. give c. take d. do
57. During group activities, participants will turns to complete the tasks effectively.
 a. make b. feel c. give d. take
58. Volunteers can friendships while helping people in local community services.
 a. build b. do c. give d. take
59. Teams will a game only if they cooperate, communicate, and play strategically.
 a. earn b. win c. gain d. lose
60. These traditions belong our cultural heritage and history.
 a. on b. for c. to d. by
61. Teachers prefer groups to prevent isolation among weaker students.
 a. separate b. individual c. similar d. mixed
62. The nurse treated the patient great care and kindness.
 a. for b. at c. with d. on
63. The school introduced a/an Play Hour to ensure everyone joins activities equally.
 a. Inclusive b. Private c. Isolated d. Ignored

64. The antique ring is extremely and should be handled carefully.
 a. value b. valuable c. respected d. fair
65. The scientist is a person who has contributed to many discoveries.
 a. respected b. respectful c. respectable d. respect
66. His rude behavior everyone feel uncomfortable.
 a. caused b. made c. allowed d. got

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

67. Inclusive communities help everyone feel valued. The antonym of valued is **SB R 3**
 a. respected b. appreciated c. hated d. worthless e. important
68. "Students should show fairness during group activities." The opposite of fairness is **SB R 3**
 a. treating people equally b. winning every time c. injustice
 d. honesty e. unfairness
69. A lack of empathy can lead to misunderstanding and conflict. The antonym of "empathy" is
 a. cruelty b. kindness c. compassion d. sympathy e. indifference
70. Our school organizes inclusive activities for all students. The synonym of "inclusive" is
 a. exclusive b. limited c. comprehensive d. partial e. universal
71. The price includes tax and service charges. The antonym of "include" is
 a. involve b. leave out c. comprise d. exclude e. contain
72. She is a valued employee who always delivers excellent results. The synonym of "valued" is
 a. appreciated b. ignored c. worthless d. respected e. undervalued
73. A leader with empathy can understand the needs of their team. The synonym of "empathy" is
 a. apathy b. kindness c. sympathy d. indifference e. cruelty
74. She is a highly respected scientist who inspires young researchers. The synonym of "respected" is
 a. undervalued b. dishonored c. despised d. esteemed e. valued
75. They worked together in full cooperation, avoiding any competition. The antonym of "competition" is
 a. cooperation b. challenge c. contest d. collaboration e. rivalry
76. The course is inclusive, covering both theory and practice. The antonym of "inclusive" is
 a. comprehensive b. full c. limited d. universal e. exclusive
77. She is respected by her colleagues for her honesty and dedication. The antonym of "respected" is
 a. dishonored b. undervalued c. valued d. esteemed e. honored
78. The tour package will include visits to several famous museums. The synonym of "include" is
 a. exclude b. leave out c. involve d. ignore e. contain

الجملة الشرطية

Conditional forms

الحالة الصفرية

Zero Conditional

Zero
conditional

Present simple

➡
Zمن المضارع البسيط (v : v + s)

Present simple

➡
Zمن المضارع البسيط (v : v + s)

Uses الاستخدامات

❗ تستخدم للتعبير عن حقائق علمية عامة وللتعبير عن عادات ثابتة لا تتغير ولا ترتبط بتوقيت معين:

- ★ If/ When you **heat** ice, it **melts**. ★ If/ When water **freezes**, **does** it **turn** into ice?
- ★ If/ When our heart **stops** working, death soon **follows**.
- ★ If/ When we **mix** white and red, we **get** pink.

❗ لا بد أن تكون الحقيقة عامة وليست خاصة وإذا كانت موقف خاص تستخدم الحالة الأولى وتتحول الحقيقة العامة إلى خاصة كما يلي:

① استخدام صفة إشارة (those / these / that / this) قبل الفاعل أو المفعول.

- ★ If metals **are heated**, they **expand**.
- ★ If **these** metals **are heated**, they **will expand**.

② استخدام صفة ملكية (my / his / her / its / your / our / their / ...'s...)

- ★ If the plants on **our** farm **get** very thirsty, we **will irrigate** them.

③ ارتباط حدوث الفعل بمكان محدد أو بتوقيت محدد أو ما يدل على ذلك.

- ★ Streets **will become wet** if it **rains** tonight.

الحالة الأولى

First Conditional

First
conditional

Present simple

➡
Zمن المضارع البسيط (v : v + s)

will + inf.

➡
أمر أو نهى can/may/should + inf.

Uses الاستخدامات

❗ تستخدم للتعبير عن إمكانية حقيقية لحدوث شيء في المستقبل تتوفر شروط حدوثه.

- ★ If you **study** hard, you **will succeed**.
- ★ If the bus **arrives** late again, I'll **phone** my mother.
- ★ Tarek is ill. If he's better tomorrow, he'll **come** to school.

❗ يمكننا استخدام الأمر أو النهى أو الطلب في جملة جواب الشرط:

- ★ If Jana **calls**, **tell** her I am here. ★ If she **comes** late, **don't allow** her to enter.
- ★ If you **have** free time, **can** you help me?

❗ يمكننا استخدام (may) في جملة جواب الشرط للتعبير عن الاحتمال أو (can) للتعبير عن المقدرة:

- ★ If Jana **studies** well, she **can get** high marks.
- ★ If Seif **looks** at me carefully, he **may recognise** me.

يمكننا استخدام (should) في جملة جواب الشرط للتعبير عن النصيحة أو (have to) للتعبير عن الإلزام.

- ★ If you **ask** me, you **should** see a doctor. ★ If Seif **comes** late, he **has to** apologise.
- يمكننا استخدام التعبيرات (I'd rather - I'd better - let's) في جملة جواب الشرط للتعبير عن الاقتراح و الرغبة.

- ★ If you **have** time, **let's go** to the cinema.
- ★ If you **have** time, **I'd rather go** to the cinema.
- ★ If you **have** time, **I'd better go** to the cinema.

الحالة الثانية

Second Conditional

Second conditional

Past simple

would + inf.



(شاذ أو v + ed) ماضى البسيط

could / might + inf.

Uses الاستخدامات

تعبّر الحالة الثانية عن موقف غير محتمل أو شيء تخيلي في المضارع.

- ★ If Toka **had** a **million** dollars, she **would buy** a big house.
- ★ If I **were** a bird, I **could fly**. ★ If I **studied hard**, I **would pass**.
- ★ If I **was / were** rich, I **would** build a palace.
- ★ If Egypt **had** a lot of rain, it **might** have a lot more trees.

تستخدم الحالة الثانية أيضا للتعبير عن النصيحة.

- ★ If I **were** you, I **wouldn't waste** my time. ★ If I **were** you, I **d help** poor people.
- ★ If I **were** you, I **d read** this useful book.

الحالة الثالثة

Third Conditional

Third conditional

Past perfect

would have + P.P



(had + P.P) ماضى التام

could / might have + P.P

Uses الاستخدامات

للتعبير عن استحالة الحدوث وتستخدم للانتقاد أو الندم في الماضي

- ★ If you **had gone** to the sports club, you **would / could / might have seen** Ali.
- ★ If I **had had** enough money yesterday, I **would / could / might have bought** that mobile phone.
- ★ If Toka **had left** earlier, she **wouldn't have missed** the train.

Between lines

① يتم حل جمل الاختياري عن طريق النظر إلى الجملة الكاملة سواء كانت جملة فعل الشرط أو جملة جواب الشرط ثم تحديد الحالة من الجملة الكاملة كما يلي:

- ★ If she..... up early, she **would catch** the train.

الجملة الكاملة هنا جملة جواب الشرط وبها **would + inf.** وهي تعبّر عن الحالة الثانية أى الاختيار الصحيح سوف يكون ماضى بسيط.

- ★ If she **had read** quickly, she ... the competition.

الجملة الكاملة هنا جملة فعل الشرط وبها **had + P.P** وهي تعبّر عن الحالة الثالثة أى الاختيار الصحيح سوف يكون به **would have + P.P**

٢ لاحظ كلمة **had** فقط تعبر عن الحالة الثانية أما **had + P.P** تعبر عن الحالة الثالثة:

- ★ If she **had** a car, she **would** be faster.
- ★ If she **had visited** Luxor, she **would have enjoyed**.

٣ لاحظ كلمة **would have** فقط تعبر عن الحالة الثانية أما **would have + P.P** تعبر عن الحالة الثالثة:

- ★ If she **started** saving, she **would have** a big sum of money.
- ★ If she **had started** saving, she **would have had** a big sum of money.

٤ لاحظ الجمل التالية:

- ★ If he **had** written works, he..... them.

(published - will publish - **would publish** - would have published)

١ هذه الجملة الحالة الثانية رغم وجود **had written** وذلك بسبب أن كلمة **written** هنا صفة مع كلمة **work** بمعنى عمل مكتوب وليست تصريف ثالث بعد **had**.

- ★ If the novel he had,...exciting, I **would have read** it. (had - had had - **had been** - been)

٢ هذه الجملة الحالة الثالثة وسوف نختار **had been** رغم وجود كلمة **had** بالجملة إلا أنها تتبع الفاعل.

٥ لاحظ أن بعض الأفعال الشاذة مثل (read - cut - set - put) تكون حالة ثانية إذا جاءت بعد فاعل مفرد بدون S

- ★ If she **read** quickly, her teacher her. (**would reward**)

١ الجملة الكاملة هنا جملة فعل الشرط **read** في الماضي فتكون الحالة الثانية أى الاختيار الصحيح سوف يكون **would + inf.**

٦ يمكن استخدام (الصفة أو التصريف الثالث) بعد **if**

- ★ I would come to the party if **invited**. (if I was invited)

٧ لاحظ التركيب التالي:

If it were not for
If it hadn't been for

+ v +
ing/n

→

subj. +

Would
Would have

+ inf.
+ P.P.

الحالة الثانية
الحالة الثالثة



Exercise 14

Language Level 1

1. If people treat each other with respect, communities stronger. **SB R 3**
a. become b. became c. will become d. would become
2. If he read the newspaper, he all the current news. **SB R 3**
a. would know b. will know c. knows d. 'd have known
3. If everyone follows the rules, activities fair. **SB R 3**
a. would remain b. remained c. will remain d. had remained
4. If you put a piece of iron in water, it **SB**
a. sink b. sinks c. will sink d. would sink
5. If you notice someone's kindness, you them happy. **SB**
a. will make b. make c. would make d. would have made
6. If everyone practiced gratitude, the school happier. **SB**
a. is b. will be c. would be d. would have been
7. If I had thanked my friends earlier, they appreciated sooner. **SB**
a. feel b. will feel c. would feel d. would have felt
8. If it rains tomorrow, we the picnic.
a. cancel b. will cancel c. cancels d. canceled
9. If she harder, she will pass the exam.
a. study b. studied c. will study d. studies

10. If you don't hurry, you the bus.

- a. miss b. will miss c. misses d. missed

11. If plants don't get sunlight, they

- a. die b. will die c. would die d. would have died

12. What you do if you win the lottery?

- a. do b. will c. did d. would

13. If I you, I would apologize.

- a. am b. was c. were d. will be

14. She'll be sad if you come to her party.

- a. don't b. won't c. didn't d. hadn't

15. If I had time, I with you.

- a. went b. will go c. would go d. would have gone

16. If I a famous singer, I would help children in need.

- a. am b. was c. were d. will be

17. If you mix red and blue, you purple.

- a. get b. got c. will get d. would get

18. If it rains tomorrow, we at home.

- a. stay b. stayed c. will stay d. would stay

19. If I lend you some money, it back to me?

روكسي ٢٠٢٤

- a. do you give b. will you give c. you will give d. would you give

20. If I were you, I this book.

العريش ٢٠٢٤

- a. will read b. would have read c. can read d. would read

21. How you feel if you won the competition?

طهطا ٢٠٢٤

- a. do b. are c. would d. will

22. What if ice is heated?

العجمي ٢٠٢٤

- a. happens b. is happened c. does it happen d. it is happened

23. If I a good job, I will help my family.

الابراهيمية ٢٠٢٤

- a. gets b. will get c. got d. get

24. If I that app on my phone, it would be easy to find places.

منية النصر ٢٠٢٤

- a. use b. will use c. used d. have used

25. Sama would have that medal if she well.

منفلوط ٢٠٢٤

- a. play b. had played c. played d. plays

26. Ice if you heat it.

العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٤

- a. will melt b. would melt c. melts d. melt

27. If Samy had read that book, he what happened at the end.

صان الحجر ٢٠٢٤

- a. knew b. will know c. would know d. would have known

28. If you Luxor yesterday, we'd have met there.

نقادة ٢٠٢٤

- a. had visited b. visited c. were visited d. visit

29. If you needed to find information about a new movie, how it?

فاقوس ٢٠٢٤

- a. would you get b. will you get c. can you get d. you would get

30. If you more care, you would have minimized your mistakes.

البلينا سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

- a. had had b. had been c. were d. had



Exercise 24 Language Level 2

31. If I rich, I would have a lot of expensive things like a villa and a car. العياط ٢٠٢٤
 a. had b. were c. had been d. had had
32. I my umbrella if it rains. This is my habit. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
 a. take b. will take c. would take d. would have taken
33. Hala is careful, as usual. If she careful, she would make mistakes. دمياط ٢٠٢٤ LM
 a. isn't being b. aren't c. was d. wasn't
34. If I had money, I'd donate some to charity, but unfortunately I any. شرين ٢٠٢٤
 a. haven't b. don't have c. didn't have d. hadn't had
35. If she put water in the fridge, she some cold water. العياط ٢٠٢٤
 a. get b. will get c. would get d. would have got
36. me the truth in detail if you want me to believe you. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
 a. Tell b. Will tell c. Would tell d. Telling
37. If they found a company of their own, I to work there. قويسنا ٢٠٢٤
 a. apply b. would apply c. could apply d. will apply
38. If you heat metal, it expand? شمال سيناء ٢٠٢٣
 a. will b. do c. is d. does
39. If this trip cost much money, I join it. قنا ٢٠٢٣
 a. don't b. won't c. wouldn't d. am not
40. If I had time, I'd help you. It means ميت غمر ٢٠٢٣ ٢٠٢٤ قلوب
 a. I was busy b. I'm busy c. I'm free d. I will help you
41. He on a diet if he wants to lose weight. LM
 a. had to go b. should go c. have gone d. will go
42. If I study for long, I always tired and dizzy. هيا ٢٠٢٤
 a. feel b. will feel c. felt d. would feel
43. If he cut his finger with that knife, it terribly. طوخ ٢٠٢٤
 a. hurts b. would hurt c. will hurt d. hurt
44. If metals , they contract. البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٤
 a. cools b. cooled c. cooling d. are cooled
45. If our food hygienically, we can have some health problems. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
 a. doesn't prepare b. isn't prepared c. is prepared d. will prepare
46. If he read the news, he everything about the terrible accident. بركة السبع ٢٠٢٤
 a. may know b. will know c. would know d. know
47. If I were tall, I would play basketball. This means that I tall. LM النصر ٢٠٢٣
 a. am not b. am c. was not d. was



Exercise 25 Language Level 3

48. If he , he would have gone to the party.
 a. had invited b. was invited c. had been invited d. were invited

49. If I had written work, I it at once.

دكرنس ٢٠٢٤

- a. will do b. would do c. had done d. would have done

50. If I had used clothes, I to a charity.

الفيوم ٢٠٢٤

- a. would donate b. would have donated c. will donate d. donated

51. They will build a villa if

الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

- a. needs b. is needed c. need d. needed

52. They will visit Malak if

قنا ٢٠٢٤

- a. is necessary b. necessary c. was necessary d. necessity

53. If it freezes tonight, we heaters out around the orange trees.

- a. places b. place c. are placing d. will place

54. If he, he would have to attend the party.

المحلة ٢٠٢٣

- a. had been invited b. was invited c. invited d. had invited

55. If the money I had, enough, I'd have rented a better flat.

البحيرة ٢٠٢٣

- a. been b. was c. had d. had been

56. If you drop that glass mug, it

جرجا ٢٠٢٤

- a. 'll break b. breaks c. break d. 'd break

57. If it is cold this month, our plants

شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٤

- a. would die b. will die c. had died d. die

58. If he had broken bones, he by himself.

- a. wouldn't walk b. wouldn't have walked c. won't walk d. doesn't walk

59. If the coach had talented players, he the final match.

البحيرة ٢٠٢٣

- a. wouldn't have won b. would have won c. would win d. will win

2) Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. You have to follow the rules, otherwise you will be punished. (If) S3 R 3
2. He doesn't help others, so people don't trust him. (If) S3 R 3
3. When you don't say thank you, people feel unappreciated. (If) S3
4. Nader came late because he didn't catch the train. (If) S3
5. Rana is clever. She can answer this question. (If) S3
6. When you boil water, it evaporates. (If) S3
7. He was late, so the teacher punished him. (If)
8. My alarm clock didn't ring, so I woke up late. (If)
9. She didn't visit him because she didn't know his address. (If)
10. We don't believe Hazem because he is always a liar. (If)
11. They aren't skillful. They lose the game. (If)
12. He apologized because he made a mistake. (If)
13. He isn't rich enough to buy a villa. (If)
14. By mixing red and yellow, we get orange. (If)
15. Water boils because you heat it. (If)

Caring Communities

- 3 Acts of Gratitude
4 Conflict Resolution
5 Problem-Solution Paragraph



Key Vocabulary

argue over (v)	يتجادل / يتناقش حول	conflict (n)	صراع	thank (v)	يشكر / يقدر
take on (v)	يقبل / يتحمل / يوظف	gratitude (n)	امتنان / شكر	thankfulness (n)	شكر / امتنان
interrupt (v)	يوقف / يقاطع	resident (n)	ساكن / مقيم	appreciate (v)	يقدر / يثمن
mediators (n)	وسطاء / محكمون	resolve (v)	يحل / يقرر	appreciation (n)	تقدير / امتنان
misunderstanding (n)	سوء فهم	address (v)	يعالج / يتناول / يوجه	solution (n)	حل
gathering (n)	اجتماع / تجمع	handle (v)	يتعامل مع / يتولى	resolution (n)	حل نهائي / قرار / تسوية

Main Vocabulary

involve (v)	يشترك / يشمل	sportsmanship (n)	روح رياضية	recognize (v)	يتعرف على
remarkable (adj)	ملحوظ / بارز / رائع	janitor (n)	بواب / عامل نظافة	act (n/v)	فعل / يتصرف
transform (v)	يحول	common (adj)	شائع / مشترك	behavior (n)	سلوك
event (n)	حدث / مناسبة	practice (v)	يمارس / يتدرب	notice (n/v)	ملاحظة / يلاحظ
neighbor (n)	جار	influence (n/v)	تأثير / يؤثر	compete (v)	يتنافس
neighborhood (n)	حي سكني	powerful (adj)	قوي / مؤثر	staff (n)	موظفون / فريق العمل
complain (v)	يشتكى	shopkeeper (n)	صاحب محل / تاجر	decrease (v)	يقلل / ينقص
celebration (n)	احتفال	rule (n/v)	قاعدة / يحكم	task (n)	مهمة / واجب
praise (v)	يمدح	role (n)	دور / وظيفة	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
disagreement (n)	خلاف / نزاع	role model (n)	قدوة / نموذج يحتذى به	member (n)	عضو
respectfully (adv)	باحترام	discuss (v)	يناقش / يتحاور	argument (n)	جدال / نقاش
cooperative	متعاون	kindness (n)	لطف / طيبة	problem-solution	حل للمشكلة
politely (adv)	بأدب / بطريقة مهذبة	elderly (adj)	مسن / كبير في السن	effective (adj)	فعال
communicate (v)	يتواصل	intergenerational (adj)	بين الأجيال	loneliness (n)	شعور بالوحدة
depression (n)	اكتئاب	volunteer (n/v)	متطوع / يتطوع	wisdom (n)	حكمة

Collocations

solve (resolve) conflicts	يحل النزاعات	express appreciation	يُعبر عن التقدير أو الشكر
create positive changes	يحدث تغييرات ايجابية	feel unappreciated	يشعر بعدم التقدير
create an inclusive community	يخلق مجتمعا شاملا	achieve goals	يحقق أهدافا
handle conflicts	يتعامل مع الخلافات	address a problem	يتعامل مع مشكلة / يعالج مشكلة
handle disagreements	يتعامل مع الخلافات	organize celebrations	ينظم احتفالات
gain empathy	يكتسب تعاطفا	follow rules	يلتزم بالقواعد
show gratitude	يظهر الامتنان	bring generations together	يجمع الأجيال معا
make friends	يكون صداقات	feel they belong	يشعر بأنه جزء من مجموعة أو مكان

Expressions & Prepositions

Gratitude Challenge	نشاط للتعبير عن الامتنان	praise.....for	يمدح / يشيد بـ
reduced community connections	ضعف الروابط المجتمعية	blame for	يلوم على
social isolation	العزلة الاجتماعية	care for	يعتني بـ

sense of belonging	احساس بالانتماء	interact with	يتفاعل مع
shared spaces	أماكن مشتركة	lead to	يؤدي إلى
public spaces	أماكن عامة	take on a role	يتولى دوراً / مهمة
transform.....into	يحول..... إلى	disagree about	يختلف في الرأي حول
intergenerational volunteer program			برنامج تطوعي بين الأجيال

Definitions

argue over	يتجادل / يتناقش	▶ to talk in an angry way because you don't agree about something
gathering	اجتماع / تجمع	▶ a meeting of people in one place
interrupt	يوقف / يقاطع	▶ to stop someone while they are speaking or doing something
mediators	وسطاء / محكمون	▶ people who help two sides solve a disagreement
misunderstanding	سوء فهم	▶ when people do not understand each other correctly
resident	ساكن / مقيم	▶ a person who lives in a particular place
take on	يقبل / يتحمل مسؤولية	▶ accept a job, task, or responsibility
gratitude	امتنان / شكر	▶ the quality of being thankful; readiness to show appreciation
address	يعالج / يتناول	▶ to deal with or discuss a problem or issue
handle	يتعامل مع / يتولى	▶ to deal with a situation, problem, or task
conflict	صراع	▶ a serious disagreement or argument, typically a protracted one

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
gratitude	امتنان / شكر	thankfulness, appreciation, acknowledgment, gratefulness	ingratitude, unthankfulness, disregard, neglect, disrespect
conflict	صراع	disagreement, dispute, struggle	agreement, harmony, cooperation
appreciate	يقدر / يثمن	value, respect, regard, treasure	undervalue, disregard, disrespect
argue over	يتجادل / يتناقش	dispute over, debate on, fight over	agree on, compromise
gathering	اجتماع / تجمع	meeting, assembly, crowd	separation, division
interrupt	يوقف / يقاطع	disturb, break in, interfere, hinder	continue, allow, maintain
mediators	وسطاء / محكمون	negotiators, facilitators	opponents, disruptors
misunderstanding	سوء فهم	misinterpretation, confusion	understanding, clarity, insight
take on	يقبل / يتحمل مسؤولية	accept, undertake, face, confront	refuse, decline, reject, avoid
address	يعالج / يتناول / يوجه	deal with, handle, discuss	ignore, neglect, avoid, overlook
handle	يتعامل مع / يتولى	manage, deal with, operate	neglect, ignore, avoid, mismanage

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
appreciate	يقدر / يثمن	appreciation	تقدير	appreciative	مقدر / شاكر
thank	يشكر / يقدر	thankfulness	شكر / امتنان	thankful	ممتن
gather	يجمع / يتجمع	gathering	اجتماع / تجمع	gathered	مجمع / متجمع
misunderstand	يسئ فهم	misunderstanding	سوء فهم	misunderstood	مفهوم خطأ
celebrate	يحتفل / يكرم	celebration	احتفال / احتفاء	celebratory	احتفالي
cooperate	يتعاون	cooperation	تعاون	cooperative	متعاون
involve	يشترك / يشمل	involvement	مشاركة / شمول	involved	مشارك / متورط



Language Notes



Notice the Difference

interrupt	يوقف / يقاطع	↔	interpret	يفسر / يترجم / يوضح
gratitude	امتنان / شكر	↔	grateful	ممتن
argue over (about)	يتجادل / يتناقش حول	↔	argue for	يدافع عن / يؤيد فكرة
take on	يقبل / يتحمل / يوظف	↔	take in	يستوعب / يفهم / يخذع
take off	تقلع / يخلع / يأخذ إجازة	↔	take to	يعتاد علي
agree on	يتفق على (شيء محدد / موضوع / قرار)	↔	agree with	يتفق مع (شخص أو رأي)
handle	يتعامل مع / يتولى (بدون with)	↔	deal with	يتعامل مع / يتولى (معها with)
social	اجتماعي (متعلق بالمجتمع أو التفاعل الاجتماعي)	↔	sociable	اجتماعي (شخص يحب مخالطة الناس)
regularly	بانتظام / بشكل منتظم	↔	gradually	تدريجياً / بالتدريج
recognize	يتعرف على	↔	realize	يُدرك / يفهم
powerful	قوي / مؤثر	↔	power	قوة / قدرة / سلطة
volunteer (n/v)	متطوع / يتطوع	↔	voluntary	تطوعي / اختياري
involve	يشمل / يشارك	↔	evolve	يتطور / يتغير تدريجياً
alone	بمفرده / وحيد	↔	lonely	يشعر بالوحدة
complain	يشكي	↔	complaint	شكوى
challenge	تحدي / يتحدى	↔	challenging	صعب / يمثل تحدياً

communicate, contact & connect

communicate	يُنقل المعلومات / يتواصل / يبلّغ	▶ Teachers must communicate clearly with students.
connect	يربط / يتواصل / يقيم علاقة	▶ Social media helps people connect globally.
contact	يتواصل / يتصل بشخص	▶ I'll contact you tomorrow by phone.
contact	اتصال	▶ She has many business contacts around the world.

argue, discuss & debate

argue	يجادل / يناقش بشدة بسبب خلاف	▶ They always argue about money.
discuss	يناقش / يحاور بطريقة هادئة ومنظمة	▶ Let's discuss the plan before making a decision.
debate	يجادل / يناظر بطريقة منظمة ورسمية	▶ They debated the pros and cons of online education.

address

address	يعالج / يوجه	▶ The IT team will address the printer issue.
address	يخاطب	▶ He addressed the students about online safety.
address	يتناول / يتحدث عن	▶ The report addresses network security.
address	عنوان مكان أو شخص	▶ Write your address on the form.
address	خطاب رسمي	▶ The president gave an address on TV.

neighbor, neighborly, neighboring & neighborhood

neighbor	جار	▶ My neighbor helped me carry the boxes.
neighborly	ودود / حسن الجوار	▶ She is very neighborly and always helps others.
neighboring	مجاور / قريب	▶ We visited a neighboring country last summer.
neighborhood	حي / منطقة سكنية	▶ He grew up in a friendly neighborhood .



"Resolving Conflicts to Keep Everyone Included"

What is the role of respected members of the community?

Conflicts happen in every community, including **neighborhoods**. Children may **argue over** ⁽¹⁾ football games in the local park, **neighbors** may disagree about using **shared spaces**, or **misunderstandings** ⁽²⁾ can happen during community **events**. How conflicts are **handled** ⁽³⁾ can make a community stronger and more **inclusive**.

In a Cairo neighborhood,

residents ⁽⁴⁾ noticed that **disagreements** were **common** in the local park and during weekend **gatherings**. ⁽⁵⁾ To **address** ⁽⁶⁾ this, **respected** members of the community, such as elders, teachers, and **shopkeepers**, **took on** ⁽⁷⁾ the role of **mediators**. ⁽⁸⁾ They helped people **discuss** problems calmly and fairly.

For example, two children argued over who would play first in a football match. A local elder listened to both sides, **encouraged** them to explain their feelings **politely**, and **suggested a solution**: **taking turns** and **sharing equipment**. Neighbors also learned to **communicate respectfully** when deciding how to care for **public spaces**, like keeping the park clean or organizing community **celebrations**.

The mediators taught simple rules: listen without **interrupting**, ⁽⁹⁾ **express** your feelings politely, and **find a solution** that **benefits** everyone. Over time, conflicts **decreased**, and children and adults **felt** more **included**.

The neighborhood realized that **resolving** ⁽¹⁰⁾ conflicts **respectfully** helps everyone **feel they belong**. **Role models**, like patient elders, fair shopkeepers, or teachers, show others how to **handle disagreements** kindly, creating a happier and more **cooperative** Egyptian community.



- (١) يتجادل حول
- (٢) سوء فهم
- (٣) يتعامل مع
- (٤) ساكن / مقيم
- (٥) اجتماع
- (٦) يتناول
- (٧) يقبل
- (٨) وسطاء
- (٩) يقاطع
- (١٠) يحل



Listening



At Greenfield School, teachers noticed that students often **competed** ⁽¹⁾, **ignored** ⁽²⁾ each other, or **felt left out**. To change this, Ms. Leila introduced a **Gratitude** ⁽³⁾ Challenge. She told the students, "If everyone **practices gratitude**, our school will feel kinder and happier."

The challenge was simple: each day, students had to **perform** one **act** of gratitude. Some thanked their friends for helping with homework, others **praised** ⁽⁴⁾ classmates for good **sportsmanship** ⁽⁵⁾, and a few wrote short notes to **janitors** ⁽⁶⁾.

The results were **remarkable** ⁽⁷⁾. When students expressed **appreciation** ⁽⁸⁾, smiles **spread**, **moods** lifted, and conflicts decreased. Students felt more included and valued. Ms. Leila explained, "If we **recognize**, and thank even the smallest **acts of kindness**, we can **transform** ⁽⁹⁾ our school into a community where everyone belongs."

By the end of the week, students **realized** that gratitude is **powerful** ⁽¹⁰⁾ – it costs nothing, but it **creates happiness** for everyone.

- (١) ينافس
- (٢) يتجاهل
- (٣) الامتنان
- (٤) يمدح
- (٥) الروح الرياضية
- (٦) عامل النظافة
- (٧) ملحوظ
- (٨) التقدير
- (٩) يحول
- (١٠) قوي



Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

1. A person who helps solve problems between others is a/an SB R 3
 a. resident b. competitor c. mediator d. audience
2. Writing thank you notes is a way to show SB R 3
 a. gratitude b. punishment c. routine d. habit
3. Conflicts often happen because of SB R 3
 a. agreement b. misunderstanding c. cooperation d. fairness
4. Good students always the efforts of their classmates. SB
 a. ruin b. belong c. compete d. appreciate
5. Teachers encourage students to each other politely. SB
 a. solve b. thank c. confuse d. decrease
6. Saying "thank you" helps people feel they to the community. SB
 a. isolate b. separate c. exclude d. belong
7. Politicians the new law for hours during the debate.
 a. argue over b. agree on c. take on d. lead to
8. Political leaders aimed to resolve the between rival parties peacefully.
 a. conflict b. cooperation c. agreement d. celebration
9. It is rude to someone while they are speaking during a meeting.
 a. listen b. enhance c. interrupt d. observe
10. The volunteer decided to the responsibility of organizing the school festival.
 a. argue over b. take on c. take in d. lead to
11. Resolving a requires patience and careful listening from all parties involved.
 a. persistence b. compromise c. misunderstanding d. mediator
12. Each must follow the community rules to maintain a safe environment.
 a. disaster b. conflict c. competition d. resident
13. Local leaders organized a to discuss new safety measures in the neighborhood.
 a. gathering b. mediator c. misunderstanding d. gratitude
14. Diplomats worked together to conflicts between the two nations peacefully.
 a. interrupt b. resolve c. argue d. appreciate
15. The government must the issue of unemployment.
 a. empower b. boost c. enhance d. address
16. Teachers must classroom behavior carefully to maintain discipline effectively.
 a. handle b. involve c. deal d. belong
17. She expressed her to the teacher for the guidance.
 a. disappointment b. confusion c. thankfulness d. misunderstanding
18. Skilled help resolve conflicts between groups peacefully and fairly.
 a. opponents b. criminals c. challengers d. mediators
19. Showing towards parents and elders is a sign of good manners.
 a. fear b. gratitude c. disrespect d. disappointment
20. Parents felt deep for the teachers' dedication and guidance.
 a. conflict b. anger c. competition d. appreciation
21. The conflict was finally solved through peaceful
 a. crisis b. resolution c. issue d. failure
22. Students speaking English regularly to become more fluent and confident.
 a. avoid b. neglect c. reject d. practice

23. means to stop someone while they are speaking or doing something.
 a. Handle b. Take on c. Interrupt d. Argue over
24. A is a person who lives in a particular place.
 a. mediator b. resident c. conflict d. gathering
25. is the quality of being thankful and showing appreciation.
 a. Conflict b. Misunderstanding c. Gratitude d. Resident
26. To means to deal with or discuss a problem or issue.
 a. gather b. take on c. interrupt d. address
27. To talk in an angry way because you don't agree about something means
 a. argue over b. take on c. handle d. address



Exercise 01

Main Vocabulary

28. Public art can help people important social issues. S3 R3
 a. forget b. ignore c. discuss d. hide
29. The project will research, interviews, and presentations for all participants.
 a. evolve b. involve c. exclude d. consist
30. Neighbors sometimes about noise, but polite discussion usually resolves it.
 a. complain b. accept c. involve d. praise
31. This necklace to my grandmother; please handle it carefully.
 a. praises b. separates c. belongs d. misleads
32. Planning a school sports requires teamwork and careful organization.
 a. neighborhood b. resident c. task d. event
33. The school organized a grand to honor the winners of the competition.
 a. celebration b. argument c. debate d. conflict
34. Students speaking English regularly to become more fluent and confident.
 a. avoid b. neglect c. practice d. reject
35. The local council organized a clean-up campaign for the entire
 a. town b. city c. conflict d. neighborhood
36. A neighbor helps maintain a friendly and supportive community environment.
 a. lazy b. cooperative c. stubborn d. selfish
37. During the debate, each participant should listen to opposing arguments.
 a. carelessly b. rudely c. harshly d. respectfully
38. Teachers help the students resolve their through discussion and compromise.
 a. disagreement b. friendship c. celebration d. teamwork
39. Her simple act of brightened the day of the homeless man.
 a. rudeness b. selfishness c. kindness d. arrogance
40. Her argument convinced the council to support the new project plan.
 a. ineffective b. weak c. mild d. powerful
41. Leaders often take on a guiding to motivate and inspire their team members.
 a. responsibility b. task c. duty d. role
42. During meetings, managers challenges to find the best solutions collaboratively.
 a. avoid b. neglect c. discuss d. ignore
43. Elders often offer based on life experiences and personal reflection.
 a. disagreement b. wisdom c. celebration d. misunderstanding
44. The residents received special care and attention at the nursing home.
 a. elderly b. young c. adult d. middle-aged

45. Social media can public opinion quickly on important political or social issues.
 a. neglect b. ignore c. avoid d. influence
46. Teachers need methods to engage students in active learning during lessons.
 a. inefficient b. weak c. effective d. useless
47. Avoiding a/an helps maintain peaceful relationships between friends and family.
 a. celebration b. argument c. agreement d. wisdom
48. Organizing community events can be a rewarding if done with dedication.
 a. duty b. task c. right d. rule
49. The hospital worked tirelessly to care for patients during the pandemic.
 a. staff b. stiff c. stuff d. crew
50. Companies to attract the most talented employees in the global market.
 a. belong b. volunteer c. rule d. compete
51. Teachers monitor students' to maintain discipline in the classroom effectively.
 a. resolution b. behavior c. character d. privacy
52. Positive feedback can greatly employees to perform better at their jobs.
 a. encourage b. ignore c. avoid d. neglect



Exercise 04

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

53. Everyone should know how to conflicts respectfully to avoid misunderstandings.
 a. solve b. deal c. make d. create
54. Everyone should help to an inclusive community where no one feels excluded.
 a. solve b. compete c. make d. create
55. She decided to take a leadership role in the school project.
 a. to b. on c. in d. off
56. Volunteering allowed him to empathy for people in need.
 a. gain b. make c. earn d. win
57. Students often friends when participating in group activities at school events.
 a. join b. take c. make d. give
58. Leaders must a problem quickly to prevent further conflict.
 a. achieve b. bring c. follow d. address
59. The two teams argued the referee's final decision after the match.
 a. for b. to c. over d. with
60. It is unfair to blame others problems you helped create.
 a. on b. for c. with d. at
61. If you want to express thanks, it is always polite to show for any favor.
 a. volunteer b. grateful c. gratitude d. appreciation
62. Poor communication can lead serious misunderstandings between classmates.
 a. in b. at c. to d. with
63. Teamwork gives students a clear of belonging within the group.
 a. sense b. degree c. form d. shape
64. The school organized a very math problem for the top students.
 a. voluntary b. challenge c. volunteer d. challenging
65. The new student moved into the near the school playground.
 a. neighborhood b. neighborly c. neighboring d. resident

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

66. Ignoring someone's help completely shows ingratitude rather than gratitude. The antonym of "gratitude" is
- a. disregard b. appreciation c. acknowledgment d. gratefulness e. neglect
67. It's important to appreciate the efforts of your teammates after completing a project. The synonym of "appreciate" is
- a. disregard b. respect c. value d. undervalue e. disrespect
68. The conflict between the two departments delayed the project significantly. The synonym of "conflict" is
- a. peace b. dispute c. harmony d. disagreement e. cooperation
69. The two friends began to argue over money during their discussion. The synonym of "argue over" is
- a. dispute over b. debate on c. agree on d. compromise e. accept
70. A large gathering was held to celebrate the national holiday. The synonym of "gathering" is
- a. separation b. isolation c. division d. meeting e. assembly
71. He rudely interrupted the speaker while she was explaining her point. The synonym of "interrupt" is
- a. disturb b. continue c. hinder d. allow e. maintain
72. Mediators helped the two sides reach a peaceful agreement. The synonym of "mediators" is
- a. opponents b. facilitators c. disruptors d. rivals e. negotiators
73. A misunderstanding caused problems between the two friends. The synonym of "misunderstanding" is
- a. insight b. understanding c. confusion d. misinterpretation e. clarity
74. This article addresses the causes of climate change. The synonym of "address" is
- a. deal with b. handle c. ignore d. avoid e. neglect
75. Ignoring problems means you cannot handle them well. The antonym of "handle" is.....
- a. operate b. manage c. ignore d. deal with e. avoid
76. A community with minimal conflict tends to enjoy better cooperation among residents. The antonym of "conflict" is
- a. struggle b. clash c. cooperation d. disagreement e. peace
77. She showed her gratitude by writing a heartfelt thank-you note to her teacher. The synonym of "gratitude" is
- a. neglect b. appreciation c. disregard d. thankfulness e. disrespect
78. "Volunteers helped resolve the conflict peacefully." The synonym of resolve is
- a. solve b. settle c. create d. ignore e. worsen

S3 R 3

If

حالات حذف

نستخدم بدلا من (If) (Should + + inf.) كالتالي:

حذف If الحالة الاولى

- ★ If Toka **studies hard**, she will succeed.
= **Should** Toka **study** hard, she will succeed.

نستخدم بدلا من (If)

حذف If الحالة الثانية

- ① إذا كانت (were) فعل أساسي في الجملة تأتي مكان (if) وتكون بمعنى لو كنت:
★ If I **were** you, I'd help **poor** people. = **Were** I you, I'd help poor people.
- ② إذا كانت (had) فعل أساسي في الجملة تأتي مكان (if) وتكون بمعنى لو امتلك:
★ If I **had** much **money**, I'd buy a car. = **Had** I much money, I'd buy a car.
- ③ إذا وجد فعل أساسي غير (were) تأتي (Should + subject + inf.) مكان (if):
★ If Toka **studied hard**, she'd succeed.
= **Should** Toka **study** hard, she'd succeed.
- ④ إذا وجد فعل أساسي غير (were) تأتي (Were + subject + to + inf.) مكان (if):
★ If Toka **studied hard**, she'd succeed.
= **Were** Toka **to study** hard, she'd succeed.

نستخدم بدلا من (If) (Had + subject + P.P) كالتالي:

حذف If الحالة الثالثة

- ★ If Toka **had left** earlier, she wouldn't have missed the train.
= **Had** Toka **left** earlier, she **wouldn't have missed** the train.

If

بدائل

If = in case = providing (that) = provided (that) = as long as
= on condition that = supposing (that) = suppose = imagine (that)

- ★ You can borrow my pen **if / provided that / on condition that / as long as** you give it back.
- ★ **In case** Toka leaves earlier, she won't miss the train.
- ★ **Supposing / Imagine (that)** you found a job in Cairo, what would you do?

in case

- ★ I'll leave my mobile phone switched on **in case** Jana **calls**.
- ★ I'll draw a map for you **in case** you **have** problems finding our house.
- ★ I'll remind them about the meeting **in case** they've **forgotten**.
- ★ I'll give you my phone number **in case** you **need** to contact me.
- ★ You **should** insure your bike **in case** it is **stolen**.

If (there is)
= In case of
= With = By

+ noun / V + ing → في حالة

- ★ **In case of** emergency, call 122.
- ★ Toka wouldn't miss the train **with / by** leaving earlier.

in case of ... = if there is....

- ★ In case of fire, please leave the building as quickly as possible. (= If there is a fire)
- ★ In case of emergency, call this number. (= If there is an emergency)

unless =	except if = If ... not ...	→ إذا لم - لو لم (خلة)
	without + noun or v + ing.	→ إذا لم - لو لم
	but for + noun	→ إذا لم - لو لم

- ★ If they didn't have tickets, they wouldn't be able to watch the match.
- ★ Unless they had tickets, they wouldn't be able to watch the match.
- ★ Without having tickets, they wouldn't be able to watch the match.
- ★ If Toka didn't leave earlier, she would miss the train.
- ★ Unless Toka left earlier, she would miss the train.
- ★ Without / But for leaving earlier, Toka would miss the train.

If	it were not for + inf. + ing/n.	subj.	would +	inf	→ الحالة الثانية
	it hadn't been for + inf. + ing/n.			have + P.P.	→ الحالة الثالثة

- ★ If it is not for your help, I won't be able to watch the match.
- ★ If it were not for your help, I wouldn't be able to watch the match.
- ★ If it hadn't been for your help, I wouldn't have been able to watch the match.

1. (Had - Were) I money, I would buy a car.
2. (Had - Were) I a bird, I could fly.
3. (Had - Were) I wings, I could fly.
4. (Should - Were) he study hard, he would pass the exam.
5. (Should - Were) I to study hard, I would get full marks.
6. (Should - Were) you meet Ali, tell him your good news.
7. (If - Had) I been stupid, I wouldn't have solved that problem.
8. (If - Had) I read the book, I would have explained it.
9. If the money I had, (had - had had - had been) enough, I would have bought a car.
10. If he read the book, (will - would) he understand it?



يا تركا
حاول تفهم وتكتب سبب الاختيار



Exercise 08 Language Level 1

1. They wouldn't be in London now they caught the midday plane.
a. unless b. provided that c. in case of d. without
2. doing regular exercises, I will be overweight.
a. Without b. Unless c. As long as d. If
3. I will buy some tablets I feel a headache in the meeting room.
a. in case of b. in case c. unless d. a & b

العياد ٢٠٢٤

القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

4. Unless you had a modern car, you able to go to Alexandria. ٢٠٢٤ أخميم
 a. will be b. won't be c. wouldn't be d. wouldn't have been
5. I'll swim in the sea today it's windy at the beach. ٢٠٢٤ شبرا
 a. unless b. in case of c. provided d. in case
6. Without the questions carefully, you couldn't answer them correctly. ٢٠٢٤ الإبراهيمية
 a. read b. reading c. have read d. is reading
7. my teachers' support, I wouldn't have come the first in the final exam. ٢٠٢٤ بلييس
 a. Unless b. If c. Without d. In case of
8. Get your umbrella it rains tomorrow. ٢٠٢٢ شبين القناطر
 a. in case b. unless c. as long as d. provides
9. you refused to help me, I wouldn't solve that problem. Many thanks, Hala. ٤م
 a. Without b. If c. In case of d. Unless
10. they had much time, they would have studied better. ٢٠٢٤ بنها
 a. If b. Were c. Should d. Had
11. You can't have a good job good qualifications. ٢٠٢٤ طوخ
 a. unless b. if c. without d. in case
12. she arrive early, I would help her.
 a. Should b. If c. Were d. Unless
13. having free time, let's have coffee together. ٢٠٢٢ المنيا
 a. Without b. In case of c. If d. Unless



Exercise ٥١ Language Level 2

14. Soha to read this book, she would get much information. ٢٠٢٤ الفرزة
 a. If b. Should c. had d. Were
15. my friends chosen a better destination, I would have joined them. ٢٠٢٤ البدرشين
 a. If b. Had c. Were d. In case
16. Had I had a good memory, I his name. ٢٠٢٤ طامية
 a. would remember b. will remember c. remembered d. would have remembered
17. I had any bread, I would have gone to the bakery. ٢٠٢٤ شرق الرقازيق
 a. Had b. If c. Hadn't d. Unless
18. he to study hard, he would get high marks. ٢٠٢٤ شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤ القناطر ٢٠٢٤ الاسماعيلية
 a. If b. Had c. Would d. Were
19. I a car, I would be happy. ٢٠٢٢ القوصية أسيوط
 a. Had b. If c. Were d. Unless
20. You will miss the lecture you come on time. ٤م
 a. if b. unless c. because d. in case of
21. he had enough money, he would have bought a car. ٢٠٢٢ بنها
 a. Had b. If c. Unless d. Hadn't
22. careful, he wouldn't make that silly mistake. ٤م
 a. Is he b. Wasn't he c. Isn't he d. Were he
23. You won't be allowed to enter the club you hold your membership card. ٤م
 a. when b. if c. unless d. without
24. I your teacher, I would force you to try harder.
 a. Were b. Was c. Had d. Should
25. you were accused of robbery, what would you do?
 a. Supposing b. Imagined c. Unless d. In case of

26. raining, we won't be able to finish the game.
 a. If it didn't stop b. Should it stop c. If it stopped d. Unless it stops
27. Had he been more careful, he low marks.
 a. wouldn't get b. wouldn't have got c. will get d. would have got
28. you were in China, what food would you eat?
 a. In case of b. Unless c. Imagine d. Without
29. my father, you would have thought he was wonderful too.
 a. If you knew b. Had you known c. Should you d. Were you to know
30. our savings, we wouldn't have been able to make the payments.
 a. But for b. In spite of c. If it weren't for d. In case of



Exercise Ph

Language Level 3

31. taking drugs damages you, stop them at once. منيا القمح ٢٠٢٤
 a. Were b. Without c. Should d. If
32. playing computer games wastes your time, you can play as you like. شبين القناطر ٢٠٢٤
 a. In case of b. If c. Unless d. Without
33. I have to go now I will miss the train. العياط ٢٠٢٤
 a. consequently b. otherwise c. but for d. in case of
34. hesitate to help anyone as long as you can. LM
 a. To not b. Won't c. Shouldn't d. Don't
35. He wouldn't agree to do extra tasks without
 a. paying b. being paid c. be paid d. been paid
36. come, you would meet the boss today. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
 a. If you b. Unless you c. You should d. Were you to
37. the fireman's efforts, the house would have been burnt. سمالوط ٢٠٢٤
 a. In case of b. But for c. Provided d. If
38. Were the builders the work to schedule, they would be rewarded. زفتى ٢٠٢٢
 a. finish b. finished c. to finish d. had finished
39. walking is useful, I will practise it. بنها ٢٠٢٤
 a. Unless b. In case of c. Without d. If
40. being accurate is necessary, I'll overlook the so many mistakes you make. الخانكة ٢٠٢٤
 a. Unless b. If c. In case of d. Without

2) Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets:

1. If you are patient, you will achieve your goal. (Unless)
2. We'll be happy if we win the game. (unless)
3. Unless he is ready, I will do that myself. (If)
4. If she studied hard, she would get high marks. (Were)
5. He won't be part of the team because he is too short. (unless)
6. Bad behavior always leads to punishment. (In case of)
7. I couldn't solve the problem because they didn't help me. (Without)
8. You won't enter the hall unless you have a ticket. (If)
9. She is very poor, so she can't travel abroad. (were)
10. In case he arrives early, call me. (Should)

فقرة تضم مشكلة وحل

Problem-Solution Paragraph

Definition of Problem-Solution Paragraph

- ★ It is a paragraph that **presents** a **specific** problem, **explains** its **causes** or **effects**, and then suggests one or more **solutions** to **solve** it.
هي فقرة تعرض مشكلة معينة، ثم تشرح أسبابها أو آثارها، وبعد ذلك تقدم حلاً واحداً أو أكثر للتعامل مع هذه المشكلة.
- ★ Its main **purpose** is to show **logical** thinking by moving from a problem to practical ways of **dealing with** it.
وهدفها الأساسي هو إظهار التفكير المنطقي من خلال الانتقال من عرض المشكلة إلى اقتراح حلول عملية لها.
- ★ It is commonly used in **formal** writing.
تستخدم هذه الفقرة كثيراً في الكتابة الرسمية.

Structure of Problem-Solution Paragraph

Step

Explanation

1) Problem
المشكلة

- ★ Presenting the main problem clearly in an opening sentence.
عرض المشكلة الأساسية بوضوح في جملة افتتاحية.

2) Effects
الآثار

- ★ Explaining the effects or negative results of the problem.
شرح آثار المشكلة أو نتائجها السلبية.

3) Solution
الحل

- ★ Suggesting one or more solutions to deal with the problem.
اقتراح حل واحد أو أكثر لمعالجة المشكلة.

4) Result
النتيجة

- ★ Showing the expected result of applying the solution or emphasizing its importance.
توضيح النتيجة المتوقعة عند تطبيق الحل أو التأكيد على أهميته.

Tips for writing a Problem-Solution Paragraph

1 Choose a Realistic, Focused Problem:

اختر مشكلة واقعية ومركزة

- ★ Who is affected? (e.g., students, neighbors, animals, the environment)
من المتأثر؟ (مثل الطلاب، الجيران، الحيوانات، البيئة)
- ★ What is happening? (Be specific!)
ماذا يحدث؟ (كن محدداً!)
- ★ Why does it matter?
لماذا هذا مهم؟

2 Brainstorm Possible Solutions:

فكر في حلول ممكنة

- ★ What can individuals do?
ماذا يمكن للأفراد أن يفعلوا؟
- ★ What can groups (school, club, neighbors) do?
ماذا يمكن للمجموعات (المدرسة، النادي، الجيران) أن تفعل؟
- ★ Is it doable with time, low cost, or existing resources?
هل هو قابل للتنفيذ مع الوقت المتاح، تكلفة منخفضة، أو الموارد الموجودة؟

③ Select ONE Main Problem & ONE Main Solution اختر مشكلة رئيسية واحدة وحل رئيسي واحد

④ Draft Using the 3-Part Structure:

اكتب مسودة باستخدام التركيب المكون من ٣ أجزاء

Use plan

استخدم الخطة

- ★ Section 1: Introduce the problem
- ★ Section 2-3: Explain the solution
- ★ Section 4: Show the result / outcome

القسم ١: تقديم المشكلة

القسم ٢-٣: شرح الحل

القسم ٤: عرض النتيجة / المردود

⑤ Revise & Polish: use a checklist

راجع وحسن كتابتك: استخدم قائمة فحص

Useful Expressions

تعبيرات مفيدة

To introduce the problem

One of the most serious problems is ... واحدة من أخطر المشاكل هي...
Nowadays, many people suffer from ... في الوقت الحاضر، يعاني الكثير من الناس من...
A major issue in modern society is ... قضية رئيسية في المجتمع الحديث هي...

To explain effects

This leads to ... هذا يؤدي إلى...
As a result, ... ونتيجة لذلك،...
This causes ... هذا يسبب...

To suggest solutions

One possible effective solution is ... أحد الحلول الممكنة الفعالة هو...
The best way to solve this problem is ... أفضل طريقة لحل هذه المشكلة هي...
To deal with this problem, people can... للتعامل مع هذه المشكلة، يمكن للناس...
Governments / schools / parents should... يجب على الحكومات / المدارس / الآباء...

نموذج فقرة تضم مشكلة وحل

A problem-solution paragraph model

[Problem]

Many neighborhoods face the challenge of social isolation, especially among elderly residents who live alone and may rarely interact with others leading to **loneliness**, **depression**, and reduced community connection.

[Solution]

One **effective** way to address this is through intergenerational volunteer programs, where students or young adults **regularly** visit elderly people to share stories, assist with small tasks (like grocery pickup or tech help), or simply enjoy a cup of tea together.

[Result]

As a result, elderly people feel valued and less alone. Meanwhile younger volunteers gain empathy, life **wisdom**, and a stronger sense of belonging strengthening the **entire** community, one conversation at a time.



Exercise 94

Writing

1. Which linking word is best used to show a result in problem-solution writing? SB R 3
 a. because b. although c. as a result d. meanwhile
2. In a problem-solution paragraph, the first step is to SB R 3
 a. give personal opinions b. introduce the problem clearly
 c. list many solutions d. end with a conclusion
3. What type of paragraph is used when you want to clearly present a specific problem, explain its causes or effects, and suggest one or more solutions to solve it?
 a. Story b. Problem-Solution c. Description d. Letter
4. In which type of writing is a Problem-Solution Paragraph most commonly used to organize ideas and provide practical solutions?
 a. Formal writing b. Notes c. Comics d. Text messages
5. Which step in a Problem-Solution Paragraph focuses on showing the expected improvement or outcome after the solution is applied?
 a. Problem b. Effects c. Result d. Solution
6. Asking "What is happening?" when selecting a problem helps you to:
 a. Introduce the problem b. Suggest solutions
 c. Show result d. Ignore the situation
7. Why is it recommended to choose only one main problem and one main solution in a paragraph?
 a. Focus and clarity b. To make it longer
 c. To confuse the reader d. To include unrelated ideas
8. Which phrase is used to introduce a problem in a paragraph?
 a. One of the most serious problems is ... b. This leads to ...
 c. As a result, ... d. Governments should ...
9. This sentence "Nowadays, many people suffer from ..." is used to
 a. Show effects b. Introduce problem c. Suggest solutions d. Show result
10. This sentence "To deal with this problem, people can ..." is used to
 a. Show problem b. Show result c. Explain effect d. Suggest solution
11. The Solution step in the paragraph should be
 a. Vague b. Clear and practical c. Random d. Funny
12. This sentence "A major issue in modern society is ..." is used for
 a. Problem b. Solution c. Result d. Effect
13. This sentence "This leads to ..." is used to
 a. Introduce problem b. Suggest solution c. Show effect d. Show result
14. Which expression suggests solutions?
 a. This causes ... b. The best way to solve this problem is ...
 c. Nowadays, many people suffer from ... d. A major issue in modern society is ...
15. One main problem should be
 a. Realistic and focused b. Random and broad
 c. Funny d. Long story



Exercise 24

Translation

1. The internet is a vast resource for all types of information. You may enjoy using it to do research, download songs or communicate with friends and family. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤

أ- الإنترنت هو مخزن هائل لجميع أنواع المعلومات. يمكنك الاستمتاع باستخدامه لإجراء بحث أو تنزيل الأغاني أو المراسلة من الأصدقاء والعائلة.
 ب- الإنترنت هو مصدر هائل لجميع أنواع المعلومات. يمكنك الاستمتاع باستخدامه لإجراء بحث أو تنزيل الأغاني أو التواصل مع الأصدقاء والعائلة.
 ج- الإنترنت هو مصدر هائل لجميع أنواع المعلومات. يمكنك الاستمتاع باستخدامه لمنع بحث أو تنزيل الأغاني أو المراسلة من الأصدقاء والزلاء.
 د- الإنترنت هو مصدر هائل لجميع أنواع المعلومات. يمكنك الاستمتاع باستخدامه لإجراء تعديل أو تنزيل الأغاني أو المراسلة من الأصدقاء والعائلة.

2. The New Administrative Capital is a new urban community which is planned to be Egypt's new capital and has been under construction since 2015. قويسنا ٢٠٢٤

أ- العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة مجتمع ريفي جديد، ومن المقرر أن تكون العاصمة الجديدة لمصر، وهي قيد الانشاء منذ عام ٢٠١٥.
 ب- العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة مجتمع حضري جديد، وكان من المقرر أن تكون العاصمة الجديدة لمصر، وقد توقف الانشاء عام ٢٠١٥.
 ج- العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة مجتمع عمراني جديد، ومن المقرر أن تكون العاصمة الجديدة لمصر، وقد تم الانشاء منذ عام ٢٠١٥.
 د- العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة مجتمع حضري جديد، ومن المقرر أن تكون العاصمة الجديدة لمصر، وهي قيد الانشاء منذ عام ٢٠١٥.

3. Don't wait for the perfect moment, take the moment and make it perfect. The future belongs to those who take action today. الرقازيق ٢٠٢٤

أ- لا تنتظر الوقت المناسب، احتضن الفرصة وحولها إلى أفضل ما يكون. المستقبل ملك لمن يتخذون الخطوات مباشرة.
 ب- لا تنتظر اللحظة المثالية، اغتصم اللحظة وحولها إلى مثالية. فالمستقبل ملك لأولئك الذين يتخذون الإجراءات اليوم.
 ج- إياك أن تنتظر اللحظة المثالية أبدا، واستغل اللحظة الحالية وحولها إلى مثالية. فالمستقبل ينتظر أولئك الذين يتخذون إجراءات صارمه.
 د- لا تنتظر اللحظة المثالية، اقبض على اللحظة الحاضرة وضاعفها. فالمستقبل يعتمد على الذين يتخذون إجراءات يومية.

٤. هناك جوهرة ثمينة لدينا بدونها لا نفكر أو نرى أو نسمع أو نتحدث أو نتحرك. إنه المخ. العياط ٢٠٢٤

a. We have a precious gem. With it, we cannot think, see, hear, speak or move. It is the brain.
 b. We have a precious gem. Without it, we cannot think, see, hear, speak or move. It is the brain.
 c. We have a valueless gem. Without it, we cannot think, see, hear, speak or move. It is the brain.
 d. We have a precious gun. Without it, we cannot think, see, hear, speak or move. It is the brain.

٥. للحفاظ على النظافة العامة، ينبغي العمل على تواجد سلال قمامة كافية في أماكن العمل والأماكن العامة. ميت غمر ٢٠٢٤

a. To keep public cleanliness, enough letter bins should find at work places and public ones.
 b. To keep private cleanliness, enough litter bins should be found at work places and public ones.
 c. For keeping public cleanliness, enough litter baskets should be found at work places and public ones.
 d. For keeping public health, enough litter containers should be found at work place public ones.

٦. القراءة ليست مجرد وسيلة للتسلية ولكنها وسيلة لفهم العالم الذي نعيش فيه. فمن خلال القراءة نكتسب مهارات يمكن أن

- تساعدنا في حل مشكلات الحياة اليومية. دمهور ٢٠٢٤

a. Reading is not just a pastime, but a way to understand the world in where we live. Through reading, we acquire skills that help us solve everyday life problems.
 b. Reading is not just a pastime, but a way to understand the world in which we live. Though reading, we acquire skills that help us solve everyday life problems.
 c. Reading is not just a pastime, but a way to understand the world in which we live. Through reading, we acquire skills that help us solve everyday life problems.
 d. Reading is not just a pastime, but a way to understand the world in which we live, Through reading, we acquire skills that help us solving everyday life problems.



General Exercises

on

Unit

7



A

Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

- The price is inclusive of flights, hotel, and meals. The antonym of "inclusive" is
a. exclusive b. universal c. comprehensive d. partial e. wide
- She showed great empathy toward the victims of the natural disaster. The synonym of "empathy" is
a. indifference b. cruelty c. compassion d. apathy e. kindness

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- An inclusive playground is a place where students feel
a. tired b. ignored c. valued d. confused
- Teachers should show towards students facing personal challenges at school.
a. empathy b. hostility c. hatred d. apathy
- A good manager treats all employees with regardless of their background.
a. injustice b. discrimination c. bias d. fairness
- Cultural allows students to learn about different traditions and practices.
a. uniformity b. sameness c. diversity d. similarity
- Peaceful relations require respect, understanding, and constant
a. cooperation b. hostility c. division d. competition
- Teachers respectful discussion during class to improve critical thinking.
a. block b. encourage c. punish d. prevent
- What you do if you didn't see him today?
a. will b. would c. did d. had
- If a huge storm the coast, it would destroy many houses.
a. is hitting b. hits c. hit d. had hit
- Iron expands if
a. it is heat b. is heated c. it is heated d. heating
- I don't have enough money. If I, I would have the ability to help you.
a. have b. had c. had had d. have had
- This sentence "The best way to solve this problem is" emphasizes
a. Result b. Problem c. Effect d. Solution
- Choosing one main problem and one main solution ensures
a. focus b. random ideas c. funny sentences d. long only

B

Reading Comprehension

It is commonly believed that only rich middle-aged businessmen suffer from stress. Anyone may become ill as a result of stress if they experience a lot of worry. Stress can be a friend or an enemy. It can warn you that you are under too much pressure and should change your way of life. It can kill you if you don't notice the warning signals.

When we are very frightened and worried, our bodies produce certain chemicals to help us fight what is troubling us. These produce the energy needed to run away fast from an object of fear. If we don't use up these chemicals or produce too many of them, they may harm us. The stomach, heart, skin, head and back are badly affected by stress. For example, any student in a final year can be under two stresses. He can be under great pressure preparing for his exams and a dispute with his father. He may wake up after sleeping badly discovering that his body was covered by red lumps. Stress can also cause car accidents, heart attacks, alcoholism and even suicide.

Our living and working conditions may put us under stress. Overcrowding in large cities, traffic jams, competition for jobs, uncertainty about the future may be stressful. If you have changed jobs or moved house in recent months, you are likely to fall ill. What can we do about stress? As with all illnesses, prevention is better than cure. When you are taking work home, you can't enjoy yourself. So you have to tell yourself that it is time to stop and join a relaxation club. To avoid stress, one should have a balanced life.

- This passage mainly deals with
 a. committing suicide and car accidents b. joining a relaxation club
 c. stress as a psychological problem d. job competition and their effects
- The sentence that can best summarize the third paragraph is
 a. pressures we are exposed to before exams b. stress can destroy our life
 c. some causes of stress and ways to overcome them d. we are always frightened
- When scared, our bodies get out
 a. illnesses caused by fear b. the stresses we suffer from
 c. intentions to put an end to our life d. some chemicals to combat this fear
- According to the passage, some people may feel when they move into a new house.
 a. stressed b. dishonest c. happy d. content
- Find out the word that means "a swelling under the skin which is a sign of illness".
 a. lung b. lump c. lamb d. lumber
- Why do you think that businessmen are always under stress? Because
 a. they are busy thinking about warning signals b. they tour the world very often
 c. they export goods all over the world d. they might lose lots of money
- According to the passage, stressful life is
 a. painless b. painful c. delighted d. enjoyable
- What do you think would happen if we overcome stress? We would
 a. suffer from many conflicts b. start making debates
 c. hinder progress and development d. enjoy peace of mind

- Social networking sites are among the most remarkable achievements of the modern technology, but they have some serious drawbacks that must be avoided.

١. تعد مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي من أبرز إنجازات التقنية الحديثة، حيث لها بعض السلبيات الخطيرة التي يجب تجنبها.

بد. تعد مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي من أبرز إنجازات التقنية الحديثة، لكن لها بعض السلبيات الخطيرة التي يمكن تجنبها.

ج. تعد مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي من أبرز إنجازات التقنية الحديثة، لكن لها بعض السلبيات الجادة التي يجب تجنبها.

د. تعد مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي من أبرز إنجازات التقنية الحديثة، لكن لها بعض السلبيات الخطيرة التي يجب تجنبها.

٢. قد تجعل التكنولوجيا الشباب أقل نشاطاً من الناحية البدنية. وقد يتسبب الضوء الذي يأتي من الأجهزة الرقمية في مشاكل صحية.

- Technology may make young people physically less active. The light that comes from digital devices may cause health problems.
- Technology may make young people physical less active. The light that comes from digital devices may cause health problems.
- Technology may make young people physically less active. The light that come from digital devices may cause health problems.
- Technology may make young people physically less active. The light that comes from digital devices may cause healthy problems.

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

- My alarm clock didn't ring, so I woke up late. (If)
- She didn't visit him because she didn't know his address. (Had)

Answer the following questions:

- Why did Aouda feel personally responsible for the trouble Fogg faced in Calcutta?
- What humanitarian explanation did Fogg give to Aouda for the time he lost in India?

Write an Essay of about (180) words on the following:

"Caring Communities"

1) Complete the following dialogue:

Osama and Samy are talking about the bank.

Samy ①

Osama I am going to the bank.

Samy ②

Osama To draw some money.

Samy Why do you need money?

Osama ③

Samy What brand will you buy?

Osama ④

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

My friend Aya has always loved writing stories and poems. When she was six, she won a prize for a poem she wrote. She has already written a book of stories. Now, she is writing her second book, but she hasn't finished it yet. She really likes to be creative. She has been playing the guitar for three years now. She has played it in two concerts. She was amazing. Aya would like to volunteer to teach writing and music to children one day. Her other dream is to create an app to help children to learn. She hasn't been to another country yet, but there are lots of places she wants to visit.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What hobbies does Aya have?
2. What is her other dream?
3. Do you think Aya is interested in writing? Why?

B. Choose the right answer:

4. Which of the following can be the best title of the text?
a. jobs b. Aya's dream c. stories d. travelling
5. The underlined pronoun it refers to
a. story b. first book c. second book d. app

3) A. Translate into Arabic:

All over the world, a lot of people are interested in using different means of communication. These means enable them to do a lot of tasks.

B. Translate into English:

يجب علينا المشاركة في الأعمال التطوعية لأن هذا يساعدنا على حل المشكلات .

يعتبر ارتفاع الأسعار مشكلة معقدة ويمكن حلها في زيادة الإنتاج والصادرات.



Unit 8

Creating a Better Community

Learning Outcomes

Reading

language

Listening

Writing

Speaking

- Skim the text to identify the general theme and overall message about change-makers.
- Scan the text to locate and list five change-maker traits mentioned or implied.
- Read the text carefully to identify two specific social problems solved by Egyptian innovators.
- Modals of Obligation and Necessity.
- Identify three major challenges faced by Mostafa Hemdan during the launch of RecycloBekia.
- Extract key details from an audio interview about Sara Fathy's mobile app.
- Design a campaign poster for a village street-cleaning initiative.
- Present a 2-minute oral plan for a technology project designed to solve a local Egyptian problem.

Unit 8

Lessons

Creating a Better Community

- 1 Change-Maker Stories
- 2 An Egyptian change-Maker



Key Vocabulary

change-maker ⁽ⁿ⁾	صانع التغيير	recycling ⁽ⁿ⁾	إعادة التدوير	e-waste ⁽ⁿ⁾	نفايات إلكترونية
initiative ⁽ⁿ⁾	مبادرة	passion ⁽ⁿ⁾	عاطفة / شغف	community ⁽ⁿ⁾	مجتمع
innovation ⁽ⁿ⁾	ابتكار	persistence ⁽ⁿ⁾	مثابرة	give access to	يسمح بالوصول إلى
determination ⁽ⁿ⁾	إصرار	teamwork ⁽ⁿ⁾	عمل جماعي	light a spark of hope	يشعل شرارة أمل
creativity ⁽ⁿ⁾	إبداع	entrepreneur ⁽ⁿ⁾	رائد أعمال	social responsibility	مسئولية اجتماعية

Main Vocabulary

extraordinary ^(adj)	غير عادي / مميز	funding ⁽ⁿ⁾	تمويل	interpret ^(v)	يفسر
low-cost ^(adj)	منخفض التكلفة	courage ⁽ⁿ⁾	شجاعة	transform ^(v)	يتحول
clean-up ⁽ⁿ⁾	تنظيف / حملة تنظيف	deed ⁽ⁿ⁾	عمل / فعل	overcome ^(v)	يتغلب على
vision ⁽ⁿ⁾	رؤية	individual ^(n/adj)	فرد / فردي	collect ^(v)	يجمع
launch ^(n/v)	يطلق / إطلاق	hesitation ⁽ⁿ⁾	تردد	import ^(v)	يستورد
endangered ^(adj)	مهدد بالانقراض	equipment ⁽ⁿ⁾	معدات	compete ^(v)	يتنافس
household ^(n/adj)	أسرة / أعمال المنزل	qualities ⁽ⁿ⁾	صفات	reduce ^(v)	يقلل
electronic ^(adj)	إلكتروني	nationality ⁽ⁿ⁾	جنسية	step ^(n/v)	خطوة / يخطو
difficulties ⁽ⁿ⁾	صعوبات	background ⁽ⁿ⁾	خلفية	provide ^(v)	يوفر
opportunities ⁽ⁿ⁾	فرص	meaningful ^(adj)	ذو معنى	adult ⁽ⁿ⁾	بالغ
neighborhood ⁽ⁿ⁾	حي / منطقة	effort ⁽ⁿ⁾	مجهود	inspire ^(v)	يلهم
movement ⁽ⁿ⁾	حركة	wildlife ⁽ⁿ⁾	الحياة البرية	limited ^(adj)	محدود
refusal ⁽ⁿ⁾	رفض	lack ^(n/v)	نقص / ينقص	unused ^(adj)	غير مستخدم
youth ⁽ⁿ⁾	الشباب	materials ⁽ⁿ⁾	مواد / خامات / مستلزمات	solution ⁽ⁿ⁾	حل
major ^(adj)	رئيسي / هام	starting point ⁽ⁿ⁾	نقطة البدء	support ^(n/v)	دعم / يدعم

Collocations

take positive action	يتخذ إجراء إيجابياً	overcome challenges	يتغلب على التحديات
make a difference	يحدث فرقاً	run businesses	يدير مشروعات / أعمال
face difficulties	يواجه صعوبات	design a logo	يصمم شعاراً
make a change	يحدث تغييراً	achieve meaningful goals	يحقق أهدافاً ذات معنى
launch projects	يطلق مشروعات	recycle electronic waste	يعيد تدوير النفايات الإلكترونية
have an impact on	يكون له تأثير على	collect plastic bottles	يجمع الزجاجات البلاستيكية
organize a clean-up	ينظم حملة تنظيف	teach digital skills	يعلم المهارات الرقمية

Expressions & Prepositions

lack of money / support	نقص المال / الدعم	contribute to	يساهم في
low-cost water-filtering system	نظام منخفض التكلفة لتنقية المياه	bring about	يحدث / يسبب
green community garden	حديقة مجتمعية خضراء	in common	مشارك
endangered wildlife	حياة برية مهددة بالانقراض	combine ... with	يجمع بين ... و...
spark of hope	شرارة أمل	give up	يستسلم / يتخلى عن
throw away	يلقي / يتخلص من	pile up	يتكدس / يتراكم
		transform / turn into	يتحول / يتحول إلى

Definitions

change-maker	صانع التغيير	▶ a person who creates positive change
determination	إصرار / عزيمة	▶ strong will to do something
initiative	مبادرة	▶ the ability to take action first
passion	عاطفة / شغف	▶ a very strong feeling of love, hatred, anger, enthusiasm, etc
give access to	يوفر الوصول الى	▶ to allow someone to enter, use, or get information from something
light a spark of hope	يشعل شرارة أمل	▶ to create a small, new feeling of hope, especially in a difficult situation
teamwork	عمل جماعي	▶ working together toward one goal
innovation	ابتكار	▶ creating new ideas or solutions
recycling	إعادة التدوير	▶ the process of collecting and changing waste materials into new products that can be used again.

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
innovation	ابتكار	creativity, invention, originality	imitation, tradition, routine
low-cost	منخفض التكلفة	cheap, affordable, inexpensive	expensive, costly, high-priced
passion	عاطفة / شغف	enthusiasm, love, dedication	indifference, apathy, boredom
persistence	مثابرة	determination, perseverance, endurance	giving up, weakness, hesitation
teamwork	عمل جماعي	cooperation, collaboration, unity	competition, conflict, isolation
access	وصول / يدخل	entry, availability, admission	denial, restriction, blockage
waste	يضيع / مخلفات	rubbish, trash, misuse, decay	recycle, reuse, conserve
endangered	معرض للخطر / للانقراض	threatened, at risk, vulnerable	safe, protected, secure
lack	نقص / عجز	shortage, absence, deficiency	abundance, sufficiency, plenty
support	دعم / يدعم	help, assistance, backing	opposition, refusal, neglect
overcome	يتغلب على	defeat, conquer, manage	fail, surrender, give up
extraordinary	غير عادي / مميز	exceptional, remarkable, outstanding	ordinary, normal, common

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
light (lit)	light	lit
inspire	inspiration	inspiring/ inspired
endanger	danger	endangered
innovate	innovation	innovative
access	access	accessible
persist	persistence	persistent
determine	determination	determined



Language Notes



Notice the Difference

innovation	ابتكار (تنفيذ الأفكار الجديدة عمليا)	↔	creativity	إبداع (التفكير في أفكار جديدة)
spark	يشعل / شرارة	↔	sparkle	يلمع / يريق
endangered	معرض للخطر / للانقراض	↔	dangerous	خطير
qualities	صفات / خصائص	↔	quantities	كميات
social	اجتماعي (له علاقة بالمجتمع)	↔	sociable	ودود / محب للإختلاط
launch	يطلق (مشروع/منتج)	↔	lunch	وجبة الغداء
community	مجتمع صغير (قرية، حي، مدرسة)	↔	society	المجتمع الكبير (دولة)
vision	رؤية / هدف مستقبلي	↔	version	نسخة / إصدار
electronic	إلكتروني	↔	electric	كهربائي
find (found)	يجد	↔	found (founded)	يؤسس
provide.... for	يزود بـ (شيء)	↔	provide with	يوفر لـ (اشخص)
allow..... to+inf.	يسمح لـ أن	↔	let+ inf.	يدع / يسمح لـ + فعل (بدون to)
import from	يستورد من	↔	export to	يصدر إلى
persist in	يصر على	↔	insist on	يصر على

tool, equipment, device & machine

tool	أداة (صغيرة تستخدم باليد لأداء مهمة بسيطة)	▶ A hammer is a useful tool for fixing furniture.
equipment	معدات (مجموعة أدوات أو أجهزة، غالباً كبيرة)	▶ The lab has modern scientific equipment .
device	جهاز (أداة إلكترونية أو تقنية)	▶ This device helps students learn online.
machine	آلة (تعمل بالطاقة أو الكهرباء لإنجاز عمل)	▶ The washing machine cleans clothes quickly.

endanger, danger, endangered & dangerous

endanger ^(v)	يعرض للخطر	▶ Pollution can endanger wildlife.
danger ⁽ⁿ⁾	خطر	▶ Driving fast is a serious danger .
endangered ^(adj)	معرض للخطر / للانقراض	▶ Pandas are endangered animals.
dangerous ^(adj)	خطير	▶ This road is very dangerous at night.

transform, transport, transplant, transfer & transmit

transform	يحوّل / يغير الشكل أو الحالة	▶ Education can transform lives completely.
transport	ينقل (أشخاص أو بضائع) / وسائل نقل	▶ Trucks transport goods between cities.
transplant	يزرع (عضو) / عملية زرع	▶ Doctors transplant organs to save lives.
transfer	ينقل (مال، معلومات)	▶ He transferred to another school last year.
transmit	يبيث / ينقل (إشارات أو أمراض)	▶ The virus can transmit through close contact.

"Change-Maker Stories"

Read the following text. Is there one fixed routine all over the world?

Around the world, ordinary people are turning into **extraordinary** ⁽¹⁾ **change-maker** ⁽²⁾ individuals who take positive action to make their **communities** ⁽³⁾ better places to live in.

A change-maker might begin with a simple idea, such as organizing a **neighborhood** ⁽⁴⁾ **clean-up** ⁽⁵⁾, planting trees, or **collecting plastic bottles** for **recycling** ⁽⁶⁾. Others **launch** projects that teach children digital skills, support small farmers, or protect **endangered wildlife**.

True change-makers do not wait for someone else to solve problems; instead, they use **creativity** ⁽⁷⁾, **teamwork** ⁽⁸⁾, and **determination** ⁽⁹⁾ to **bring about** real **solutions**. Even when they face **difficulties** like a **lack of money**, time, or support, they continue because they believe in the power of **persistence** ⁽¹⁰⁾. They understand that every major **movement** ⁽¹¹⁾ begins with a single step taken by a brave individual.

In one Egyptian village, for example, students **transformed** ⁽¹²⁾ a piece of unused land into a **green community garden** where families now grow vegetables together. In another city, a young engineer invented a **low-cost** ⁽¹³⁾ **water-filtering system** to give poor **households** access to clean drinking water. These **inspiring efforts** **prove** that age, **background**, or **nationality** show that while backgrounds may differ, **passion** ⁽¹⁴⁾ and action **allow individuals** to achieve meaningful goals **regardless of** their starting point.

Change-makers remind us that hope grows through action. Every small deed, when done with care and **courage** ⁽¹⁵⁾, contributes to building a **fairer**, healthier, and brighter world for everyone.



- (١) مميز
- (٢) صانع التغيير
- (٣) مجتمعات
- (٤) احياء
- (٥) حملة تنظيف
- (٦) إعادة التصنيع
- (٧) ابداع
- (٨) عمل جماعي
- (٩) عزيمة
- (١٠) مثابرة
- (١١) حركة
- (١٢) يحول
- (١٣) منخفض
- (١٤) التكلفة
- (١٥) شغف
- (١٦) شجاعة



Listening



Mostafa Hemdan is a young Egyptian engineer who decided to **turn** a serious problem **into** a **creative solution**. As a university student, he noticed the growing mountains of **electronic waste**, old computers, phones, and cables - **piling up** in Egypt. These **devices** contain dangerous **s** that **harm** both people and the environment if not **recycled** properly. **Instead of** ignoring the problem, Mostafa **took action**. With a small group of friends, he founded RecycloBekia, one of the first companies in the **Middle East** to collect and recycle electronic **waste** safely. Their goal was simple: protect the environment, **create jobs**, and change how people think about waste. At first, the team **faced** many **challenges**. Few people believed that young Egyptians could build a serious recycling business. **Funding** was **limited**, and **awareness** was low. However, through **persistence** and teamwork, Mostafa proved that **innovation** and **responsibility** can go hand in hand.

Today, RecycloBekia has safely recycled thousands of tons of e-waste and has **inspired** other young **entrepreneurs**. Mostafa believes that every big change begins with a small step. His story shows that **determination**, **vision**, and **teamwork** can truly light a spark of hope for a cleaner and greener Egypt.



Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

1. A/An is someone who takes action to improve the community. SB
a. household b. initiative c. change-maker d. determination
2. Volunteers often help improve their SB R3
a. community b. routine c. schedule d. argument
3. means using new ideas to solve problems.
a. Initiative b. Teamwork c. Innovation d. Determination
4. The project succeeded because students showed strong
a. pressure b. hesitation c. weakness d. initiative
5. Online learning helps.....access to education to students who live far from schools.
a. give b. make c. have d. cancel
6. Teachers encourage to help students solve problems.
a. pressure b. creativity c. repetition d. hesitation
7. The government has the to protect the environment.
a. community b. difficulty c. responsibility d. failure
8. His for helping others pushed him to volunteer to help his community.
a. refusal b. confusion c. recycling d. passion
9. Helping elderly people improves relationships within the local
a. community b. individual c. passion d. innovation
10. Large scientific projects usually succeed because of effective
a. quantity b. teamwork c. conflict d. isolation
11. Many countries promote to save natural resources.
a. damage b. burning c. recycling d. dumping
12. Young people can become by solving small problems around them.
a. competitors b. change-makers c. workers d. spectators
13. Social change often begins when one decides to act bravely.
a. individual b. crowd c. persistence d. access
14. Successful change-makers often a spark of hope through real actions.
a. stop b. light c. increase d. issue
15. Old phones and broken computers are classified as dangerous
a. paper waste b. plastic waste c. food waste d. e-waste
16. Learning new skills successfully requires, patience, and practice.
a. hesitation b. comfort c. persistence d. noise
17. Strong helps people continue working despite repeated failures.
a. difficulty b. determination c. recycling d. access
18. To create a small, new feeling of hope, especially in a difficult situation is to.....
a. light a spark of hope b. give access to c. teach digital skill d. recycle e-waste
19. Successful often take risks to turn innovative ideas into profitable businesses.
a. dreamers b. entrepreneurs c. consumers d. workers
20. helps turn creative ideas into useful solutions.
a. Innovation b. Tradition c. Routine d. Doubt



Exercise 01 Main Vocabulary

21. Her memory allows her to remember numbers after hearing them once. **SB R 3**
 a. normal b. extraordinary c. limited d. ordinary
22. Farmers use technology to improve production without high expenses.
 a. luxury b. expensive c. low-cost d. outdated
23. The beach removed plastic waste after the summer tourist season.
 a. clean-up b. discussion c. election d. low-cost
24. Leaders need clear to guide national development plans.
 a. pressure b. hesitation c. version d. vision
25. Samsung will a new smartphone during the technology exhibition.
 a. translate b. launch c. collapse d. destroy
26. Many animals disappear because of illegal hunting activities.
 a. seasonal b. dangerous c. artificial d. endangered
27. payments , like Vodafone Cash, make shopping faster and more convenient.
 a. Electronic b. Electric c. Manual d. Paper
28. Athletes face many before reaching international competitions.
 a. hobbies b. celebrations c. difficulties d. pleasures
29. Studying abroad offers students valuable for personal growth.
 a. dangers b. opportunities c. limits d. problems
30. Children played safely because their was quiet and clean.
 a. neighborhood b. factory c. continent d. desert
31. His to follow safety rules caused serious problems.
 a. decision b. support c. agreement d. refusal
32. Climate change remains a challenge facing the entire world.
 a. minor b. major c. temporary d. slight
33. The research project stopped because it did not receive enough
 a. funding b. courage c. community d. nationality
34. Firefighters show when they risk their lives to save others.
 a. warning b. individual c. courage d. access
35. Her before answering showed she was unsure.
 a. hesitation b. passion c. excitement d. courage
36. The of the satellite was delayed because of bad weather.
 a. failure b. accident c. launch d. decline
37. Discipline and responsibility are important for success.
 a. pressures b. qualities c. cancellations d. quantities
38. Students in international schools come from different social and cultural
 a. arguments b. plans c. routines d. backgrounds
39. Volunteering work gives people a/an sense of purpose.
 a. meaningful b. minor c. ordinary d. random
40. Success usually comes from hard work and continuous
 a. household b. hesitation c. effort d. comfort
41. Our project failed because of a/an of experience and determination.
 a. quantity b. increase c. gain d. lack
42. Teachers should students emotionally during stressful exam periods.
 a. silence b. support c. punish d. confuse

43. Technology can small businesses into successful global companies.
a. transform b. limit c. transport d. transmit
44. Many immigrants language difficulties through daily practice and interaction.
a. promote b. ignore c. increase d. overcome
45. The application helps users information quickly and efficiently.
a. lend b. waste c. collect d. damage
46. The factory must raw materials from neighboring countries.
a. import b. export c. produce d. compete
47. Several companies to attract customers with better prices.
a. complain b. compete c. depend d. notice
48. Please read the carefully before entering the construction area.
a. reward b. notice c. habit d. support
49. Walking daily helps stress and improve mental health.
a. increase b. heat c. spread d. reduce
50. The government plans to housing for low-income families.
a. provide b. remove c. prove d. damage
51. Sleep helps concentration and memory during exam periods.
a. confuse b. limit c. improve d. ignore
52. Great art can people to see the world differently.
a. avoid b. inspire c. cancel d. limit
53. Doctors have been searching for a permanent to the health problem.
a. determination b. excuse c. delay d. solution
54. He had to fear before speaking in front of a large audience.
a. repeat b. overcome c. collect d. create



Exercise Ph

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

55. Small acts of kindness can have a positive on others.
a. impact b. delay c. accident d. mistake
56. Successful athletes must challenges to reach international competitions.
a. overcome b. make c. avoid d. give
57. Universities projects to support scientific innovation.
a. face b. take c. lunch d. launch
58. Small efforts can a real difference in people's daily lives.
a. take b. do c. have d. make
59. Many students difficulties while balancing study and family responsibilities.
a. face b. give c. make d. take
60. Young volunteers want to change by helping people in poor areas.
a. do b. take c. make d. give
61. Students decided to a clean-up around the school yard.
a. make b. have c. organize d. take
62. Governments encourage citizens to electronic waste safely.
a. have b. recycle c. throw d. launch
63. Technology the greatest impact on modern communication.
a. has b. organize c. attend d. make

SB 23

64. Young people should positive action to improve their local communities.
a. make b. take c. collect d. give
65. Everyone deserves respect regardless background or nationality.
a. from b. of c. in d. with
66. The recipe combines healthy ingredients great taste.
a. for b. with c. by d. in
67. Helping others, even in small ways, can a difference in your community.
a. make b. take c. do d. give
68. Many small projects fail because of a of support during early stages.
a. lick b. lock c. leak d. lack
69. Education can bring positive change in people's lives.
a. up b. of c. with d. about

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

70. True innovation requires original thinking. The synonym of "innovation" is
a. creativity b. invention c. imitation d. tradition e. routine
71. Low-cost solutions are preferred when budgets are limited. The antonym of "low-cost" is
a. cheap b. inexpensive c. costly d. affordable e. expensive
72. Passion drives artists to work for long hours without feeling tired. The synonym of "passion" is
a. enthusiasm b. boredom c. dedication d. indifference e. apathy
73. Persistence helps athletes continue training. The synonym of "persistence" is
a. giving up b. perseverance c. weakness d. determination e. hesitation
74. Teamwork disappears when individuals work alone. The antonym of "teamwork" is
a. competition b. unity c. cooperation d. collaboration e. isolation
75. Access to education helps students build better futures. The synonym of "access" is
a. denial b. entry c. restriction d. availability e. blockage
76. Waste should be reduced by recycling and reusing materials. The synonym of "waste" is
a. rubbish b. recycle c. litter d. reuse e. conserve
77. Many animals are endangered because of climate change. The synonym of "endangered" is
a. threatened b. safe c. protected d. vulnerable e. secure
78. Endangered species need protection to survive. The antonym of "endangered" is
a. threatened b. safe c. protected d. vulnerable e. at risk
79. A lack of experience can affect job performance negatively. The synonym of "lack" is
a. shortage b. plenty c. deficiency d. sufficiency e. increase

إسداء النصيحة باستخدام يجب ولا يجب

Giving Advice: Should & Shouldn't

نستخدم **should / shouldn't** للنصيحة لنقول أن شيء ما جيداً (ينبغي فعله) أو غير جيد (لا ينبغي فعله).

بعد **should / shouldn't** يأتي الفعل في المصدر (بدون أي إضافات وبدون to).

تأتي **should / shouldn't** مع جميع الضمائر والأسماء سواء كانت مفرد أو جمع.

- ★ You **should** always **wash** your hands after you've touched the cat.
- ★ Tourists **should wear** sun cream when it's very hot.
- ★ You **shouldn't walk** too much in the sun.
- ★ You **shouldn't touch** that. It's dirty!
- ★ In summer, tourists **should** wear a hat and **ought not to** sit in the sun.

يتكون السؤال بـ (هل) كالاتي (ويكون معناه "هل يجب...؟")

Should + فاعل + مصدر + ...تكلمة الجملة... ?

- ★ **Should** you go to school every day? ⇨ Yes, I **should**. ⇨ No, I **shouldn't**.

يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام كالاتي:

should / shouldn't + subject + verb... ? أداة استفهام

- ★ What **should** I try doing?
- ⇨ You **should** definitely try some windsurfing.

لاحظ صيغة المبني للمجهول كالاتي:

should / shouldn't + be + P.P. + مفعول

- ★ You **should** eat a lot of vegetables and fruits as they are healthy. (active)
- ★ A lot of vegetables and fruits **should be eaten** as they are healthy. (passive)

هناك بعض المصطلحات الأخرى التي نستخدمها في النصيحة والتي تحمل محل **should** و **shouldn't**.

Should

You **ought to** + inf.
If I **were** you, I **would** + inf.
I **advise** you to + inf.
My **advice** to you is to + inf.
You **had better** + inf.
It is **better to** + inf.
It is **advisable** for to + inf.
It is **desirable** for to + inf.
It is **important** for ... to + inf.
It will be a **good** idea to + inf.

Shouldn't

You **ought not to** + inf.
If I **were** you, I **wouldn't** + inf.
I **advise** you **not to** + inf.
My **advice** to you is **not to** + inf.
You'd **better not** + inf.
It is **better not to** + inf.
It is **inadvisable** for to + inf.
It is **undesirable** for to + inf.
It is **important** for ... **not to** + inf.
It will be a **good** idea **not to** + inf.

نستخدم:

Modal verbs
of regret
(blame)

should (ought to) have + P.P. /
shouldn't (ought not to) have + P.P.

للتعبير عن اللوم أو الندم علي فعل أو عدم فعل شيء في الماضي.

- ❖ You **shouldn't have arrived** late for your exam.
- ❖ I'm sorry! I **ought to have come** on time.

الإلزام والضرورة

Obligation & Necessity

نستخدم **must / mustn't** (للتعبير عن الإلزام أو الضرورة أو التحريم).

بعد **must / mustn't** يأتي الفعل في المصدر (بدون أي إضافات وبدون **to**).

تأتي **must / mustn't** مع جميع الضمانر والأسماء سواء كانت مفرد أو جمع.

لاحظ استخدامات:

must / mustn't + inf.

- ★ You **must** follow the traffic rules. القواعد و القوانين
- ★ I **must work** hard for the exams next week. إلزام شخصي
- ★ I **must buy** a present for my mother. مشاعر قوية
- ★ You **must come** to my party tonight. دعوة قوية
- ★ They **mustn't eat** that cheese. It's green! - You **must stop** smoking. نصيحة قوية
- ★ We **must buy** souvenirs for our friends here. تذكرة بفعل شيء

يتكون السؤال بـ (هل) كالاتي (ويكون معناه "هل يجب...؟")

Must + فاعل + مصدر + ... ؟

- ★ **Must** I turn right here?
- ❖ Yes, you **must**.

يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام كالاتي:

must / mustn't + subject + verb... ؟

- ★ What **must** I do to avoid traffic fines?
- ❖ You **must** stick to the rules.

لاحظ صيغة المبني للمجهول كالاتي:

must / mustn't + be + P.P.

- ★ I **must buy** a present for my mother. (active)
- ★ A present **must be bought** for my mother. (passive)

يمكننا استبدال **must** بالتعبيرات التالية:

must + مصدر = { It's necessary
It's a necessity
It's a must
It's obligatory
It's lawful } + for to + inf.

- ★ You **must** turn right.
- ★ It is **obligatory** for you **to** turn right.
- ★ It is **a must** for you **to** turn right.

- ★ It is **necessary** for you **to** turn right.
- ★ It is **a necessity** for you **to** turn right.

⚡ لاحظ الفرق بين **must** و **a must**:

فعل مساعد بمعنى يجب ويأتي بعده المصدر

(اسم بمعنى ضرورة / يمكن ان يأتي بعدها to)

- ★ You **must** turn right.
- ★ It is **a must** for you **to** turn right.

⚡ لاحظ الفرق بين **necessary** و **a necessity**:

صفة بمعنى ضروري

اسم بمعنى ضرورة

- ★ It is **necessary** for you **to** turn right.
- ★ It is **a necessity** for you **to** turn right.

⚡ يمكننا استبدال **mustn't** بالتعبيرات التالية:

mustn't + مصدر =

It's not allowed to + inf.	ليس مسموحاً أن
It's not permitted to + inf.	ليس مسموحاً أن
It's forbidden to + inf.	محرم
It's prohibited to + inf.	من الممنوع
It's banned to + inf.	من الممنوع
It's against the law to + inf.	ضد القانون أن
It's illegal to + inf.	غير قانوني أن

- ★ You **mustn't** park your car here. - It is **against the law to** park your car here.
- ★ It is **not allowed to** park your car here. - It is **not permitted to** park your car here.
- ★ It is **forbidden to** park your car here. - It is **banned to** park your car here.
- ★ It is **prohibited to** park your car here. - It is **illegal to** park your car here.

⚡ يمكننا أيضاً استخدام **mustn't** للتعبير عن نصيحة قوية / الالتزام الشخصي.

- ★ You **mustn't** waste your time. ★ I **mustn't** leave my bedroom untidy.

⚡ يمكننا أيضاً استخدام **can't** للتعبير عن عدم السماح بالقيام بشيء ما.

- ★ You **can't** smoke in hospitals.

(have to / has to / need to)

⚡ نستخدم **have to / has to / need to** للتعبير عن إلزام مفروض علينا.

⚡ بعد **have to / has to / need to** يأتي الفعل في المصدر (بدون أي إضافات).

⚡ تأتي **has to / needs to** مع المفرد و **he - she - it**

⚡ تأتي **have to / need to** مع الجمع و **we - they - I - you**

- ⇒ We **have to** go to school on time.
- We **need to** go to school on time.
- ⇒ She **has to** get a passport to travel to London.

⚡ في حالة النفي نستخدم:

don't have to / doesn't have to
don't need to / doesn't need to / needn't

+ inf.

- ★ She **doesn't have to** hurry, she isn't late for school.
- ★ They **don't have to** buy bread; there is much in the fridge.

Enrich your language

يكون السؤال بـ (هل) كالاتى (ويكون معناه "هل يجب...؟")

Do / Does + فاعل + have to / need to + inf. ... ?

★ Do you **have to** hurry?

⇒ Yes, we **do**.

⇒ No, we **don't**.

يكون السؤال بأداة استفهام كالاتى:

do / does + فاعل + have to / need to + inf. ... ?

★ What **does** he **have to** do to avoid traffic fines?

⇒ He **has to** stick to the rules.

لاحظ صيغة المبني للمجهول كالاتى:

have to / has to / need to + be + P.P.

★ I **have to buy** a present for my friend.

(active)

★ A present **has to be bought** for my friend.

(passive)

للتعبير عن الضرورة فى الماضى نستخدم:

had to + inf.

★ I **couldn't** go out because I **had to** do my homework.

★ We **had to** do computer studies when we were at prep school.

فى حالة النفى نستخدم:

didn't have to + inf.

★ She **didn't have to** hurry, she wasn't late for school.

★ We **didn't have to** do computer studies when we were at primary school.

لاحظ أن:

had to + مصدر = It was necessary (for + ضمير مفعول / فاعل) to + مصدر

★ I **had to** do my homework, so I **couldn't** go out.

= **It was necessary for me** to do my homework.

تعبير **didn't have to** عن أن الشيء كان غير ضرورى لذلك لم يفعله الشخص.

أما **needn't have + p.p.** تعبر عن أن الشخص فعل الشيء على الرغم أنه كان غير ضرورى.

★ He **didn't have to get up** early. (so he didn't get up early)

★ He **needn't have got up** early. (but he got up early)

نستخدم التركيب **be to** بمعنى يجب للتعبير عن الضرورة (**am - is - are + to + inf.**).

★ Nadia **is to** admit that she is lazy.

نستخدم التركيب **need to be + P.P.** للتعبير عن المبني المجهول ويساوي **need + ing**

★ This room **needs to be cleaned**.

= This room **needs cleaning**.



انتظروا

GIANTS

كتاب مراجعة العمالة
للمصف الثانى الثانوى

GIANTS



تستخدم **must + inf.** للتعبير عن إلزام شخصي والمشاعر القوية والأمنيات وعمل الدعوات والنصيحة القوية وتذكير أنفسنا بشيء.

- ★ I **must work** hard for the exams next week.
- ★ I **must buy** a present for my mother.
- ★ You **must come** to my party tonight.
- ★ You **must stop smoking**.

إلزام شخصي
مشاعر قوية
دعوة قوية
نصيحة قوية

لاحظ
الاختلاف بين
**must - have to
need to**

تستخدم **have to / has to + infinitive** مع القواعد أو عندما لا تمتلك اختيار لفعل شيء ما (مضطر إلى).

- ★ We **have to go** to school every day.
- ★ My father **doesn't have to** work today because it is a holiday.
- ★ We **don't have to** get up early. It's a holiday.

تستخدم **need to + inf.** للتعبير عن الحاجة إلى شيء معين ونفيها **don't need to / needn't + inf.**

- ★ Hassan **needs to** go to the bank after he finishes work.
- ★ I **don't need to buy / needn't buy** a new pen. I've already got one.

must
mustn't
should
shouldn't
needn't

مصدر
+
يلون to



do - don't
does - doesn't
did - didn't
will - won't

have to
need to

have
has
had
need(s)

مصدر
+ to
اجباري معهم to

had to + inf.
didn't have to + inf.
needn't have + P.P
should have + P.P

الماضي

don't have to
don't need to
needn't

مصدر
+
علم الضرورة

have to
has to
had to
need to
should (shouldn't)
must (mustn't)

be + P.P
المجهول



Exercise 04 Language Level 1

1. Students work together to achieve common goals. SB R3
 a. must b. shouldn't c. can't d. don't have to
2. He had to come early because it necessary. SB R3
 a. is b. was c. will be d. had
3. Students respect others to build a caring community. SB R3
 a. must b. shouldn't c. can't d. don't have to
4. Sara work very hard at university to achieve her goals. SB
 a. have to b. must c. doesn't have to d. should have
5. Her team spend much money because free tools were available online. SB
 a. had to b. should have c. didn't have to d. must
6. You believe in yourself if you want to make a difference in technology. SB
 a. must b. have to c. don't have to d. mustn't
7. They test the app carefully before releasing it to users. SB
 a. don't have to b. have to c. has to d. mustn't
8. Young engineers protect users' data; it's against the rules to share it. SB
 a. must b. have to c. don't have to d. needn't
9. We wait for permission to start a good project - just begin! SB
 a. need to b. don't have to c. had to d. shouldn't have
10. Last year, Sara learn several new coding languages for her job. SB
 a. had to b. mustn't c. shouldn't have d. has to
11. The designers.....checked their code more carefully; it caused some errors later. SB
 a. shouldn't have b. should have c. needn't have d. had to
12. Students wear uniforms at this school.
 a. must b. mustn't c. should d. shouldn't
13. You sleep in the same bedding without cleaning it for many days. الفنن ٢٠٢٤
 a. should b. needn't to c. mustn't d. must
14. Drivers stop their cars when the traffic lights are red. صان الحجر ٢٠٢٤
 a. mustn't b. must c. shouldn't d. needn't
15. When you go to Egypt, you visit the Pyramids. They are fantastic! أبو تشت ٢٠٢٤
 a. needn't b. must c. have d. need to
16. You take photographs here; it is a military area. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
 a. mustn't b. shouldn't c. must d. should
17. We speak when the teacher's speaking. It is not allowed. الصالحية ٢٠٢٤
 a. don't have to b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. oughtn't to
18. There is a "No Smoking" sign. We smoke here. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
 a. shouldn't b. should c. mustn't d. must
19. We respect and obey the law to live peacefully. سبلخ غازی ٢٠٢٤
 a. must b. needn't c. don't have to d. mustn't
20. A visitor to a hospital stop smoking there. It's banned. مطروح ٢٠٢٤
 a. must b. mustn't c. have to d. needn't
21. "You never smoke again. It is very dangerous for you," the doctor said. أشمون ٢٠٢٤
 a. must b. mustn't c. oughtn't d. ought
22. You to eat a lot of sweets; this isn't healthy. EM
 a. shouldn't b. ought not c. mustn't d. needn't
23. You keep away from uncovered electric wires or you will be electrocuted. EM
 a. ought not b. mustn't c. ought d. must



Exercise 01 Language Level 2

24. It isn't to climb the trees here. You mustn't climb them. كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣ البليتا ٢٠٢٤
 a. allowed b. banned c. permission d. forbidden
25. Emam Ashour hurt his shoulder during the match and go to hospital for treatment.
 a. should b. needs to c. had to d. has to
26. Do you tell your parents about your fault? ديرب نجم ٢٠٢٤
 a. have to b. need c. should d. must
27. You to eat cheese and drink milk to get calcium. نقادة ٢٠٢٤
 a. must b. should c. ought d. mustn't
28. It is "No parking" here. You to park in this area or you will pay a fine. العياط ٢٠٢٤
 a. must b. mustn't c. aren't allowed d. needn't
29. There's a lot of dust on the bookshelf. You clean your room more often. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
 a. must b. mustn't c. have d. shouldn't
30. I've already watered the plants; you to do it again. شربين ٢٠٢٤
 a. needn't b. shouldn't c. don't need d. mustn't
31. It is necessary to wear your uniform. You wear it. العمرائية ٢٠٢٤
 a. should b. has to c. oughtn't d. have to
32. It's a/an for all of us to protect the country from any danger. قويسنا ٢٠٢٤
 a. necessary b. must c. has to d. importance
33. Tourists take their passports with them when they go abroad. روكسي ٢٠٢٤
 a. don't have to d. needn't c. must d. mustn't
34. Our boss is so serious, so we all be in the office at 7.30. ملوى ٢٠٢٤
 a. must b. have to c. should d. can
35. Is it a/an to take this medicine? السويس ٢٠٢٤ البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٤
 a. advise b. unnecessary c. necessary d. must
36. Drivers wear a seat belt while driving into the city. الحسينية ٢٠٢٤
 a. need b. might c. must have d. have to
37. He get up early because it was a holiday yesterday, so he slept till late. روض الفرج ٢٠٢٤
 a. needn't have b. didn't have to c. mustn't d. shouldn't
38. you play music loudly? I have to concentrate on my study. شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤
 a. Can b. Could c. Ought to d. Must
39. Emad cut his leg and go to hospital for treatment. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
 a. should b. needs to c. had to d. has to
40. Ali lost all his money, so he borrow some from a friend. القوصية ٢٠٢٣
 a. had to b. needn't c. didn't have to d. has to
41. Mohammed take his sunglasses because it was cloudy. البليتا سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
 a. had to b. needn't c. must d. didn't have to
42. You promote your career skills; it is highly recommended. EM
 a. shouldn't b. had to c. would prefer d. ought to
43. They all be careful to avoid danger on the working site last time. EM
 a. have to b. had to c. needed d. should
44. It necessary to check out before 12 p.m., so I had to leave on time. EM
 a. is b. will be c. was d. wasn't
45. Old cans and bottles must غرب شبرا ٢٠٢٤
 a. be recycling b. recycle c. be recycled d. recycling

46. Yesterday, I stay at home with my little sister as my parents weren't out. ٢٠٢٤ سمالوط
a. must b. didn't have to c. need to d. had to
47. They are not here. They leave early. ٢٠٢٤ الباجور
a. had to b. needn't c. must d. should have
48. He has plenty of time, so he hurry. ٢٠٢٤ أطفيح
a. doesn't need b. don't need to c. hasn't got d. needn't
49. Students mustn't use their mobile phones during the lessons. This means it's
a. forbidden b. not necessary c. necessary d. optional
50. It's to smoke in a factory. ٢٠٢٣ الشرقية
a. necessary b. useful c. good d. banned
51. Your car must ; it is no longer safe for the journey. ٤م
a. to be rechecked b. been rechecked c. recheck d. be rechecked
52. You go to bed early to be in good health. ٤م
a. would like b. would prefer c. had better d. prefer



Exercise ٥٨ Language Level 3

53. I think you sleep early and get up early to be healthy. I only advise you. ٢٠٢٤ العياط
a. ought b. can't c. might d. had better
54. We run to the museum because it was already closed when we got there.
a. needn't have b. doesn't have to c. don't have to d. don't need to
55. She do this work today because she can do it tomorrow. ٢٠٢٤ البليفا
a. mustn't b. doesn't have to c. needn't d. b & c
56. You must try some of this cake. This's a/an ٢٠٢٤ قليوب
a. warm invitation b. law c. deduction d. strong reminder
57. A: I've got a cold. B: Then you'd stay in bed. ٢٠٢٤ قليوب
a. have to b. need to c. should d. better
58. Your essay has some mistakes. It again. ٢٠٢٣ الدلنجات ٢٠٢٤ الفيوم
a. should revise b. should have revised c. shouldn't be revised d. should be revised
59. I don't know what to solve this problem; I need your urgent advice. ٤م
a. should I do b. did I have to do c. I should do d. I needn't do
60. I advise my brother not to stay up late. This means he stay up late. ٤م
a. would rather b. should c. ought not d. had better not
61. You cut down that tree, it was so beautiful. ٢٠٢٣ أسبوط
a. shouldn't b. mustn't c. shouldn't have d. didn't have to
62. The car You are starting to lose control. ٢٠٢٣ كفر الدوار
a. must be stopped b. should not stop
c. must stop d. should have stopped
63. You to the factory yesterday as it was an official holiday. ٢٠٢٣ شين القناطر
a. needn't go b. had to c. needn't have gone d. mustn't go
64. You mustn't eat too much salt. This is ٢٠٢٣ هيا
a. a rule or law b. advice c. suggestion d. very strong advice
65. You missed a great party last night. You come. Why didn't you?
a. must b. shouldn't c. should have d. should
66. It is get up early.
a. better to b. better c. must d. necessity
67. Why must you mispronounce my name every time? This is a
a. prohibition b. necessity c. criticism d. suggestion

68. You **mustn't** smoke in sleeping rooms. This is a
 a. prohibition b. necessity c. criticism d. suggestion
69. You **needn't** answer all the questions. Answer 2 out of 6. **Needn't** here expresses
 a. lack of necessity b. necessity c. prohibition d. impossibility
70. Why did he get up early? He..... got up so early. He **could** have stayed in bed longer.
 a. had to b. must have c. needn't have d. needn't
71. "You **must** have dinner with me." This shows
 a. an invitation b. a strong advice c. a must d. a recommendation
72. You **should** take some rest. It's
 a. advisable b. necessity c. a must d. inadvisable
73. I really want to be in shape. Can you tell me what?
 a. I have to do b. do I have to do c. have I to do d. must I do
74. No one to take this medicine since they are very well.
 a. has b. don't have c. have d. doesn't have
75. The driver take a side road.
 a. are to b. need c. is to d. have to
76. "I **needn't** have bought sweets". This means that the speaker sweets.
 a. bought b. didn't buy c. had to buy d. should have bought
77. She had already had her lunch. You her all these sandwiches.
 a. don't need to buy b. needn't have bought c. needn't buy d. didn't have to buy
78. You **mustn't** park outside the entrance. 'mustn't' is used here to talk about
 a. criticism and blame b. rules and laws c. no obligation d. invitation
79. Which of the following **doesn't show** prohibition?
 a. You **mustn't** lean against the door of the metro.
 b. You **aren't** allowed to take photographs here.
 c. You **needn't** buy more bread today.
 d. You **aren't** permitted to drive your car without wearing a seat belt.
80. Which of the following **doesn't** show advice?
 a. It's advisable to wear cotton clothes in the winter.
 b. You **should** follow these tips to avoid making mistakes.
 c. It's very necessary to follow the coach's instructions.
 d. You **ought** to be more careful when crossing the street.

بسيون ٢٠٢٤

القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

إسنا ٢٠٢٣

غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٤ القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

قليق ٢٠٢٤

عجم

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

- You **needn't** finish the report today. (be) **SB R3**
- It was a **must** to clean my bedroom. (had to) **SB**
- Ali **didn't** buy his dad the magazine he wanted. (should) **SB**
- It's **banned** to smoke in hospitals. (mustn't) **SB**
- It was **unnecessary** to buy extra items. (didn't need) **SB**
- Doctors' duty is to help patients. (must) **SB**
- It's **necessary** to wear a seat belt. (must)
- It's a **bad idea** to eat junk food every day. (shouldn't)
- It's **important** to apologize when you're wrong. (should)
- It's **necessary** to lock the door at night. (must)
- It's a **bad idea** to drive without a licence. (shouldn't)
- It's **important** to protect public property. (should)
- It's a **good idea** to learn about your country's history. (should)
- It is **necessary** to obey traffic rules. (must)
- It was **necessary** for him to wear a uniform. (had to)

Unit 8

Lessons

Creating a Better Community

- 3 The Future Builders
- 4 The Skills of a Change-Maker
- 5 A Campaign Poster



Key Vocabulary

empathy ⁽ⁿ⁾ تعاطف / فهم مشاعر الآخرين	perseverance ⁽ⁿ⁾ مثابرة / إصرار	separate ^(adj/v) منفصل / يفصل
apathy ⁽ⁿ⁾ لامبالاة / فتور	enthusiasm ⁽ⁿ⁾ حماس	dreamers ⁽ⁿ⁾ الحالمون
indifference ⁽ⁿ⁾ عدم اهتمام	obstacles ⁽ⁿ⁾ عقبات	achievers ⁽ⁿ⁾ الفاعلون / المنجزون
recognition ⁽ⁿ⁾ تقدير / إعراف	participation ⁽ⁿ⁾ مشاركة	campaign ^(n/v) حملة / يقوم بحملة
awareness ⁽ⁿ⁾ وعي	mentorship ⁽ⁿ⁾ إرشاد / توجيه	creative thinking تفكير إبداعي
misunderstanding ⁽ⁿ⁾ سوء الفهم	barrier ⁽ⁿ⁾ حاجز / عائق	

Main Vocabulary

curiosity ⁽ⁿ⁾ فضول / حب الاستطلاع	healthcare ⁽ⁿ⁾ رعاية صحية	measure ^(v) إجراء / يقيس
imagination ⁽ⁿ⁾ خيال	education ⁽ⁿ⁾ تعليم	skilled ^(adj) ماهر
cooperation ⁽ⁿ⁾ تعاون	strength ⁽ⁿ⁾ قوة	feedback ⁽ⁿ⁾ تغذية راجعة / ملاحظات
communication ⁽ⁿ⁾ تواصل	confusion ⁽ⁿ⁾ ارتباك	shape ^(n/v) شكل / هيئة / يشكل
competition ⁽ⁿ⁾ منافسة	pollution ⁽ⁿ⁾ تلوث	workshop ⁽ⁿ⁾ ورشة عمل
achievement ⁽ⁿ⁾ إنجاز	failure ⁽ⁿ⁾ فشل	open-source ^(adj) مصدر مفتوح
eagerness ⁽ⁿ⁾ لهفة	safety ⁽ⁿ⁾ أمان	motivating ^(adj) محفز
understanding ^(n/adj) فهم / متفهم	volunteer ^(n/v) متطوع / يتطوع	obligation ⁽ⁿ⁾ التزام / واجب
accessibility ⁽ⁿ⁾ إمكانية الوصول	misunderstand ^(v) يسيء الفهم	necessity ⁽ⁿ⁾ ضرورة
underestimate ^(v) يستخف به	literacy ⁽ⁿ⁾ معرفة	inversion ⁽ⁿ⁾ قلب ترتيب الجملة
coding ⁽ⁿ⁾ برمجة	slogan ⁽ⁿ⁾ شعار	hinder ^(v) يعيق / يعرقل
essential ^(adj) أساسي / ضروري	developer ⁽ⁿ⁾ مطور / منشئ	creative ^(adj) مبدع
brilliant ^(adj) رائع / لامع / ذكي	encourage ^(v) يشجع	leader ⁽ⁿ⁾ قائد
practical ^(adj) عملي	purpose ⁽ⁿ⁾ هدف / غاية	environmental ^(adj) بيئي
distinguish ^(v) يميز / يفرق بين	prevent ^(v) يمنع	trust ^(n/v) ثقة / يثق

Collocations

access education يتيح الوصول إلى التعليم	develop their first app يتطور تطبيقهم الأول
access healthcare يتيح الوصول إلى الرعاية الصحية	express their ideas يعبرون عن أفكارهم
build trust يبني الثقة	play a role in يلعب دوراً في
raise awareness ينشر / يرفع مستوى الوعي	join a campaign ينضم إلى حملة
create change يحدث تغيير	develop the right skills يتطور المهارات المناسبة
take measures يتخذ إجراءات	cause confusion يسبب ارتباكاً
create competition يخلق منافسة	create a real impact يخلق تأثير حقيقي
share responsibilities يتقاسم / يشارك المسؤوليات	celebrate success يحتفل بالنجاح

Expressions & Prepositions

innovation meets purpose	الابتكار عندما يخدم هدفًا	translate..... into	يترجم إلى
turn vision into action	تحويل الرؤية إلى واقع	passionate about	شغوف بـ
no mountain is too high	لا شيء مستحيل	adapt to	يتكيف مع
no challenge is too great	لا يوجد مستحيل	separates dreamers from achievers	يُميز الحالمين عن المنجزين
digital literacy	المعرفة الثقافية	participate in	يشارك في
female participation	مشاركة نسائية	benefit from	يستفيد من
voice commands	أوامر صوتية	deal with	يتعامل مع
with special needs	ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة	focus on	يركز على

Definitions

empathy	تعاطف	► understanding other people's feelings
mentorship	إرشاد / توجيه	► teaching or guiding others
recognition	تقدير / اعتراف	► when someone is accepted, praised, or noticed for what they have done or who they are
enthusiasm	حماسة	► eagerness and lively interest or enjoyment in doing something
obstacle	عقبة	► something that hinders or prevents progress or doing something else
perseverance	مثابرة / إصرار	► the ability to keep trying and not give up, even when facing difficulties
separate	يفصل	► to divide or distinguish one thing from another
creative thinking	تفكير ابداعي	► finding new and original solutions by using imagination and curiosity.

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
separate	منفصل / يفصل	different, distinct, divide, split	united, connected, unite, combine
enthusiasm	حماس	eagerness, excitement, passion	boredom, indifference, apathy
perseverance	مثابرة	determination, persistence, endurance	giving up, weakness, surrender
obstacle	عقبة	barrier, difficulty, blockage	aid, help, advantage
empathy	تعاطف	understanding, compassion, sensitivity	cruelty, indifference, coldness
mentorship	إرشاد / توجيه	guidance, coaching, supervision	neglect, abandonment
recognition	تقدير / اعتراف	appreciation, acknowledgment, praise	ignorance, neglect, disregard
creative	مبدع	inventive, imaginative, original	uncreative, traditional, dull
cooperation	تعاون	teamwork, collaboration, partnership	competition, conflict, opposition
distinguish	يُميز	differentiate, identify, separate	confuse, mix, overlook
brilliant	رائع / ذكي	excellent, outstanding, intelligent	poor, dull, average
misunderstand	يسيء الفهم	misinterpret, confuse	understand, comprehend, realize

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
misunderstand	يسيء الفهم	misunderstanding	سوء فهم	misunderstood	أسيء فهمه
recognize	يتعرف على / يعترف بـ	recognition	اعتراف / تقدير	recognized	مُعترف به
participate	يشارك	participation	مشاركة	participating	مشارك
separate	يفصل	separation	انفصال	separate	منفصل
trust	يثق	trust	ثقة	trusted	موثوق به
cooperate	يتعاون	cooperation	تعاون	cooperative	تعاوني
create	يخلق / ينشئ	creativity	إبداع	creative	مبدع



Language Notes



Notice the Difference

dreamer	حالم (لديه حلم ولا ينفذ)	↔	achiever	منفذ (يحلم و ينفذ في الواقع)
recognize	يعترف بـ أو يتعرف على قيمة، حقيقة، أو شخص	↔	admit	يعترف بـ خطأ أو ذنب
empathy	فهم مشاعر الآخرين	↔	sympathy	الشعور بالأسف تجاه الآخرين
benefit of (n)	فائدة	↔	benefit from (v)	يستفيد من
adapt	يتكيف	↔	adopt	يتبنى
skilled	ماهر (بالتدريب والخبرة)	↔	talented	موهوب (بالمفطرة)
cooperation	تعاون عام / يومي	↔	collaboration	تعاون رسمي / أكاديمي
strength (n)	قوة	↔	strengthen (v)	يقوى
skilled	ماهر (الشخص)	↔	skillful	ماهر (وصف الفعل / الأداء)
motivating	محفز (سبب)	↔	motivated	يشعر بالتحفيز
disability	إعاقة (ذهنية/جسدي)	↔	inability	عدم قدرة على فعل الشيء

enthusiasm, enthusiastic & enthusiast

enthusiasm (n)	حماسة	▶ She showed great enthusiasm during the campaign
enthusiastic (adj)	متحمس	▶ The students were enthusiastic about the school trip
enthusiast (n)	متحمس	▶ He is a technology enthusiast

rise, raise, arise & aroused

raise (d) + مفعول	يرى حيوانات / يجمع مال / يرفع	▶ Raise your hand if you want to answer. ▶ He raised a lot of money for charity.
rise (rose - risen)	يرتفع / تشرق / يستيقظ (بدون مفعول)	▶ The sun rises in the east. ▶ I rise at 8:00 in the morning.
arise (arose - arisen)	يزيد عن الحد / يحدث / ينشأ	▶ A lot of problems arise from misunderstanding.
arouse (d) + مفعول	يثير / يوقظ	▶ His behavior aroused the suspicion of the police.

الاقبال

Inversion

تعني تقديم الفعل على الفاعل وتستخدم عادة للتأكيد:

الجملة العادية:

← Sara is skilled in coding and passionate about society.

الجملة المنعكسة (Inversion):

← Not only Sara is skilled but she is also passionate about society.

أهم الكلمات التي تستخدم معها

Inversion

Never

Rarely / Seldom

No sooner ... than

Hardly / Barely / Scarcely ... when

Not only ... but also

Little

Nowhere

On no account

Not until / Only after / Only when

Never have I seen this.

Seldom do we meet such people.

No sooner had she left than he called.

Hardly had he arrived when it started to rain.

Not only is he smart, but he is also kind.

Little did she know the truth.

Nowhere will you find better food.

On no account must this be repeated.

Only after the meeting did he understand.

للحظ عندما تبدأ الجملة بعبارة ظرفية سلبية، فإن ذلك يؤدي إلى انعكاس بين الفاعل والفعل المساعد (صيغة سؤال)

- Not only explain the rule, but she gives examples.
a. the teacher does b. does the teacher c. the teacher is d. the teacher will
- Hardly ring when students leave their seats.
a. does the bell b. the bell rings c. rings the bell d. the bell does
- Not only all day at the wedding but also the band is late.
a. it is raining b. it has rained c. it will rain d. is it raining
- Only after the test feel relaxed.
a. students do b. students are c. do students d. are students

للحظ تقديم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل في الجملة الرئيسية (الجملة الثانية) إذا بدأت الجملة بكلمات مثل:

(Not until / Not since / Only when / Only after / Only if / Only by)

- ★ Not until they had finished their studies did they feel prepared for the exam.
- ★ Not since last summer have they visited the beach.
- ★ Only if she apologizes will they forgive her.

للحظ عدم استخدام comma في الجملة المنعكسة لأن كلاهما معاً يشكلان جملة واحدة متصلة

- Not until the 1990s
a. the cell phone was invented b. was the cell phone invented
c. did the cell phone invent d. the cell phone invented
- the food on the table did we start to eat.
a. No sooner had we placed b. When we had placed
c. Before we had placed d. Not until we had placed
- Only after testing the device if it worked.
a. that we knew b. will we know c. when had we known d. we knew

للحظ تقديم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل في الجملة الأولى إذا بدأت الجملة بكلمات مثل:

(Not until late - Only then - Not until + time)

- ★ Not until late did I go to bed.
 - ★ Only then did he understand the truth.
- Not until after ten years his father.
a. did he meet b. he met c. had he meet d. he had met

Reading



"The Skills of a Change-Maker"

Becoming a **change-maker** is not only about having great ideas; it's about **developing the right skills** to make those ideas real. Around the world, young people are discovering that **passion** alone is not enough they must also learn how to plan, **cooperate** ⁽¹⁾, and stay strong when facing challenges. Successful change-makers combine **enthusiasm** ⁽²⁾ with **practical abilities** ⁽³⁾ that **turn vision into action**.

First, they need excellent **communication** ⁽⁴⁾ skills. They have to express their ideas clearly, listen carefully to others, and build **trust** ⁽⁵⁾ within their teams. Without communication, even the most **brilliant** ⁽⁶⁾ idea can be lost or **misunderstood** ⁽⁷⁾.

Second, **creative thinking** is essential. Many social or **environmental** ⁽⁸⁾ problems don't have simple answers. By using **imagination** ⁽⁹⁾ and **curiosity** ⁽¹⁰⁾, change-makers can discover new solutions where others see **obstacles** ⁽¹¹⁾.

Teamwork is another key to success. Real change doesn't have to happen alone; it grows through **cooperation** ⁽¹²⁾. Good **leaders** ⁽¹³⁾ inspire others, share **responsibilities** ⁽¹⁴⁾, and **celebrate every small success** together.

Finally, **perseverance** ⁽¹⁵⁾ - the **strength** to continue despite **failure** ⁽¹⁶⁾ or fear - **separates dreamers** from **achievers**. True change-makers need to learn from mistakes and keep moving forward with courage.

When these skills work together, amazing things happen. Change-makers prove that **no mountain is too high** when communication, **creativity** ⁽¹⁷⁾, and **cooperation** walk side by side. The future belongs to those who are **brave** enough to act.



- (١) يتعاون
- (٢) حماسة
- (٣) قدرات
- (٤) تواصل
- (٥) ثقة
- (٦) رائع
- (٧) أسى فهمه
- (٨) يبلى
- (٩) خيال
- (١٠) فضول
- (١١) عقبات
- (١٢) تعاون
- (١٣) قادة
- (١٤) مسئوليات
- (١٥) متابرة
- (١٦) فشل
- (١٧) ابداع



Listening



Across Egypt and the Arab world, young women are **shaping** the future through science, engineering, and technology. Among them is Sara Fathy, a 12-year-old software **developer** from Cairo who designs apps that help people with **disabilities** access **education** and **healthcare**. Not only is Sara skilled in coding, but she is also **passionate** about social change.

When she was at university, Sara had to work hard to **balance** her studies and her dream of creating technology for everyone. She needed to learn new programming languages and understand **accessibility** tools that could help people with special needs. Her team didn't have to buy expensive software; instead, they used free **open-source** programs to develop their first app. Sara realized that many people **lacked access** to online tools because of language **barriers** or physical challenges. She and her small team created an **application** that **translates** voice **commands** into Arabic and English. They had to test it many times before it worked **perfectly**. The project received national **recognition** and proved that no challenge is too great when **innovation** meets **purpose**.

Today, Sara believes that more women must join the tech field. She says that women don't have to wait for **permission** to lead- they only need to believe in themselves. Through **workshops** and **mentorship** programs, Sara trains girls in **coding** and **digital literacy**. Her message is clear: We should never **underestimate** what a woman can build when she believes in herself.



Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

1. Conflicts often happen because of **S3 R3**
a. agreement b. misunderstanding c. cooperation d. fairness
2. means eagerness and lively interest or enjoyment in doing something.
a. Empathy b. Mentorship c. Recognition d. Enthusiasm
3. Something that hinders or prevents progress or doing something else is a/an
a. trust b. campaign c. obstacle d. purpose
4. Doctors must have to deal kindly with patients experiencing pain.
a. empathy b. pressure c. authority d. argument
5. Schools now teach to prepare students for digital future.
a. dangers b. literature c. coding d. history
6. in sports builds teamwork and discipline among teenagers.
a. Participation b. Distance c. Conflict d. Punishment
7. She answered with, showing neither anger nor interest.
a. indifference b. surprise c. enthusiasm d. sympathy
8. Ministry of Education will for safer online behavior.
a. ignore b. hinder c. campaign d. distinguish
9. The scientist received for his important environmental research.
a. conflict b. discussion c. refusal d. recognition
10. Schools play a role in spreading of digital safety.
a. awareness b. weakness c. obstacles d. confusion
11. separates successful students from those who quit early.
a. Failure b. Silence c. Perseverance d. Fear
12. The coach praised the team's during the difficult match.
a. confusion b. enthusiasm c. obstacle d. campaign
13. Good leaders can reduce during times of crisis.
a. achievements b. comforts c. rewards d. obstacles
14. Successful companies encourage between senior and junior employees.
a. failure b. separation c. mentorship d. isolation
15. Technology should always serve a useful in society.
a. mistake b. purpose c. accident d. argument
16. work consistently to turn plans into real success.
a. Strangers b. Quitters c. Dreamers d. Achievers
17. The twins hardly see each other because they live in cities.
a. separate b. support c. creative d. equal
18. imagine a better future but always avoid taking action.
a. Achievers b. Leaders c. Dreamers d. Builders
19. thinking is essential for innovation in modern industries.
a. Creative b. Traditional c. Local d. Ordinary
20. Please, recyclable materials from general waste.
a. confuse b. repeat c. repair d. separate
21. Health encourage people to exercise regularly.
a. campaigns b. arguments c. imaginations d. obstacles

22. Creative thinking means

- a. following the same rules b. finding new solutions
c. working without a plan d. waiting for others

23. Perseverance is described as

- a. giving up easily b. continuing despite problems
c. starting many projects d. avoiding hard work

24. at work often leads to poor performance and missed opportunities.

- a. Enthusiasm b. Confidence c. Energy d. Apathy



Exercise 24

Main Vocabulary

25. Clean water is for public health and human survival.

- a. optional b. essential c. flexible d. separate

26. Effective strengthens relationships at work.

- a. communication b. obstacle c. household d. confusion

27. Our scientists have made great in all fields, especially medicine.

- a. losses b. communications c. majorities d. achievements

28. Physical alone cannot guarantee success in competitive sports.

- a. warning b. strength c. imagination d. access

29. Her to learn languages impressed her teachers.

- a. eagerness b. empathy c. imagination d. hesitation

30. strengthens relationships between parents and teenagers.

- a. Curiosity b. Campaign c. Understanding d. Failure

31. Environmental requires reducing waste .

- a. responsibility b. opportunity c. perseverance d. curiosity

32. Parents schools to protect their children daily.

- a. hinder b. separate c. trust d. express

33. helps journalists ask deeper questions during important interviews.

- a. Curiosity b. Habit c. Routine d. Hesitation

34. Fear of sometimes prevents people from taking important risks.

- a. patience b. plan c. failure d. confidence

35. I the movie's message because I missed the opening scene.

- a. understood b. misunderstood c. realized d. recognized

36. Community is essential during emergencies caused by natural disasters.

- a. stress b. hesitation c. separation d. cooperation

37. His idea was considered because it solved the problem immediately.

- a. brilliant b. familiar c. temporary d. ordinary

38. Excessive at work may increase stress among employees.

- a. teamwork b. cooperation c. competition d. comfort

39. Too many rules can lead to instead of discipline.

- a. confusion b. passion c. excitement d. courage

40. Noise affected residents living close to the busy city highway.

- a. curiosity b. obligation c. participation d. pollution

41. Heavy traffic continues to emergency services in large cities.

- a. complete b. support c. inspire d. hinder

42. My best friend often me during stressful situations.
 a. limits b. hides c. encourages d. overcomes
43. Schools must ensure during trips and outdoor activities.
 a. safety b. routine c. speed d. campaign
44. He his time to teach children in poor neighborhoods.
 a. volunteers b. wastes c. spends d. hinders
45. The company hired a skilled to improve its website performance.
 a. developer b. accountant c. reporter d. editor
46. Early treatment can minor illnesses from becoming dangerous.
 a. repeat b. prevent c. combine d. allow
47. Schools teach awareness through recycling and clean-up campaigns.
 a. brilliant b. curious c. medical d. environmental
48. A highly mechanic fixed the engine quickly before the long journey.
 a. essential b. confused c. careless d. skilled
49. The teacher gave helpful after reviewing our written assignments.
 a. sight b. punishment c. feedback d. purpose
50. Parents try to children from harmful online content and unsafe websites.
 a. protect b. waste c. collect d. disturb
51. Her story encouraged others to continue despite failures.
 a. motivating b. distracting c. uninterested d. recognition



Exercise 04

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

52. The phrase "innovation meets purpose means" **SB**
 a. science used for entertainment b. using technology to solve real problems
 c. inventions without goals d. working alone without a plan
53. The sentence "Not only is Sara skilled in coding, but she is also passionate about social change" is an example of **SB**
 a. cause and effect b. subject inversion c. comparison d. direct speech
54. The phrase "no mountain is too high" means **SB**
 a. people can overcome challenges b. climbing is dangerous
 c. teamwork is impossible d. nature is powerful
55. Schools organize events to awareness about environmental problems.
 a. rise b. raise c. arise d. arose
56. Students are encouraged to actively in class discussions.
 a. participate b. participating c. participant d. participation
57. The artist was finally for her contribution to modern cinema.
 a. admitted b. punished c. recognized d. blamed
58. One major benefit regular exercise is better mental health.
 a. of b. in c. from d. with
59. He made a move during the final seconds of the match.
 a. skilled b. skill c. skillful d. tired
60. After hearing the success story, the students felt highly
 a. motivating b. inspiring c. motivated d. confidence

61. Young people can change through small community initiatives.
a. import b. create c. do d. take
62. Technology can a role in improving public services.
a. play b. compete c. hold d. give
63. Perseverance dreamers from achievers in real life.
a. moves b. breaks c. supports d. separates
64. Students are encouraged to participate school activities.
a. on b. in c. with d. at
65. The young inventor was praised his creative solution.
a. about b. with c. for d. by
- Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.**
66. The teacher asked students to work in separate groups. The synonym of "separate" is
a. united b. connected c. different d. combine e. distinct
67. Her enthusiasm made her the most active student. The synonym of "enthusiasm" is
a. boredom b. eagerness c. apathy d. excitement e. indifference
68. He lost enthusiasm after repeating the same task every day. The antonym of "enthusiasm" is
a. passion b. excitement c. boredom d. indifference e. eagerness
69. His lack of empathy made him seem rude and uncaring. The antonym of "empathy" is
a. sensitivity b. compassion c. understanding d. coldness e. cruelty
70. Perseverance helped her continue studying. The synonym of "perseverance" is
a. weakness b. determination c. persistence d. surrender e. giving up
71. Heavy traffic became an obstacle to arriving on time. The synonym of "obstacle" is
a. barrier b. difficulty c. help d. aid e. advantage
72. Financial support removed the obstacle facing the small business. The antonym of "obstacle" is
a. blockage b. barrier c. difficulty d. help e. aid
73. Mentorship helped young employees develop their skills. The synonym of "mentorship" is
a. guidance b. neglect c. coaching d. abandonment e. ignorance
74. She felt hurt because her hard work received no recognition. The synonym of "recognition" is
a. ignorance b. appreciation c. disregard d. praise e. neglect
75. It is hard to distinguish identical twins at first glance. The synonym of "distinguish" is
a. identify b. identity c. confuse d. mix e. separate



A Campaign Poster

ملصق حملة توعوية

How to Write a Campaign Poster

1) Choose a clear and powerful title:

استخدم عنوان واضح وقوي

- ★ Save Water Today! or Protect Our Planet

2) Use short, direct sentences:

- ★ Posters must be easy to read quickly

استخدم عنوان واضح وقوي: الملصق يجب ان يكون سهل للقراءة بسرعة

3) Use imperative forms (commands):

استخدم أسلوب الأمر

- ★ Join us! / Don't waste! / Keep our city clean!

4) Add key details:

- ★ Time, place, goal, contact info ...etc

ذكر التفاصيل المهمة: (الوقت - المكان - الهدف - وسيلة التواصل).

5) Use positive and motivating language:

لغة إيجابية ومحفزة

- ★ You can make a difference!

6) Make it attractive:

- ★ Use bullets, icons, or short slogans!

اجعل الملصق جذاب: (نقاط - رموز - شعارات قصيرة)

Model Writing

نموذج ملصق حملة

Join the Clean Future Campaign!

- ★ Let's make our community a greener and cleaner place.
- ★ Every year, tons of waste harm our beautiful environment.
- ★ Join our recycling and clean-up campaign this Saturday!
- ★ When: 9.00 a.m – 1.00 p.m
- ★ Where: Nile Park, Alexandria
- ★ We should protect our city for future generations.
- ★ Everyone is welcome!



Exercise 24

Writing

1. What helps a poster look organized and easy to read ? SB R 3
 - a. No spaces at all
 - b. Bullet points and clear spacing
 - c. Many different fonts in one line
 - d. Very small writing
2. When designing a campaign poster, the writer should SB R 3
 - a. use long paragraphs with many details
 - b. focus on a clear message and a strong call to action
 - c. avoid using colors and images
 - d. include unrelated information
3. The main purpose of a campaign poster is to people .
 - a. entertain
 - b. confuse
 - c. inform and persuade
 - d. examine
4. Which expression is used to encourage teamwork and unity?
 - a. Don't forget to
 - b. Don't waste
 - c. You should
 - d. Together we can
5. Campaign posters should use short sentences as they are
 - a. difficult
 - b. quickly read
 - c. full of grammar
 - d. personal
6. "Join us!" is an example of
 - a. indirect speech
 - b. imperative form
 - c. question form
 - d. past tense
7. Which of the following must be included in a campaign poster?
 - a. A long paragraph
 - b. Personal stories
 - c. Time and place
 - d. Grammar rules
8. The phrase "Everyone is welcome!" aims to make people feel
 - a. encouraged
 - b. confused
 - c. nervous
 - d. excluded
9. The phrase "Let's make our community cleaner" is mainly used to
 - a. order people
 - b. suggest action
 - c. give information
 - d. ask a question
10. Campaign posters usually focus on problems.
 - a. personal
 - b. social
 - c. imaginary
 - d. academic
11. "Don't forget to recycle" is an example of
 - a. advice
 - b. question
 - c. condition
 - d. command
12. A campaign poster should be
 - a. long
 - b. confused
 - c. attractive
 - d. detailed
13. "Join our recycling campaign" encourages people to
 - a. watch
 - b. participate
 - c. complain
 - d. compare
14. The aim of environmental campaigns is to
 - a. increase pollution
 - b. protect nature
 - c. sell products
 - d. entertain people
15. A good campaign title should be
 - a. advice
 - b. question
 - c. condition
 - d. command
16. A campaign poster should be
 - a. long
 - b. confused
 - c. funny
 - d. clear
17. Campaign posters usually avoid
 - a. short sentences
 - b. clear language
 - c. positive expressions
 - d. long paragraphs



Exercise 04

Translation

1. No doubt that tourism in Egypt is a chief source of national income and hard currency. So, the government exerts strenuous efforts to develop the tourist industry. المفاتيح ٢٠٢٤

- أ- لا شك أن السياحة في مصر هي مصدر رئيسي للدخل القومي والعملية الصعبة، لذا تبذل الحكومة جهوداً متواصلة لتطوير صناعة السياحة.
ب- لا شك أن السياحة في مصر هي مصدر رئيسي للدخل القومي والعملية الصعبة، لذا تبذل الحكومة جهوداً مضنية لتطوير النشاط السياحي.
ج- مما لا شك فيه أن السياحة هي مصدر رئيسي للدخل القومي والعملية الصعبة، لذا تقوم الحكومة بأنشطة متواصلة لتطوير الصناعة السياحية.
د- لا شك أن السياحة في مصر هي مصدر فرعي للدخل القومي والعملية الصعبة، لذا تبذل الحكومة جهوداً قليل لتطوير النشاط السياحي.

2. We have to rationalize consumption and stand up to greedy merchants who monopolize goods. Thus, we can reduce the burdens of living and support the government in its development projects. بلفاس ٢٠٢٤

- أ- علينا أن نرشد الاستهلاك وأن نقف مع التجار الجشعين الذين يحتكرون البضائع وهذا يمكننا من تقليل أعباء الحياة ودعم الحكومة في مشروعات التطوير.
ب- علينا أن نضاعف الاستهلاك وأن نتصدى للتجار الجشعين الذين يحتكرون البضائع وهذا يمكننا من تقليل أعباء المعيشة ودعم الحكومة في مشروعات التنمية.
ج- علينا أن نرشد الاستهلاك وأن نتصدى للتجار الجشعين الذين يحتكرون البضائع وهذا يمكننا من تقليل أعباء المعيشة ودعم الحكومة في مشروعات التنمية.
د- علينا أن نزيد الإنتاج وأن نتصدى للتجار الجشعين الذين يحتكرون البضائع وهذا يمكننا من تقليل أعباء المعيشة ودعم الحكومة في مشروعات التنمية.

3. Egypt is trying to improve its economic status by attracting foreign investments and building great projects. This is beginning to show progress. الحسينية ٢٠٢٤

- أ- تحاول مصر تحسين وضعها الاقتصادي من خلال تنمية الاستثمارات الأجنبية وبناء المشروعات الكبرى وبدأ هذا في توضيح التقدم.
ب- تحاول مصر تحسين موضعها الاقتصادي من خلال جذب الاستثمارات الأجنبية وبناء المشروعات الكبرى وبدأ هذا في تفسير التقدم.
ج- تحاول مصر تحسين وضعها الاقتصادي من خلال جذب الاستثمارات الأجنبية وبناء المشروعات الكبرى وبدأ هذا في إظهار التقدم.
د- تحاول مصر تحسين وضعها الاقتصادي من خلال جذب الاستثمارات الأجنبية وبناء المشروعات الكبرى وبدأ هذا في إظهار التقدم.

٤. إن علاقات مصر القوية مع جميع دول العالم تعزز دورها في حل المشاكل ونشر السلم ديروط ٢٠٢٤

- a. Egypt's strong tie with all countries of the world enhances its role in solving problems and promoting peace.
b. Egypt's strong ties with all countries of the world enhance its role in solving problems and promoting peace.
c. Egypt's strong ties with all countries of the world enhance its rule in solving problems and promoting peace.
d. Egypt's strong ties with all countries of the world enhance its role in solving problems and disporting peace.

٥. علينا أن نشجع شبابنا على الذهاب للتخييم، ذلك يمكنهم من الاستفادة من أوقات فراغهم بطريقة مفيدة ويعلمهم التعاون والانضباط والاحترام. السويس ٢٠٢٤

- a. We have to encourage our youth to go to the camp. It enables them to use their spare time in a useful way. It teaches them cooperation, discipline, and respectful.
b. We have to encourage our youth to go camping. It disables them to make use of their spare time in a useful way. It teaches them cooperation, discipline, and respect.
c. We have to encourage our young to go camping. It enables them to make use of their spare time in a useful way. It teaches them cooperation, disciplined, and respect.
d. We have to encourage our youth to go camping. It enables them to make use of their spare time in a useful way. It teaches them cooperation, discipline, and respect.



General Exercises

on

Unit 8



A

Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

1. **Innovation** helps companies stay competitive. The synonym of "innovation" is
a. invention b. tradition c. creativity d. routine e. repetition
2. The teacher asked students to work in **separate** groups. The antonym of "separate" is...
a. distinct b. unite c. isolate d. combine e. divide

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Teachers with inspire students to love learning deeply.
a. passion b. anger c. routine d. silence
2. Government support in renewable energy projects.
a. indifference b. hesitation c. apathy d. innovation
3. Teachers encourage by allowing students to explore ideas freely.
a. apathy b. indifference c. creativity d. boredom
4. Perseverance achievers from those who give up early.
a. separates b. combines c. hinders d. measures
5. The new card access to healthcare services for low-income families .
a. moves b. takes c. makes d. gives
6. Unpaid bills began to pile after he lost his job suddenly.
a. with b. up c. in d. of
7. You do the shopping now. I'll do it later. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
a. mustn't b. needn't c. must d. have to
8. You eat this food as it smells bad. It is harmful. طما ٢٠٢٤
a. must b. should c. mustn't d. don't have to
9. Is it a/an to wear gloves before I start work in this factory? ٤٣٨
a. necessary b. must c. advisable d. advice
10. I do the shopping because my mother was sick. البينا ٢٠٢٤
a. must b. have to c. didn't have to d. had to
11. Posters use imperative because they are
a. indirect b. boring c. direct d. confusing
12. The reason for using a powerful title in a campaign poster is to
a. catch attention b. confuse readers c. add information d. conclude writing

B

Reading Comprehension

Are we underestimating what robots can do? In some cases, they already perform better than doctors at diagnosing illness. Also, some patients might feel more comfortable sharing personal information with a machine than a person. Could there be a place for robots in education after all? Some education experts think so. They predict robots will do the main job of transferring information and teachers will be like assistants. Intelligent robots will read students' faces, and movements. Then they will adapt the information to each student. It's not a popular opinion and it's unlikely robots will ever have empathy and the ability to really connect with humans like another human can. One thing is certain, though. A robot teacher is better than no teacher at all. In some parts of the world, there aren't enough teachers and 9-16 percent of children under the age of 14 don't go to school. That problem could be partly solved by robots because they can teach anywhere and won't get stressed, or tired, or move somewhere for an easier, higher-paid job.

Those negative aspects of teaching are something everyone agrees on. Teachers all over the world are leaving because it is a difficult job and they feel overworked. Perhaps the

question is not 'Will robots replace teachers?' but 'How can robots help teachers?' Teachers waste a lot of time doing non-teaching work, including more than 11 hours a week marking homework. If robots could cut the time teachers spend marking homework and writing reports, teachers would have more time and energy for the parts of the job humans do best.

❖ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Robots are at diagnosing illnesses than doctors.
a. always better b. never better c. sometimes better d. always terrible
- According to the passage, one advantage of robot teachers is that
a. waste money b. cost money
c. they don't need to rest d. they can't feel empathy
- Some experts think that teachers in the future will
a. help robots in class b. teach knowledge to students
c. no longer exist d. mark the homework
- Which of the following is a true statement?
a. In most cases robots are better than doctors. b. Robots can understand emotions.
c. Some people prefer robots to doctors. d. Robots are better teachers than humans.
- Robots will probably never
a. have human understanding of emotions b. help teachers
c. be intelligent enough to work in education d. be a popular choice for teachers
- Which of the following can best express the main idea of this passage?
a. Robots can do any job perfectly. b. Robots can help improve teaching.
c. Robots will certainly replace teachers. d. Teaching is a difficult job.
- Some parts of the world
a. pay robots to teach. b. have a shortage of teachers
c. already use robots in teaching jobs. d. make teachers assist robots
- Robot assistants could help teachers by
a. read students' faces b. connecting with humans
c. transferring information d. marking homework and writing reports



Writing

- The private sector is a key partner in attaining Egypt's green and sustainable growth.

- يعتبر القطاع الخاص شريكا رئيسيا في تحقيق النمو الأخضر والمستدام في مصر.
- يعتبر القطاع الخاص شريكا رئيسيا في تحقيق النمو الأخضر والموقت في مصر.
- يعتبر القطاع العام شريكا رئيسيا في تحقيق النمو الأخضر والمستدام في مصر.
- يعتبر القطاع الخاص شريكا رئيسيا في تحقيق النمو الأخضر والمستدام في مصر.

٢. هل تعتقد أن العولمة أفادت كل الدول علي حد سواء أم أنها أثرت علي الدول الفقيرة وأضرّت بمصالحها ؟

- Do you think that civilisation has benefited from all countries equally, or has it affected rich countries and harmed their interests?
- Do you think that globalization has benefited all countries equally, or has it supported poor countries and helped their interests?
- Do you think that globalization has benefited all countries equally, or has it affected poor countries and harmed their interests?
- Do you think that civilisation has benefited all countries equally, or has it affected poor countries and decreased their interests?

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

- It's not allowed to cheat in exams. (mustn't)
- It's recommended to exercise regularly. (should)

Answer the following questions:

- Describe the tactics Fix used on Passepartout to both reveal his identity and silence him.
- How did Fogg use his wealth and ingenuity to solve the crisis of missing the Carnatic?

Write an Essay of about (180) words on the following: " A Change-Maker Story "

1) Complete the following dialogue:

Osama is at a bank. He wants to withdraw a sum of money.

Karim and Ramy are speaking about Ramy's brother who is ill.

Ramy : My brother's staying at home today.

Karim : ① ?

Ramy : Because he is ill.

Karim : My sister helped at the community center last summer.

Ramy : ② Did he visit a doctor?

Karim : ③ ?

Ramy : What did the doctor advise him to do?

Karim : ④

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A goal is something you want to achieve. First, decide what your goal is. For example, do you want to pass a test? Do you want to be a doctor? When you have decided on your goal, write it down on paper and look at it every day. Then decide what you must do to succeed. Some people never reach their goals because they think they are impossible. You must always believe that your goals are possible. Don't think, "This test is difficult. I will probably fail". Instead, think, "This test is difficult, but I've worked hard and I will pass it". Most people are successful at things they enjoy, so always try to enjoy your work. Keep looking at the goal you wrote on paper and think how happy you will be when you succeed. Think about that happiness while you are working and you will enjoy your work.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What should you do when you have written your goal on paper?
2. Why don't some people reach their goals?
3. What is the main idea of this passage?

B. Choose the right answer:

4. The underlined word "pass" means
a. succeed b. fail c. lose d. miss
5. Most people succeed at
a. things that are difficult b. things which they work hard at
c. things that they enjoy doing d. things that are easy

3) A. Translate into Arabic:

The world has been losing millions of trees from the rainforests every year for a long time.

B. Translate into English:

يفترض أن تكون الإعلانات صادقة ولكن يجب أن نكون حذرين.



Unit 9 | When Art Speaks

Learning Outcomes

Reading

- Infer two specific emotions expressed in the Alexandria murals
- Identify the main idea and three supporting details in a text discussing the role of storytelling in Egyptian culture

Listening

- Identify how the speaker engages the audience in an audioscript.
- Use specific details heard in an audio about the "Language of Music".

Speaking

- Express an opinion politely in a mini debate using evidence.
- Tell a 1-minute story-introduction using appropriate intonation and gestures to communicate a specific moral message.

Writing

- Write a paragraph about " art as a universal language "

language

- Differentiate between the stative verbs and action verbs.



Key Vocabulary

invisible (adj)	غير مرئي	echo (v/n)	صدى / يردد	legend (n)	أسطورة / شخص أسطوري
mural (n)	لوحة جدارية	gestures (n)	إيماءات	audience (n)	جمهور
moral (n / adj)	عبرة / أخلاقي	heal (v)	يشفي	aliens (n)	كائنات فضائية / غريباء
skyline (n)	أفق	unity (n)	وحدة	invade (v)	يغزو / يقتحم
compassion (n)	تعاطف	storyteller (n)	راوي القصة	tradition (n)	تقليد
inspiring (adj)	ملهـم / مشجـع	decoration (n)	زينة	humor (n)	فكاهة / روح الدعابة
gather (v)	يجمع / يتجمع	folktale (n)	حكاية شعبية	merchant (n)	تاجر

Main Vocabulary

neighborhood (n)	حي / منطقة	beneath (prep)	أسفل / تحت	microphone (n)	ميكروفون
narrow (adj)	ضيق	dove (n)	حمامة	scary (adj)	مخيف
council (n)	مجلس	retell (v)	يعيد سرد	athletes (n)	رياضيون
fine arts (n)	الفنون الجميلة	spread (v/n)	ينتشر / إنتشار	soldier (n)	جندي
neighbors (n)	الجيران	behavior (n)	سلوك	perform (v)	يؤدي / يقدم عرضاً
brushes (n)	فرش (رسم)	alive (adj)	حي	theater (n)	مسرح
artist (n)	فنان	impact (v/n)	يؤثر / تأثير	podcast (n)	بودكاست / برنامج صوتي
peace (n)	سلام	completely (adv)	تماماً	tiring (adj)	متعب
scenes (n)	مشاهد	popular (adj)	شائع	honesty (n)	أمانة / صدق
kindness (n)	طيبة / لطف	crowded (adj)	مزدحم	once-forgotten (adj)	كان منسياً
friendship (n)	صداقة	intonation	نبرة الصوت / تنغيم الكلام	repeated (adj)	متكرر
attract (v)	يجذب	outline (v/n)	مخطط عام / يحدد	generation (n)	جيل
attention (n)	إنتباه	special (adj)	مميز	courage (n)	شجاعة
journalist (n)	صحفي	elderly (adj)	مسن / كبير السن	emotion (n)	شعور / عاطفة
tone (n)	نبرة	tell of (phr. v.)	يحكي عن	unemployment (n)	البطالة

Collocations

mix colors	يخلط ألوان	share stories	يشارك قصص
paint scenes	يرسم مشاهد	express feelings	يعبر عن مشاعر
attract attention	يجذب إنتباه	Egyptian street art	فن الشارع المصري
tell a story	يحكي قصة	find new stages	يجد مراحل جديدة
show care for	يظهر الاهتمام بـ	come together	يتجمع / يتجمع

Expressions & Prepositions

filled with dust	مملوء بالغبار	rise above	يتجاوز / يعلو فوق
heal people's spirits	يشفي أرواح الناس	offer to help	يعرض المساعدة
travel without moving	يسافر دون أن يتحرك (مجازاً يسبح بالخيال)	the world runs on stories	العالم يقوم على الحكايات
watch in silence	يشاهد بصمت	on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
his spirit still echoes	روحه ما زالت تتردد (أثره ما زال حاضراً)	act with compassion	يتصرف بتعاطف
speak louder than words	الأفعال أبغ من الكلام	he is gone	رجل / غاب
his spirit lives on	روحه باقية / حية	remind ... of	يذكر ... بـ
pass down through generations	ينقل عبر الأجيال	based on	قائم على / مستند على
inspiring messages	رسائل ملهمة	paint on the wall	يرسم على الحائط

Definitions

mural	لوحة جدارية	▶ a large picture painted on a wall
inspiring	ملهم	▶ something that encourages good actions or feelings
invisible	غير مرئي	▶ unable to be seen or noticed
compassion	تعاطف	▶ showing care for others
skyline	أفق	▶ the outline of buildings seen against the sky
gestures	إيماءات	▶ movements of hands or body used to express meaning
gather	يجتمع	▶ to come together in a group
storyteller	راوي	▶ a person who creates and shares stories
echo	صدى	▶ a sound that is repeated or continued to come
tradition	تقليد	▶ something repeated or passed down through generations

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
inspiring	ملهم	motivating, encouraging, stimulating	discouraging, depressing, boring, dull
invisible	غير مرئي	unseen, hidden, concealed,	visible, clear, noticeable, obvious
mural	جدارية	wall-painting, artwork, painting	blank wall, emptiness, plainness
compassion	تعاطف	sympathy, kindness, mercy	cruelty, harshness, indifference
gather	يجمع	collect, assemble, bring together	scatter, separate, divide
tradition	تقليد	custom, heritage, ritual	change, innovation, modernity
gesture	إشارة	sign, signal, motion, indication	stillness, silence, inaction
heal	يشفي	cure, recover, mend, restore	injure, harm, wound, damage
humor	دعابة	fun, wit, comedy, amusement	seriousness, sadness, gloom
moral	أخلاقي	ethical, virtuous, righteous,	immoral, corrupt, dishonest
attract	يجذب	draw, pull, appeal	repel, push away, discourage,
unity	وحدة	harmony, solidarity, union	division, separation, isolation

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
heal	يشفي	healing	شفاء	healed / healing	متعاف / علاجي
create	يبدع	creation	إبداع / خلق	creative	مبدع
beautify	يجمل	beauty	جمال	beautiful	جميل
hope	يأمل	hope	أمل	hopeful	مفعم بالأمل
inspire	يلهم	inspiration	إلهام	inspiring	ملهام
attract	يجذب	attraction	جاذبية	attractive	جذاب
unite	يوحد	unity	وحدة	united	متحد
silence	يصمت	silence	صمت	silent	صامت
behave	يتصرف	behavior	سلوك	behavioral	سلوكي



Language Notes



Notice the Difference

spread	ينتشر / ينشر	publish	ينشر (في جريدة أو كتاب)
alive	حي	live	يعيش
popular	مشهور / محبوب	polar	قطبي
scary	مخيف (يسبب خوف)	scared	خائف (يشعر بالخوف)
tiring	متعب (يسبب تعب)	tired	متعب (يشعر بالتعب)
beauty	جمال	beautiful	جميل
decorate	يزين	decoration	زخرفة
change	يغير / تغيير	changeable	قابل للتغير
mural	لوحة جدارية	moral	أخلاق / درس أخلاقي
skyline	أفق المدينة / شكل المباني عند النظر إليها من بعيد	skyscraper	ناطحة سحاب

wall & well

wall (n)	حائط	The kids painted a mural on the wall.
well (n)	بئر	The village has an old well in the center.
well (adv)	بشكل جيد	She speaks English well.

neighborhood, neighbor, neighboring & neighborly

neighborhood (n)	حي / منطقة سكنية	I love living in a quiet neighborhood.
neighbor (n)	جار	My neighbor helped me carry my groceries.
neighboring (adj)	مجاور / قريب	We visited the neighboring town last weekend.
neighborly (adj)	ودي / ودود	She has a neighborly attitude and helps others.

compassion, compassionate, sympathize & sympathetic

compassion (n)	تعاطف	She showed compassion to the sick child.
compassionate (adj)	رحيم	He is a compassionate teacher who helps all students.
sympathize (v)	يتعاطف / يشارك الشعور	I sympathize with people who are struggling.
sympathetic (adj)	متعاطف / متفهم	She is sympathetic to her neighbors' problems.

Reading

"The Wall That Spoke for Hope"

In one of Alexandria's oldest **neighborhoods**⁽¹⁾, narrow streets once **filled with** dust and broken walls began to change. It all started with a young artist named Salma Nasser, a **fine arts**⁽²⁾ student who believed that art could **heal**⁽³⁾ people's **spirits**⁽⁴⁾. She noticed how the gray walls made her neighbors **feel sad** and **invisible**⁽⁵⁾. One day, she **carried her brushes and paints** to the street and began to draw a large **mural**⁽⁶⁾ of a white dove rising above the city **skyline**⁽⁷⁾. Beneath it, she wrote the words: **Peace**⁽⁸⁾ begins here.



- (١) أحياء
- (٢) الفنون الجميلة
- (٣) يشفي / يداوي
- (٤) الأرواح / المعنويات
- (٥) غير مرئي / مبهمش
- (٦) لوحة جدارية
- (٧) أفق المدينة
- (٨) السلام
- (٩) الوحدة
- (١٠) ملهم
- (١١) التعاطف

At first, people watched in silence. Then a child offered to help her **mix colors**. The next day, more students **joined in**, painting scenes of kindness, friendship, and clean streets. Their work **attracted attention** on social media. Tourists and journalists began visiting the neighborhood. The **once-forgotten walls** became **a symbol of unity**⁽⁹⁾ and hope.

Soon, the movement spread to other cities like Cairo and Fayoum. For Salma, the murals were more than decoration they were **inspiring**⁽¹⁰⁾ messages that encouraged people to act with **compassion**⁽¹¹⁾.

She said, **Art can speak louder than words**. When people see beauty and meaning around them, they **change their behavior**. Today, Salma's neighborhood is brighter, cleaner, and more alive than ever. The walls continue to tell their story.

Listening

In the evenings of old Cairo, long before television and social media, people used to **gather**⁽¹⁾ in coffee houses to listen to traditional **storytellers**⁽²⁾. One of the most famous was Uncle Farid, an **elderly**⁽³⁾ man with a deep, gentle voice. He would begin every **tale**⁽⁴⁾ by raising his hand and saying, "Listen, and you will travel without moving."

Farid's stories mixed history, **humor**⁽⁵⁾, and **wisdom**⁽⁶⁾. He **told of**⁽⁷⁾ brave soldiers, honest **merchants**⁽⁸⁾, and clever children who solved problems with kindness. But he didn't read from a book; he watched his audience carefully, changing his **tone**⁽⁹⁾ and **gestures**⁽¹⁰⁾ to keep them amazed. When children laughed, he smiled; when they looked serious, he **slowed**⁽¹¹⁾ his words.

Even in modern times, new storytellers keep this art alive online. Egyptian YouTubers and **podcasters**⁽¹²⁾ **retell**⁽¹³⁾ **folk tales**⁽¹⁴⁾ or invent new ones that **reflect**⁽¹⁵⁾ today's challenges – **unemployment**⁽¹⁶⁾, pollution, and hope for the future. Their voices reach thousands, proving that storytelling never dies; it simply finds new stages.

"The world runs on stories," Farid once said. "They remind us that courage and honesty never grow old." His chair in the café is now empty, but his spirit still **echoes**⁽¹⁷⁾ in every story told under Cairo's warm lights.

- (١) يتجمع
- (٢) رواية القصص
- (٣) مسن
- (٤) حكاية
- (٥) فكاهة
- (٦) حكمة
- (٧) يحكى عن
- (٨) تجار
- (٩) نبرة الصوت
- (١٠) إيماءات
- (١١) يبطئ
- (١٢) مقدمو البودكاست
- (١٣) يعيد سرد
- (١٤) حكايات شعبية
- (١٥) يعكس
- (١٦) البطالة
- (١٧) يتردد صده



Exercise Ph

Key Vocabulary

1. The soldier remained completely during the mission despite bright security lights.
a. obvious b. visible c. noisy d. invisible
2. The shout produced a strange across the empty mountain valley.
a. silence b. echo c. whisper d. shadow
3. The ancient was told to children to teach courage and honesty.
a. rumor b. fact c. legend d. schedule
4. The artist painted a colorful on the school wall last summer.
a. compassion b. frame c. mural d. sketchbook
5. His hand helped explain the idea without using any words.
a. gestures b. noises c. accents d. writings
6. The singer impressed the large with her powerful voice.
a. crowded b. jury c. band d. audience
7. The city's looked breathtaking at sunset from the river bridge.
a. pavement b. suburb c. skyline d. alley
8. Time and rest can emotional wounds after painful experiences.
a. break b. heal c. hide d. ignore
9. Teamwork and shared goals helped create a strong sense of
a. laziness b. unity c. weakness d. death
10. Many movies imagine friendly visiting the Earth from distant planets.
a. robots b. monsters c. aliens d. animals
11. Showing to others makes society more caring and humane.
a. anger b. compassion c. fear d. pride
12. Her speech was truly and motivated students to work harder.
a. inspiring b. confusing c. weak d. boring
13. The army planned to the island before dawn.
a. protect b. escape c. invade d. rebuild
14. The old sold spices and silk along the ancient trade route.
a. merchant b. sailor c. guard d. farmer
15. The entertained villagers by narrating exciting stories at night.
a. reader b. writer c. storyteller d. editor
16. A simple can make a place feel welcoming and cheerful.
a. damage b. decoration c. pollution d. noise
17. His sense of made even serious meetings more relaxed.
a. anger b. fear c. humor d. sadness
18. Students usually in the hall before morning assembly begins.
a. gather b. separate c. disappear d. scatter
19. The grandmother shared a traditional passed down through generations.
a. article b. report c. folktale d. speech
20. The story teaches a clear about honesty and responsibility.
a. joke b. event c. habit d. moral
21. Respecting family strengthens social bonds within communities.
a. fashions b. traditions c. arguments d. accidents

22. A large picture painted on a wall is known as a
 a. poster b. portrait c. mural d. sketch
23. Something repeated or passed down through generations is called a
 a. habit b. rule c. law d. tradition
24. The outline of buildings seen against the sky is called the city's
 a. echo b. skyline c. landscape d. border
25. Movements of hands or body used to express meaning are called
 a. gestures b. signals c. sounds d. marks
26. The word means to come together in a group.
 a. travel b. gather c. escape d. divide
27. A person who creates and shares stories with others is known as a
 a. listener b. reader c. storyteller d. reporter
28. A sound that is repeated or continues to come back is called a/an
 a. noise b. echo c. cry d. shout



Exercise 04 Main Vocabulary

29. The white became a symbol of peace in many cultures.
 a. eagle b. crow c. sparrow d. dove
30. The buildings were finally restored after decades of neglect.
 a. modern b. crowded c. famous d. once-forgotten
31. The children felt safe playing in their friendly after school every day.
 a. village b. neighborhood c. border d. desert
32. The city met to discuss traffic problems and future development plans.
 a. family b. audience c. council d. crowd
33. The lost keys were hidden the old wooden table in the hallway.
 a. above b. across c. beside d. beneath
34. True grows stronger when people support each other during difficult times.
 a. kindness b. friendship c. courage d. patience
35. The loud noise quickly attracted everyone's during the school assembly.
 a. attention b. memory c. silence d. movement
36. The teacher asked the students to write a/an before starting the essay.
 a. story b. outline c. paragraph d. conclusion
37. The bus became extremely during the morning rush hour downtown.
 a. quiet b. empty c. crowded d. private
38. That singer is very among teenagers because of his catchy songs.
 a. famous b. boring c. private d. serious
39. False news can quickly through social media if people are careless.
 a. stop b. spread c. hide d. reduce
40. The dark forest at night looked very to the young children.
 a. peaceful b. exciting c. scary d. friendly
41. Professional train daily to improve their strength and performance.
 a. actors b. musicians c. artists d. athletes
42. The movie scene was full of deep and touched everyone's hearts.
 a. action b. humor c. emotion d. noise

43. Telling the truth shows even when it is difficult to do so.
 a. honesty b. weakness c. fear d. anger
44. This young faces different challenges than their parents did before.
 a. culture b. generation c. history d. future
45. She listens to an educational while traveling to school every morning.
 a. athlete b. program c. podcast d. speech
46. The teacher corrected the student's while reading the dialogue aloud.
 a. grammar b. spelling c. intonation d. punctuation
47. Something that encourages good actions or positive feelings can be described as.....
 a. boring b. inspiring c. harmful d. careless
48. Showing care for others during hard times is known as
 a. anger b. fear c. pride d. compassion
49. Small acts of kindness can have a positive on others.
 a. impact b. delay c. accident d. mistake



Exercise Ph

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

50. Bright street murals attention from both locals and international visitors.
 a. avoid b. waste c. attract d. reduce
51. Elders usually stories to teach young people important moral lessons.
 a. hide b. share c. forget d. invent
52. Talented painters scenes that reflect daily life in busy neighborhoods.
 a. destroy b. measure c. fold d. paint
53. Art allows teenagers to feelings they cannot easily explain with words.
 a. ignore b. confuse c. express d. replace
54. Through his artwork, the painter managed to a powerful story of hope.
 a. silence b. tell c. erase d. interrupt
55. The abandoned house was filled dust after years of neglect.
 a. by b. with c. from d. on
56. Time can help emotional wounds caused by failure.
 a. heal b. deal c. repeat d. block
57. Many volunteers quickly offered help the local community.
 a. for b. to c. with d. at
58. Children were encouraged to join the cultural celebration.
 a. on b. with c. in d. at
59. The artist shared his work social media to reach more people.
 a. in b. on c. at d. by
60. The dove became a symbol peace and unity around the world.
 a. of b. for c. with d. by
61. Actions often speak than words in real-life situations.
 a. louder b. lower c. younger d. lazier
62. The movie is based a true story from history.
 a. in b. up c. on d. by

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

63. "Art can express feelings without words." The meaning of express is S3 R 3
a. show b. communicate c. hide d. cover e. silence
64. "The artist's work had a powerful impact on the audience." The synonym of impact is S3 R 3
a. effect b. influence c. accident d. delay e. decoration
65. Her speech was so inspiring that it motivated the entire audience to take action. The synonym of "inspiring" is
a. dull b. encouraging c. boring d. stimulating e. depressing
66. The invisible ink made the secret message completely visible under sunlight. The antonym of "invisible" is
a. concealed b. clear c. hidden d. obvious e. unseen
67. The artist created a colorful mural that impressed everyone in the gallery. The synonym of "mural" is
a. blank wall b. plainness c. artwork d. wall-painting e. emptiness
68. She showed great compassion toward injured animals by helping them and caring for their needs. The antonym of "compassion" is
a. sympathy b. cruelty c. harshness d. mercy e. kindness
69. Many cultures celebrate tradition to preserve their customs and rituals. The synonym of "tradition" is
a. heritage b. innovation c. change d. modernity e. custom
70. He made no gesture and remained completely still during the formal ceremony. The antonym of "gesture" is
a. stillness b. silence c. action d. signal e. motion
71. Volunteers showed compassion when helping the flood victims rebuild their homes. The synonym of "compassion" is
a. indifference b. harshness c. cruelty d. mercy e. sympathy
72. The crowd gathered quickly after the accident. The antonym of "gather" is
a. separate b. scatter c. bring together d. collect e. assemble
73. His humor kept the students laughing throughout the boring lecture. The synonym of "humor" is
a. gloom b. amusement c. seriousness d. comedy e. sadness
74. The teacher emphasized the importance of moral decisions in everyday life. The antonym of "moral" is
a. immoral b. righteous c. dishonest d. virtuous e. ethical

GIANTS

انتظروا!!!
كتاب مراجعة العمالة
للصف الثاني الثانوي



Stative verbs

أفعال الحالة

أفعال تصف الحالة وليس الفعل وهي أفعال لا تأتي في الاستمرار إلا في حالات خاصة يتغير فيها المعنى وتشمل:

see / hear / taste / smell / look

أفعال الحواس

think / imagine / know / understand / mean / remember / agree / believe

أفعال التفكير والمعرفة والآراء

like / dislike / want / love / hate / wish / prefer / forgive / trust / miss / need

أفعال العاطفة والمشاعر

possess / own / belong to / have

أفعال الملكية

measure / weigh / cost

أفعال القياس

appear, sound, look, seem / contain / consist / keep / concern

أفعال

Some verbs can be both / Stative and dynamic

بعض الأفعال منها تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة طبقاً للمعنى

be

عندما يعني هذا الفعل [يكون] لا يمكن استخدامه في الأزمنة المستمرة لكن عندما يعني [يتصرف بشكل مؤقت] يمكن استخدامه في الأزمنة المستمرة.

▶ You **are** stupid

= it's part of your personality.

▶ You **are being** stupid

= only now, not usually.

think

عندما يعني هذا الفعل [يعتقد] لا يمكن استخدامه في الأزمنة المستمرة لكن عندما يعني [يفكر في] يمكن استخدامه في الأزمنة المستمرة.

▶ I **think**

يعتقد that coffee is great.

▶ What **are you thinking**

يفكر about? I'm thinking about my next holiday.

▶ I **think**

يعتقد she is clever.

▶ I'm **thinking**

يفكر of buying a new car.

▶ I think my son will get a high mark. (**am thinking x**)

هنا بمعنى يعتقد

▶ She **is thinking** of solving this problem now.

هنا بمعنى يفكر

have

عندما يعني هذا الفعل [يمتلك] لا يمكن استخدامه في الأزمنة المستمرة لكن عندما يعني [يأخذ أو يتناول..] يمكن استخدامه في الأزمنة المستمرة.

▶ They **have**

يملك a wonderful car.

▶ I'm **having**

يتناول a big meal now.

▶ I'm **having**

يأخذ / يقضي a party / a picnic / a bath / a good time / a break now.

see

عندما يعني هذا الفعل [يرى / يفهم] لا يمكن استخدامه في الأزمنة المستمرة لكن عندما يعني [يقابل أو يكون على علاقة ب..] يمكن استخدامه في الأزمنة المستمرة.

▶ I **see**

يفهم what you mean.

▶ I **see**

يرى her now, she's just coming along the road.

▶ I've **been seeing**

يكون على علاقة ب my friend for three years.

▶ I'm **seeing**

يقابل Ali tomorrow.

feel

عندما يعنى هذا الفعل [يعتقد/ يبدو ملمسه] لا يمكن استخدامه فى الأزمنة المستمرة لكن عندما يعنى [يشعر] يمكن استخدامه فى الأزمنة المستمرة.

- How do you **feel** يعتقد about your school?
► How are you **feeling** يشعر now? ► I am **feeling** better today.

taste

عندما يعنى هذا الفعل [ذو مذاق] لا يمكن استخدامه فى الأزمنة المستمرة لكن عندما يعنى [يتذوق] يمكن استخدامه فى الأزمنة المستمرة.

- This soup **tastes** ذو مذاق great. ► The chef **is tasting** يتذوق the soup.

smell

عندما يعنى هذا الفعل [ذو رائحة] لا يمكن استخدامه فى الأزمنة المستمرة لكن عندما يعنى [يشم] يمكن استخدامه فى الأزمنة المستمرة.

- This flower **smells** ذو رائحة great. ► The chef **is smelling** يشم the meal.

look

عندما يعنى هذا الفعل [يبدو] لا يمكن استخدامه فى الأزمنة المستمرة لكن عندما يعنى [ينظر] يمكن استخدامه فى الأزمنة المستمرة.

- He **looks** يبدو happy. ► This man **is looking** ينظر at me.

weigh

عندما يعنى هذا الفعل [يبلغ وزنه] لا يمكن استخدامه فى الأزمنة المستمرة لكن عندما يعنى [يزن] يمكن استخدامه فى الأزمنة المستمرة.

- The baby **weighs** يبلغ من الوزن 10 kg. ► The officer **is weighing** يزن my bag.

measure

عندما يعنى هذا الفعل [يبلغ مقاسه] لا يمكن استخدامه فى الأزمنة المستمرة لكن عندما يعنى [يقيس] يمكن استخدامه فى الأزمنة المستمرة.

- The table **measures** يبلغ مقاسه 1.5 m. ► Dad **is measuring** يقيس the table.



الذهبية

لا تستخدم فى الاستمرار إذا جاءت بمعنى

يمكن أن تستخدم فى الاستمرار إذا جاءت بمعنى

think	يعتقد	think	يفكر فى
have	يمتلك	have	يأخذ أو يتناول.....
see	يرى / يفهم	see	يتقابل أو يكون على علاقة بـ
feel	يعتقد	feel	يشعر
taste	ذو مذاق	taste	يتذوق
smell	ذو رائحة	smell	يشم
be	يكون (بشكل دائم)	be	يكون (بشكل مؤقت)
look	يبدو	look	ينظر
weigh	يبلغ من الوزن	weigh	يزن
measure	يبلغ مقاسه	measure	يقيس



Exercise 04 Language Level 1

1. Most scientists that the world is getting hotter. س3 ر3
 a. believes b. are believing c. believe d. has believed
2. I lunch with my uncle tomorrow. س3
 a. have b. am having c. had d. had had
3. We some friends at the club tomorrow. س3
 a. are seen b. saw c. see d. are seeing
4. I this song carries a strong message. س3
 a. am believing b. am believed c. believe d. believing
5. The students the song very well. س3
 a. remembers b. are remembered c. are remembering d. remember
6. Now, my sister happy as she has a modern mobile. بني سويف ٢٠٢٤
 a. look b. is looking c. looking d. looks
7. He has become a famous film star and he a luxurious car now. أولاد صقر ٢٠٢٤
 a. owns b. is owning c. own d. has been owning
8. Most scientists that the world is getting hotter. شرق المحلة ٢٠٢٤
 a. belief b. are believing c. believes d. believe
9. Amani pale and ill; what is the matter with her? الخارجة ٢٠٢٤
 a. seems b. is seeming c. was seeming d. seem
10. This digital camera to my friend Mai. السويس ٢٠٢٤
 a. is belonging b. belongs c. belong d. have belonged
11. My brother wants to travel to China, but he enough Chinese at the moment. م3
 a. hadn't known b. knows c. isn't knowing d. doesn't know
12. I to read novels during holidays; I prefer to read short stories instead. المراغة ٢٠٢٤
 a. am never liking b. don't like c. am not liking d. like
13. My friend a lovely villa which has a nice pool. أبو حماد ٢٠٢٤
 a. is having b. had c. was having d. has
14. My friend's present job is hard. Now he to find a better one. القوصية ٢٠٢٤
 a. is loved b. is loving c. loves d. has loved
15. I 120 kilograms. I need to follow a diet. ابوتست ٢٠٢٤
 a. weigh b. am weighing c. have been weighing d. weighs
16. I can't eat this rice. It too salty. ابو تيج ٢٠٢٢
 a. taste b. is tasting c. tastes d. was tasting
17. They they were better at science. اسيوط ٢٠٢٢ ٢٠٢٤
 a. wish b. were wishing c. are wishing d. wishes
18. Fareeda's team has won the final match, so she happy. القوصية ٢٠٢٢
 a. looks b. is looking c. looks at d. look
19. This camera to you. It's ours. المحمودية ٢٠٢٢
 a. belongs b. is belonging c. doesn't belong d. isn't belonging
20. I haven't seen you for a long time. I you so much. م3
 a. am missing b. had missed c. miss d. was missing
21. The weather is very nice here in the winter. The sun to be shining on most days.
 a. is seeming b. seems c. seem d. is seemed
22. The director that the policy is wrong.
 a. have felt b. are feeling c. feels d. feel

23. Her voice familiar. I am sure I know her.
 a. sound b. sounds c. is sounding d. has been sounding
24. I don't understand what he is saying. Can you tell me what he ?
 a. is meaning b. mean c. means d. has been meaning
25. This beautiful handbag to my aunt. She loves it.
 a. belongs b. is belonging c. belong d. belonged

الشروق ٢٠٢٤



Exercise 04

Language Level 2

26. You can't come in at the moment as we the office decorated.
 a. will have b. have had c. are having d. have
27. While I at work, I don't answer private calls.
 a. am b. am being c. was d. was being
28. I'm going to make coffee. a cup?
 a. Do you want b. Are you wanting c. Do you needs d. Are you needing
29. I a wonderful time in the village. Everyone is really nice.
 a. am not having b. going to have c. am having d. had had
30. We are having lunch now. The verb have here is a verb showing.....
 a. command b. sense c. action d. order
31. how old I am?
 a. Are you known b. Are you knowing c. Do you know d. Do you knowing
32. Aya is really enjoying her holiday on the island. She..... a really good time.
 a. has b. is having c. was having d. have
33. Most people in the existence of magic.
 a. believes b. aren't believing c. don't believe d. are believing
34. At the moment, I can't buy this car. It too much money.
 a. is costing b. costs c. cost d. was costing
35. A: Can you tell me how much this sum ? B: I think, it is 1000 pounds.
 a. is equaled b. is equaling c. equals d. equal
36. The table 1 metre by 2 metres.
 a. is measuring b. measure c. was measuring d. measures

جرجا ٢٠٢٤

ميت غمر ٢٠٢٤

كوم حمادة ٢٠٢٤

سوهاج ٢٠٢٤

المرافة ٢٠٢٤ الابراهيمية ٢٠٢٤

شبين القناطر ٢٠٢٤

الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤

أجا ٢٠٢٣

جرجا ٢٠٢٤



Exercise 05

Language Level 3

37. My little sister very helpful today. That's nice!
 a. is being b. is c. was d. will be
38. We a great time on this holiday! I wish you were here with us!
 a. had b. have c. had had d. are having
39. He's very pessimistic. He always the worst is going to happen.
 a. think b. thinks c. is thinking d. thinking
40. I'm sure he of something reasonable to say at the moment.
 a. thought b. thinks c. is thinking d. think
41. Normally, you are very sensible. So, why silly about this matter?
 a. are you being b. you are being c. do you d. you are
42. This soup good. I really like it.
 a. has been tasting b. tastes c. is tasting d. was tasting

طامية ٢٠٢٤ بني سويف ٢٠٢٤ ههيا ٢٠٢٤

الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٣ أبو حمص ٢٠٢٣

إسنا ٢٠٢٤

أولاد صقر ٢٠٢٤

ملوي ٢٠٢٤

البوقرقاص ٢٠٢٤

43. The chef always the food before he serves it.
 a. is tasting b. was tasting c. tastes d. is tasted
44. My husband the food while I am cooking. It is very annoying.
 a. always taste b. used to taste c. was always tasting d. is always tasting
45. The bag 20 kg. I have just weighed it.
 a. weigh b. is weighing c. was weighing d. weighs
46. Look! The officer the suitcase again.
 a. weighs b. weighed c. is weighing d. weight
47. I about going to the sports club.
 a. thought b. am thought c. think d. am thinking
48. I that I should look for a new job.
 a. am being thought b. thinks c. think d. am thinking
49. Now I why you don't like her.
 a. am seeing b. see c. was seeing d. saw
50. We a film tonight at 8. Do you want to come?
 a. are seeing b. saw c. see d. have seen
51. You haven't said a word all morning. What about?
 a. you think b. you are thinking c. are you thinking d. you do think
52. What the new play is about?
 a. were you thinking b. are you thinking c. had you thought d. do you think
53. He the cake to see if it is ok.
 a. taste b. tasted c. is tasting d. will have tasted
54. The cake absolutely delicious.
 a. taste b. tastes c. is tasting d. tasting
55. Aya and Osama each other now. They have been dating for two weeks.
 a. has seen b. sees c. are seeing d. see
56. She nervous all the time. She never tries to relax.
 a. is b. was c. is being d. had been
57. Tom out the window. I wonder what he can see.
 a. was looking b. looks c. is looking d. looked
58. She rather nervous at the moment. It isn't her habit.
 a. is b. is being c. was d. has been
59. Which of the following is structurally incorrect?
 a. Wael is having lunch now. b. I have a new mobile phone.
 c. Eman is seeming ill today. d. Does Jailan own a new villa?

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

- Amal doesn't own this tablet. (belong) **sb**
- The golden watch is Al Daifi's. (has)
- The students are acting rude today. (being)
- There are three bottles of juice in the fridge. (contains)
- Sara thinks the movie is boring. (seem)
- This building in our street doesn't seem old. (looks)
- He is behaving strangely at the party. (being)
- Are the students interested in technology? (Do)
- My brother is being impatient now. (impatiently)
- There are three chairs in the living room. (has)
- He seems a bit impatient during the meeting. (being)
- The small garden is their neighbor's. (owns)

Unit 9

Lessons

When Art Speaks

- 3 The Language of Music
- 4 Can Art Change Society?
- 5 An Opinion Paragraph



Key Vocabulary

promote (v)	يشجع / يدعم	appreciate (v)	يقدر	thoughts (n)	أفكار
inspired (adj)	ملهَم	entertain (v)	يسلي	generation (n)	جيل
respect (n/v)	احترام / يحترم	songwriter (n)	كاتب أغاني	revolution (n)	ثورة
awareness (n)	وعي	rhythm (n)	إيقاع	policy (n)	سياسة
admire (v)	يعجب بـ	youth (n)	شباب	progress (n)	تقدم

Main Vocabulary

absolutely (adv)	تماماً / على الإطلاق	ban (v)	يمنع / يحظر	lyrics (n)	كلمات الأغنية
memorable (adj)	لا ينسى	painting (n)	لوحة فنية	doubt (v)	يشك
generation (n)	جيل	beyond (prep)	وراء / أبعد من	forum (n)	منتدى
law (n)	قانون	matter (v)	يهم	equality (n)	مساواة
aspiring (adj)	طامح	borders (n)	حدود	evidence (n)	دليل
own (v)	يملك	possess (v)	يملك	script (n)	نص / سيناريو
powerful (adj)	قوي / مؤثر	cancel (v)	يلغي	freedom (n)	حرية
convey (v)	يوصل / يعبر عن	possession (n)	ملكية	perform (v)	ينفذ / يقوم بـ
weigh (v)	يقيس / يزن	conclude (v)	يختم / يستنتج	consistent (n)	متسق / ثابت
measurement (n)	قياس	logical (adj)	منطقي	confusion (n)	ارتباك / إرباك
speech (n)	خطاب / كلام	modally (adv)	بطريقة نمطية	approval (n)	موافقة / قبول
differently (adv)	بشكل مختلف	universal (adj)	عالمي / شامل	environmental (adj)	بيئي

Collocations

raise awareness	يزيد الوعي / يرفع مستوى الوعي	act differently	يتصرف بشكل مختلف
make real progress	يحقق تقدماً حقيقياً	feel the message	يفهم الرسالة
promote unity	يعزز الوحدة	touch emotions	يلمس العواطف
keep ideas alive	يبقي الأفكار حية	feel inspired	يشعر بالإلهام / يتحفز
take action	يتخذ إجراء / يتصرف	plant a seed	يزرع بذرة / يضع أساساً

Expressions & Prepositions

refer to	يشير إلى	depending on	اعتماداً على / بحسب
remind ... of	يذكر ... بـ	in return	في المقابل
succeed in	ينجح في	in the same way	بنفس الطريقة
take part in	يشارك في	welcome to	مرحباً بكم في
rather than	بدلاً من	agree with	يتفق مع
reach every corner of Egypt	يصل إلى كل أنحاء مصر	choose from	يختار من
a wave of change	موجة من التغيير	end with	ينتهي بـ
look up to	يحترم / يعجب بـ	move on	يمضي قدماً / يتجاوز

Definitions

awareness	وعي	► understanding or knowledge about an issue
admire	يعجب بـ	► to appreciate or look at something with approval
respect	يحترم / تقدير	► to honor or value someone's opinion
promote	يروج / يشجع	► to encourage or support something

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
admire	يعجب بـ / يقدر	appreciate, respect, esteem	despise, dislike, scorn
awareness	وعي / إدراك	consciousness, recognition, knowledge	ignorance, unawareness, neglect
promote	يروج / يعزز	encourage, support, boost	hinder, discourage, prevent
respect	يحترم	honor, esteem, value	disregard, insult, disrespect
inspired	ملهم	motivated, stimulated, encouraged	uninspired, discouraged, unmotivated
appreciate	يقدر / يثمن	value, admire, respect	ignore, neglect, devalue, underestimate
youth	شباب	adolescence, teenagers, young people	adults, elders, maturity
entertain	يسلي	amuse, delight, engage	bore, tire, annoy
thoughts	أفكار	ideas, opinions, reflections	ignorance, mindlessness, unawareness
progress	تقدم / تطور	advancement, development, improvement	decline, regression, setback

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
entertain	يسلي	entertainment	ترفيه	entertaining	مسلي
inspire	يلهم	inspiration	الهام	inspiring	ملهم
respect	يحترم	respect	احترام	respectful	محترم
promote	يروج	promotion	ترقية / ترويج	promotive / promotional	مشجع / ترويجي
admire	يعجب بـ	admiration	اعجاب	admirable	جدير بالاعجاب
appreciate	يقدر	appreciation	تقدير	appreciable	ملحوظ / جدير بالتقدير



Language Notes



Notice the Difference

promote	يشجع / يدعم فكرة أو قيمة	❖	provoke	يثير (غضب / رد فعل)
unity	وحدة / تماسك بين أفراد	❖	union	اتحاد رسمي (منظمات / دول / نقابات)
awareness	وعي / إدراك بقضية	❖	conscience	ضمير أخلاقي
inspired	متحفز / متأثر إيجابياً	❖	motivated	مدفوع لهدف عملي
admire	يعجب بـ / يقدر	❖	respect	يحترم (تقدير أعمق وسلوكي)

progress	تقدم / تطور تدريجي	success	نجاح / تحقيق هدف
raise	يرفع / يثير (قضية أو وعي)	rise	يرتفع (بدون مفعول)
change	يغير	exchange	يبادل
touch	يؤثر في / يلمس شعوريا	affect	يؤثر في (تأثير عام أو رسمي)
feeling	شعور	emotion	عاطفة قوية

awareness, aware & unawareness

awareness	وعي / إدراك	Art raises awareness about social problems.
aware	واعي / مدرك	People are aware of the importance of education.
unaware	غير مدرك / غير واعي	Many students are unaware of the risks of bullying.
unawareness	عدم الوعي / غياب إدراك	Unawareness can lead to serious mistakes.

revolution, revolutionary & revolt

revolution	ثورة / تغيير جذري	The revolution changed society completely.
revolutionary	ثوري / جذري	Revolutionary ideas can reshape a nation.
revolutionary	ثائر	The revolutionary fought for freedom.
revolt	تمرد / ثورة	The revolt began because of injustice.
revolt	يتمرد / يثور	People may revolt against unfair laws.

Reading



"Can Art Change Society?"

Read the following text

Do the speakers finally agree?

Moderator	Welcome to our youth forum ⁽¹⁾ ! Today we ask: can art truly change society? Our speakers are Nadia and Omar.		(١) منتدى الشباب (٢) ثورة (٣) يشجع (٤) متحفز / متأثر ايجابيا (٥) وعي (٦) تقدم (٧) يعجب به (٨) نقاشات (٩) مجتمع
Nadia	I believe it absolutely can. Art touches emotions in ways that speeches and laws cannot. Think of the murals after the revolution ⁽²⁾ or songs that promote ⁽³⁾ unity. When people feel inspired ⁽⁴⁾ , they act differently. Art opens the heart before it changes the mind.		
Omar	I respect that, but I think change needs more than feelings. A painting can raise awareness ⁽⁵⁾ , but only education and make real progress ⁽⁶⁾ . People admire ⁽⁷⁾ a mural for a week and then forget.		
Nadia	But art keeps ideas alive! It starts conversations ⁽⁸⁾ . A movie or a song can reach millions in one day. Isn't that powerful?		
Omar	True, but not every listener takes action. Some just enjoy the music and move on.		
Moderator	So, perhaps art plants the seed, and society ⁽⁹⁾ must water it. Both emotion and action matter.		policies
Nadia	Agreed—art begins the change.		
Omar	And people must finish it.		



Listening



Host	Today we're discussing how music can express feelings more strongly than words. Our guest, Hassan Kamel, is a young Egyptian songwriter ⁽¹⁾ who believes music can raise environmental ⁽²⁾ awareness.	
Hassan	Music is a bridge. When I sing about the Nile or the desert, people feel the message deeply. One of my songs, "River of Life," shows that the Nile means more to us than a river. It gives us life, and it expects respect in return ⁽³⁾ .	(١) كاتب أغاني (٢) يعني (٣) مقابل / في المقابل
Host	Do you think songs can really change behavior ⁽⁴⁾ ?	(٤) سلوك
Hassan	I truly believe they can. When students hear a message carried by rhythm ⁽⁵⁾ , they remember it. We performed in schools across Fayoum and Alexandria, and after the concerts, students seemed inspired ⁽⁶⁾ —they began organizing clean-up days.	(٥) إيقاع (٦) متحفز / متأثر إيجابياً
Host	That's wonderful! What do you want your listeners to feel?	(٧) جيل
Hassan	I want them to feel hope. Our generation ⁽⁷⁾ knows it faces huge challenges ⁽⁸⁾ , but music reminds us that one clear voice can begin a wave of change.	(٨) تحديات
Host	Beautiful thoughts ⁽⁹⁾ . Thank you, Hassan. I hope your next song reaches every corner of Egypt.	(٩) أفكار



Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

- Schools should actively positive behavior through teamwork and responsibility.
a. promote b. ignore c. discourage d. disturb
- The students felt after listening to the speaker's powerful success story.
a. tired b. inspired c. bored d. confused
- Mutual between teachers and students creates a healthy learning environment.
a. control b. power c. silence d. respect
- Social media campaigns help raise public.....about environmental and health issues.
a. pressure b. awareness c. danger d. habit
- Many young athletes professional players for their discipline and achievements.
a. avoid b. criticize c. forget d. admire
- Teachers should students' efforts, not only their final exam results.
a. punish b. appreciate c. ignore d. delay
- The magician performed tricks mainly to the children at the party.
a. educate b. confuse c. entertain d. warn
- The famous wrote lyrics that reflected real emotions and life experiences.
a. director b. painter c. actor d. songwriter
- He helped his classmates with revision, and they supported him
a. by accident b. in return c. at first d. on purpose
- The drummer kept a steady throughout the entire musical performance.
a. silence b. generation c. noise d. rhythm
- This young faces different challenges compared to those before it.
a. generation b. culture c. society d. history
- The school organized an online to discuss students' opinions and suggestions.
a. debate b. meeting c. forum d. lecture

13. The government introduced a new education to improve learning quality.
 a. law b. rule c. decision d. policy
14. Continuous effort and cooperation are necessary for real social
 a. painting b. failure c. delay d. progress



Exercise 04

Main Vocabulary

15. The coach rejected the idea of canceling the important final match.
 a. slightly b. possibly c. absolutely d. nearby
16. The government decided to smoking in all public transportation areas.
 a. allow b. encourage c. ignore d. ban
17. The theory was explained to show different possible interpretations.
 a. clearly b. modally c. loudly d. angrily
18. The trip to Luxor was a experience for all the students.
 a. boring b. brief c. memorable d. ordinary
19. The museum displayed a famous by a well-known French artist.
 a. painting b. poem c. statue d. building
20. The company showed steady despite the difficult economic conditions.
 a. decline b. progress c. failure d. delay
21. The police arrived to investigate what had really happened.
 a. nearby b. outside c. beforehand d. afterwards
22. His ambition goes personal success to helping his entire community.
 a. under b. inside c. beyond d. beside
23. Many experts the accuracy of the information shared online. Most of it is fake.
 a. confirm b. prove c. support d. doubt
24. Everyone must obey the to maintain order in society.
 a. habit b. rule c. law d. custom
25. Your opinion does not if it lacks clear evidence.
 a. matter b. appear c. spread d. repeat
26. The online allows students to exchange ideas freely.
 a. lecture b. forum c. article d. novel
27. She is a/an writer hoping to publish her first novel.
 a. tired b. aspiring c. careless d. nervous
28. The new fence clearly marked the between the two farms.
 a. centers b. paths c. borders d. areas
29. Education plays a major role in achieving in society.
 a. injustice b. freedom c. equality d. loyalty
30. He does not the apartment; he only rents it.
 a. borrow b. sell c. rent d. own
31. Not everyone can the skills necessary to succeed in a fast-changing job market today.
 a. possess b. lose c. damage d. repair
32. The lawyer presented strong to support his argument.
 a. opinion b. rumor c. evidence d. guess
33. She gave a speech that deeply influenced the audience.
 a. weak b. powerful c. silent d. brief

34. The airline had to the flight due to bad weather.
 a. advertise b. announce c. cancel d. replace
35. The actor carefully studied the before the final performance.
 a. costume b. stage c. script d. camera
36. She lost her most valuable during the trip, which made her feel extremely upset.
 a. loss b. expense c. debt d. possession
37. of expression is a basic human right.
 a. Duty b. Rule c. Freedom d. Habit
38. After long discussion, they the meeting successfully.
 a. begin b. delay c. conclude d. repeat
39. He chose to the rude comment and stay calm.
 a. ignore b. answer c. spread d. explain
40. Accurate is essential in scientific experiments.
 a. guess b. opinion c. measurement d. belief
41. Her explanation was clear and to everyone listening.
 a. emotional b. logical c. random d. careless
42. His actions were with the values he always defended.
 a. temporary b. opposite c. consistent d. sudden
43. The president gave a short to the nation.
 a. argument b. speech c. sentence d. whisper
44. The song's express deep feelings of love and loss.
 a. lyrics b. death c. noise d. voice
45. The sudden change caused among the passengers.
 a. comfort b. confidence c. confusion d. relief
46. People often react when they face the same difficult situation.
 a. equally b. differently c. politely d. silently
47. English is a /an language used in many countries.
 a. local b. ancient c. universal d. private
48. issues require immediate global cooperation.
 a. Polite b. Finance c. Environmental d. Personal



Exercise 04

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

49. Writing in journals helps teenagers their feelings safely and openly.
 a. deny b. hide c. block d. express
50. Students who face challenges often differently to achieve better results.
 a. wait b. watch c. act d. copy
51. People can real progress only by working together and planning carefully.
 a. make b. break c. stop d. delay
52. Great speakers can the message clearly so everyone understands the idea.
 a. feel b. cover c. avoid d. deliver
53. Leaders must unity among communities to avoid conflicts.
 a. destroy b. promote c. hide d. ignore
54. Powerful music and movies can emotions in their audience instantly.
 a. block b. touch c. ignore d. avoid
55. Teachers try to ideas alive by reminding students of past discoveries.
 a. keep b. lose c. break d. ignore

56. Many researchers refer earlier studies to support their scientific conclusions.
a. by b. to c. for d. with
57. The final decision depends accurate data, not personal opinions or emotions.
a. for b. of c. on d. with
58. All students are encouraged to take part school activities and competitions.
a. in b. at c. with d. for
59. This song reminds me my childhood memories and happy family gatherings.
a. from b. about c. of d. with
60. I completely agree your opinion about the importance of teamwork.
a. to b. with c. on d. for
61. The team worked hard, and in return.....their efforts, they received national recognition.
a. for b. with c. by d. from
62. She succeeded solving the problem after hours of careful analysis.
a. at b. in c. on d. with
63. The host said, "Welcome our annual youth conference," with a warm smile.
a. for b. into c. with d. to

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

64. Ahmed always admires talented artists. The synonym of "admire" is
a. dislike b. esteem c. appreciate d. despise e. ignore
65. Schools organize campaigns to increase students' awareness of environmental issues. The antonym of "awareness" is
a. neglect b. unawareness c. recognition d. consciousness e. knowledge
66. The manager tried to promote new ideas to improve team productivity. The synonym of "promote" is
a. hinder b. discourage c. support d. boost e. prevent
67. The speaker inspired the audience with his motivational story. The synonym of "inspired" is
a. encouraged b. unmotivated c. motivated d. discouraged e. uninspired
68. Youth should be encouraged to participate in community activities. The antonym of "youth" is
a. adolescents b. aged c. maturity d. elders e. teenagers
69. The comedian entertained the audience with funny jokes. The synonym of "entertain" is
a. annoy b. tire c. amuse d. bore e. delight
70. The company made significant progress in developing new technology. The synonym of "progress" is
a. advancement b. regression c. improvement d. setback e. decline
71. The students showed good progress in their English skills this semester. The antonym of "progress" is
a. setback b. improvement c. advancement d. development e. decline
72. The speaker inspired the audience with his motivational story. The antonym of "inspired" is
a. motivated b. discouraged c. unmotivated d. uninspired e. stimulated
73. I really appreciate your help with my project. The synonym of "appreciate" is
a. admire b. ignore c. devalue d. underestimate e. respect

An Opinion Paragraph

فقرة إبداء الرأي

Definition of An Opinion Paragraph

- ★ An Opinion Paragraph is a paragraph in which the writer clearly states their personal opinion about a topic and supports it with reasons, examples, or evidence.
- فقرة الرأي هي فقرة يوضح فيها الكاتب رأيه الشخصي بوضوح حول موضوع معين ويدعمه بأسباب، أمثلة، أو دلائل.

An Opinion Paragraph Steps

1) Start with a clear topic sentence.

- ★ State your opinion in the very first sentence.

ابدأ بجملة رئيسية واضحة

- ★ Example: I believe community art can inspire people to act.

2) Give at least two strong reasons.

- ★ Support your opinion with logical explanations.
- ★ Example: Use "because," "since," and "for example."

قدم سببين أو أكثر يدعمان رأيك

3) Add evidence or examples.

أضف دليلاً أو مثالاً حقيقياً.

- ★ Give a real event, a personal experience, or something you've seen or read.

4) Keep your opinion consistent.

حافظ على رأيك ثابتاً طوال الفقرة.

- ★ Don't switch sides. Make sure all sentences support your point of view.

5) Avoid phrases like "I think/maybe."

تجنب عبارات مثل "أعتقد / ربما..." وكن واثقاً ومباشراً.

- ★ Be confident and direct.
- ★ Instead of Maybe art helps, write Art truly helps.

6) Use a strong concluding sentence.

اختتم بجملة ختامية قوية تعيد التعبير عن رأيك بطريقة جديدة.

- ★ End with a sentence that restates your opinion in a new way.
- ★ Example: For these reasons, art clearly has the power to change society.

نموذج لمقال الرأي

An Opinion Paragraph

I believe art is a universal language because it expresses what words cannot. When I look at a painting of a mother and child, I understand love even without translation. In the same way, a song about freedom can touch anyone who has ever felt hope. Art connects people from different cultures because emotions are shared by all humans. Since artists speak through colors, sounds, and stories, their messages travel beyond borders. Therefore, when we appreciate art, we learn to listen to each other's hearts, not just our languages.



Exercise Ph

Writing

1. Which sentence should start an opinion paragraph?
 a. Explain the details b. State your opinion c. Give examples d. Summarize facts
2. The topic sentence should your main opinion clearly.
 a. introduce b. ignore c. confuse d. hide
3. How many reasons should you give in an opinion paragraph at minimum?
 a. One b. Five c. Four d. Two
4. To explain a reason logically, use words like
 a. because b. although c. however d. but
5. Which of the following is an example of evidence?
 a. Personal experience b. Random joke c. Unrelated story d. Movie plot
6. In an opinion paragraph, sentences should always your viewpoint.
 a. ignore b. oppose c. support d. question
7. The concluding sentence should the opinion in a new way.
 a. hide b. introduce c. confuse d. restate
8. Start an opinion paragraph with a sentence.
 a. clear topic b. confusing c. irrelevant d. random
9. A good reason in a paragraph should be supported with
 a. jokes b. evidence c. unrelated facts d. opinions from others
10. Use words like "because" or "since" to explain reasons.
 a. confusing b. random c. question d. linking
11. Which of the following is a direct and confident statement?
 a. Art truly helps society b. Maybe art helps c. I guess art helps d. Perhaps art helps
12. Avoid switching sides in a paragraph; always stay
 a. random b. confusing c. consistent d. doubtful
13. Add real events or to support your opinion.
 a. random facts b. jokes c. unrelated stories d. examples
14. Which of the following is NOT recommended in an opinion paragraph?
 a. Conflicting opinions b. Clear reasons c. Evidence d. Examples
15. The main goal of an opinion paragraph is to your opinion.
 a. express and support b. confuse c. question d. ignore
16. Which phrase is stronger than "maybe"?
 a. I guess b. Truly helps c. Perhaps d. Might
17. Evidence can include personal experience, things you have seen, or
 a. imaginary events b. random jokes c. unrelated stories d. examples you read
18. Which of the following sentences is a good topic sentence?
 a. I believe community art can inspire people to act b. Maybe art helps c. I think art might help d. Perhaps art is useful
19. In your paragraph, avoid using phrases like
 a. Education develops skills b. Art truly helps c. Community projects inspire d. I think/maybe
20. Which word signals a reason in your paragraph?
 a. Although b. Since c. But d. However
21. End your paragraph with a sentence that your opinion differently.
 a. restates b. hides c. ignores d. confuses



Exercise 04

Translation

١. يجب علينا جميعاً أن نحافظ على أنفسنا بصحة جيدة. فالصحة الجيدة تتطلب الحصول على طعام صحي ونوم كافٍ وممارسة الرياضة بانتظام.

البليينا سوهاج ٢٠٢٤

- We must all keep ourselves healthily. Good health requires getting healthy food, getting enough sleep and exercising regularly.
- We must all keep ourselves health. Good health requires getting healthy food, getting enough sleep and exercising regularly.
- We must all keep ourselves healthy. Good health requires getting healthy food, getting enough sleep and exercising regularly.
- We must all keep ourselves healthy. Good health requires getting healthy food, getting some sleep and exercising regularly.

٢. لكل فرد في المجتمع حلم يتمنى تحقيقه في المستقبل ويجب عليه العمل بجد لكي يتمكن من تحقيقه.

سوهاج ٢٠٢٤

- Everyone in the society have a dream they hope to achieve in the future and they should work with hardness to achieve it
- Everyone in the society has a dream he hopes to achieve in the future and they should work with hardness to achieve it.
- Everyone in the society has a dream they hope to achieve in the future and they should work hard to achieve it.
- Everyone in the society has a dream they hope to achieve in the future and they should to work hard to achieve them.

٣. تقدم القوافل الطبية ضمن «حياة كريمة»، خدماتها بشكل مجاني من الكشف الطبي وصرف العلاج.

- Medical convoys prove their services free of charger, within the framework of "A Decent Life", including medical examination and treatment.
- Medical convoys provide their services free of charge, within the framework of "A Decent Life", including medicine examination and treatment.
- Medical convoys provide its services free of charge, within the framework of "A Decent Life", concluding medical examination and treatment.
- Medical convoys provide their services free of charge, within the framework of "A Decent Life", including medical examination and treatment.

4. It is fine to celebrate success but it is more important to heed the lessons of failure.

فوة كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٤

- إنه من الجيد الاحتفال بالنجاح ولكن الأهم من ذلك الانتباه لدروس الفشل.
- إنه من الجيد الاحتفال بالنجاح ولكن الأهم من ذلك الاتجاه لدروس الفشل.
- إنه من الجيد الاحتفال بالنجاح ولكن الأهم من ذلك الانتفاع من دروس الفشل.
- إنه من الجيد الاحتفال بالنجاح ولكن الأهم من ذلك الابتعاد عن دروس الفشل.

5. Smoking is a bad habit that destroys health, so smoking is not allowed in public places, where smokers cause harm to themselves and others.

- التدخين عادة سيئة تدمر الصحة حيث يسمح بالتدخين في الأماكن العامة حيث يتسبب المدخنون في الإضرار بأنفسهم وبالأخرين.
- التدخين عادة سيئة تدمر الصحة فلا يسمح بالتدخين في الأماكن العامة حيث يتسبب المدخنون في الإضرار بأنفسهم وبالأخرين.
- التدخين عادة سيئة تدمر الصحة فلا يسمح بالتدخين في الأماكن العامة حيث يتسبب المدخنون في الإضرار بأنفسهم فقط.
- التدخين عادة سيئة تدمر الصحة فلا يسمح بالتدخين في الأماكن الخاصة حيث يتسبب المدخنون في الإضرار بأنفسهم وبالأخرين.

6. Since pollution is the greatest threat now, renewable energy seems to be the best solution to save our environment and secure our future.

إدارة الشهداء ٢٠٢٤

- لأن التلوث هو أعظم التهديدات حالياً، تبدو الطاقة المتجددة أفضل الحلول لإنقاذ بيئتنا وتأمين مستقبلنا.
- لأن التلوث هو أكبر تهديد الآن، يبدو أن الطاقة المتجددة هي الحل الأمثل لإنقاذ كوكبنا وتأمين مستقبلنا.
- لأن التلوث هو التهديد الأكبر حالياً، يبدو أن الطاقة المتجددة هي الحل الأمثل لإنقاذ بيئتنا وضمان ماضيها.
- بما أن التلوث هو أعظم تهديد حالياً، فإن الطاقة غير المتجددة تبدو الحل الأمثل لإنقاذ بيئتنا وتأمين مستقبلنا.



General Exercises

on

Unit 9



A

Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

- The company tried to promote new products to attract more customers. The synonym of "promote" is
a. hinder b. discourage c. support d. boost e. prevent
- Reading news daily increases your awareness of global events and issues. The antonym of "awareness" is
a. neglect b. unawareness c. recognition d. consciousness e. knowledge

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The city installed a colorful on the school wall to inspire students.
a. mural b. painter c. photo d. post
- The tradition has returned to the village after many years of neglect.
a. lost b. hidden c. once-forgotten d. huge
- The New York looks amazing from the top of the Empire State Building.
a. building b. horizon c. street d. skyline
- I truly the way she handles difficult situations with calm and patience.
a. respect b. admire c. dislike d. ignore
- The government launched a campaign to healthy eating among children.
a. discourage b. prevent c. promote d. hinder
- To is to honor or value someone's opinion.
a. respect b. ignore c. dislike d. underestimate
- Keep your opinion throughout the paragraph.
a. consistent b. changing c. doubtful d. unclear
- To explain why, use words such as
a. possibly b. maybe c. because d. might
- He the soup to check the salt.
a. tastes b. tasted c. tasting d. is tasting
- We a science test tomorrow.
a. having b. has c. are having d. had
- The perfume nice.
a. smelling b. is smelling c. smell d. smells
- I about the problems I am facing.
a. am thought b. think c. thinking d. 'm thinking

SB

SB

SB

SB

B

Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the question:

Did you know that our Earth has a special day? Every year on the 22nd of April, we celebrate Earth Day. On this day, we remind ourselves and others how important the Earth is to look after it. We have no other home.

Earth Day was the idea of the American Senator Gaylord Nelson who didn't want to see our Earth suffer. Rivers and seas were getting dirty, many of our plants and animals died out. Therefore, he decided to respond and create a special day to take care of Earth. He started by writing letters to schools, to inform students and teachers about his idea. He hoped that young people around the country would be positive. Fortunately, they did!

As a result, in 1970, twenty million people across America celebrated the first Earth Day. People all over the country made promises to look after the environment. Since then, Earth Day has been celebrated all over the world.

Today, on Earth Day people organise events such as concerts, tree-planting camps and collecting money. Children also help design and make things at school. Now all of us promise to try to turn everyday into Earth Day!

- Earth Day was created because the Earth was
a. getting clean b. improving c. developing d. getting polluted
- Both "died out" and are alike.
a. found b. disappeared c. arriving d. appeared
- What is the main idea of the passage?
a. Collecting money for charities. b. Planting trees and cleaning our streets.
c. Giving parties and concerts celebrating the earth.
d. Taking our responsibility towards the environment.
- What does the underlined word "Fortunately" mean?
a. Luck b. Luckily c. Lucky d. Lock
- What conclusion do you think is the best for the LAST paragraph?
a. None of us are keen on environmental issues.
b. None of us are interested in the planet. c. A few of us look after the environment.
d. Nearly all of us are ready to help the environment.
- Why do you think the earth is important?
a. Because it is rich in natural resources. b. Because we only have one earth.
c. Because we can't live without oxygen. d. Because living in space is much expensive.
- What would happen if rivers became polluted?
a. We would catch fish easily. b. We would lose rich soil.
c. We would poison ourselves by drinking polluted water.
d. We would pollute the earth.
- Earth Day idea first appeared in
a. Asia b. America c. Africa d. Europe



Writing

- The government is carrying out many projects in Upper Egypt. This leads to providing job opportunities for the citizens there. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤

- تنفذ الحكومة الكثير من المشروعات في صعيد مصر بسبب قلّة فرص العمل للمواطنين هناك.
- تنفذ الحكومة الكثير من المشروعات في كل أنحاء مصر مما يؤدي إلى استهلاك فرص العمل للمواطنين هناك.
- تنفذ الحكومة الكثير من المشروعات في صعيد مصر لكن يؤدي ذلك إلى توفير فرص العمل للمواطنين هناك.
- تنفذ الحكومة الكثير من المشروعات في صعيد مصر مما يؤدي إلى توفير فرص العمل للمواطنين هناك.

- تتقدم الأمم بالعلم والثقافة والتخطيط الجيد والعمل الجاد وكل ذلك ينتج من التعليم الجيد. الفيوم ٢٠٢٤

- Nations achieve application through science, culture, good plan, hard work. This can result in good education.
- Through progress and science, agriculture, good planning, hard work. Nations can produce good education.
- Nations achieve progress through science, culture, good planning and hard work. This can result from good education.
- Through progress and science, culture, good planning and hard work. Nations can have good education.

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

- Omar thinks the instructions are confusing.
- There are two bathrooms in our house.

(seem)
(has)

Answer the following questions:

- In your opinion, why did Phileas Fogg stay calm despite losing time ?
- Why was the whale incident especially stressful for Fix?

Write an Essay of about (150) words on the following: "Art is a Universal Language"



1) Complete the following dialogue:

fhmed and Samy are talking about the future.

fhmed ① ?

Samy I'd like to join Al-Azhar University.

fhmed ② ?

Samy Because I love Al-Azhar very much.

fhmed Do you want to be a surgeon?

Samy ③ ? I'd like to find a cure for cancer.

fhmed I hope you achieve your goals.

Samy ④

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

My name is Jack. My job is a long distance from my home, almost 50 miles away. I have to wake up early at 5 o'clock every morning. As I'm always in a rush, there's never enough time for a relaxed breakfast. At exactly 6:00 am, I get into my car and start the long drive. I usually like driving on the highway more than in the city during the morning rush hour, though, it's not very enjoyable. The heavy traffic is a little bit annoying. So I always listen to my favourite classical music. The drive to work takes about one hour. Going back home in the evening after work takes even longer, maybe around 70 minutes. Lately, I've been thinking about trying to take the train to work instead of driving. That way, I could still listen to my favourite music with headphones, and even read a novel at the same time.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. When does Jack get up every morning?
2. How is driving during the morning rush hour?
3. Which kind of music does he enjoy listening to in the car?

B. Choose the right answer:

4. This text is about going to
 a. work b. schools c. hospitals d. dentists
5. The underlined pronoun "I" refers to
 a. the writer b. his friend c. his father d. his classmate

3) A. Translate into Arabic:

Reading is the key to knowledge, so we should encourage children to read.

B. Translate into English:

سنحتاج إلى إيجاد مصادر مستدامة للغذاء لأنه سيكون هناك المزيد ممن سيحتاجون إليه.



Vocabulary

1) Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

- "Inclusive communities help everyone feel valued.." The antonym of valued is
 a. respected b. appreciated c. hated d. worthless e. important
- "Students should show fairness during group activities." The opposite of fairness is
 a. treating people equally b. winning every time c. injustice
 d. honesty e. unfairness
- "Volunteers helped resolve the conflict peacefully." The synonym of resolve is
 a. solve b. settle c. create d. ignore e. worsen
- "Art can express feelings without words." The meaning of express is
 a. show b. communicate c. hide d. cover e. silence
- "The artist's work had a powerful impact on the audience." The synonym of impact is
 a. effect b. influence c. accident d. delay e. decoration

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- An inclusive community makes people feel
 a. excluded b. ignored c. welcome d. confused
- A person who helps solve problems between others is a/an
 a. mediator b. competitor c. resident d. audience
- Public art can help people important social..... issues.
 a. forget b. ignore c. discuss d. hide
- Volunteers often help improve their
 a. community b. routine c. schedule d. argument
- Writing thank -you notes is a way to show
 a. gratitude b. punishment c. routine d. habit
- Small acts of kindness can have a positive on others.
 a. impact b. delay c. accident d. mistake
- Inclusive playgrounds encourage students to with each other .
 a. cooperate b. compete c. complain d. argue
- Conflicts often happen because of
 a. agreement b. misunderstanding c. cooperation d. fairness



Language

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- If people treat each other with respect, communities stronger.
 a. become b. became c. will become d. would become

10. Students work together to achieve common goals.
 a. must b. shouldn't c. can't d. don't have to
11. If he read the newspaper, he all the current news.
 a. would know b. will know c. knows d. 'd have known
12. He had to come early because it necessary.
 a. is b. was c. will be d. had
13. Most scientists that the world is getting hotter.
 a. believes b. are believing c. believe d. has believed
14. I a little boy in the room. He is sleeping on the sofa.
 a. am seeing b. saw c. can see d. had seen
15. Students respect others to build a caring community.
 a. must b. shouldn't c. can't d. don't have to
16. If everyone follows the rules, activities fair.
 a. will remain b. remained c. would remain d. had remained

2) **Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning.**

17. Amal doesn't own this tablet. (belong)
18. You have to follow the rules, otherwise you will be punished. (if)
19. You needn't finish the report today. (been)
20. He doesn't help others, so people don't trust him. (if)



Translation

1) **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d.**

21. An inclusive community makes everyone feel valued and respected. People are more willing to cooperate when they feel they belong.

- أ- المجتمع الشامل يجعل الجميع يشعرون بالتقدير والاحترام، ويكون الناس أكثر استعداداً للتعاون عندما يشعرون بالانتماء.
- ب- المجتمع الشامل يتجاهل يشعرون الأفراد ويجعلهم يرفضون التعاون، ويكون الناس أكثر استعداداً للتعاون عندما يشعرون بالملكية.
- ج- المجتمع الشامل يمنع الناس من العمل معاً ، ويكون الناس أقل استعداداً للتعاون عندما لا يشعرون بالانتماء.
- د- المجتمع الشامل يسبب الخلافات بين أفراد ، ويكون الناس أكثر استعداداً للتعاون عندما يشعرون بالانتماء.

22. Students should feel fairness by taking part in different activities. This helps prevent conflicts and arguments.

- أ- يجب أن يظهر الطلاب العدل من خلال تجاهل القواعد، مما يسبب النزاعات والصراعات أثناء ممارسة الأنشطة المختلفة.
- ب- يجب أن يشعر الطلاب العدل عن طريق المشاركة أثناء الأنشطة المختلفة، مما يساعد على منع الخلافات والمشاجرات.
- ج- يظهر الطلاب بالمنافسة القوية فقط أثناء الأنشطة المختلفة، مما يساعد على منع الخلافات والمشاجرات.
- د- يظهر الطلاب العدل برفض المشاركة في الأنشطة المختلفة، مما يساعد على حدوث الخلافات والمشاجرات.

2) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d.

٢٣. تلعب الفنون بكافة أنواعها دوراً مهماً في التعبير عن قضايا المجتمع، كما تساعدنا على الحفاظ على هويتنا الثقافية على مر الزمان.

- a. All kinds of art play a significant rule in expressing society issues and help us maintain our cultural identity across generations.
- b. All kinds of art play a significant rule in explaining societal cases and help us maintain our agricultural identical across generations .
- c. All forms of art play a significant role in expressing society issues and help us maintain our agricultural identity across generators.
- d. All forms of art play a significant role in expressing societal issues and help us maintain our cultural identity across generations .

٢٤. يلعب التعليم دوراً حيوياً في بناء أفراد مسئولين، كما يساعد المجتمعات على تحقيق التقدم والتنمية المستدامة مع مرور الوقت.

- a. Education plays a vital role in building responsible individuals, and it also helps societies achieve progress and sustainable development over time .
- b. Education plays a vital role in building responsible individuals, and it also helps societies do progress and sustain development over time .
- c. Education plays a trivial role in building reasonable individuals, and it also helps societies achieve progress and sustainable development across time .
- d. Education plays a trivial rule in building reasonable individuals, and it also helps societies achieve progressive and sustainable development across time .



Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions below.

Healthy habits play an essential role in maintaining both physical and mental well - being, in today 's fast - paced world, many people rely on fast food, spend long hours on screens, and neglect regular exercise. These behaviors may seem convenient, but they can lead to serious health problems in the long run. For this reason, developing healthy habits from an early age is extremely important .

One of the most important healthy habits is eating a balanced diet. Consuming fruits, vegetables, whole grains, and enough water helps the body function properly and boosts energy levels. Regular physical activity is equally important, as it strengthens the heart, improves fitness, and reduces stress. In addition, getting enough sleep allows the body and mind to rest and recover, which improves concentration and academic performance.

Healthy habits also have a positive effect on mental health. Exercise and proper nutrition can reduce anxiety and improve mood. Moreover, managing time wisely and avoiding bad habits such as smoking or excessive screen use help individuals feel more organized and confident.

In conclusion, healthy habits are not only about avoiding illness; they are a lifestyle that supports success, happiness, and productivity. By making small but consistent healthy choices, individuals can enjoy a better quality of life and a healthier future.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1. Exercise and can reduce anxiety.

- a. fast food
- b. nourishment
- c. sleeping late
- d. maintaining

2. Regular exercise helps reduce

- a. concentration
- b. energy
- c. stress
- d. responsibility

3. One unhealthy habit mentioned in the text is
 - a. drinking water
 - b. eating vegetables
 - c. spending long hours on screens
 - d. sleeping early
4. A balanced diet helps the body
 - a. feel tired
 - b. work properly
 - c. gain weight quickly
 - d. avoid learning
5. Getting enough sleep improves
 - a. laziness
 - b. illness
 - c. concentration
 - d. screen time
6. Healthy habits also improve
 - a. mental health
 - b. bad behavior
 - c. boredom
 - d. forgetfulness
7. The writer believes healthy habits
 - a. are difficult to follow
 - b. are only for adults
 - c. support success and happiness
 - d. waste time

E Writing

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. In a problem-solution paragraph, the first step is to
 - a. give personal opinions
 - b. introduce the problem clearly
 - c. list many solutions
 - d. end with a conclusion
2. What helps a poster look organized and easy to read ?
 - a. No spaces at all
 - b. Bullet points and clear spacing
 - c. Many different fonts in one line
 - d. Very small writing
3. Which linking word is best used to show a result in problem-solution writing ?
 - a. because
 - b. although
 - c. as a result
 - d. meanwhile
4. When designing a campaign poster, the writer should
 - a. use long paragraphs with many details
 - b. focus on a clear message and a strong call to action
 - c. avoid using colors and images
 - d. include unrelated information

2) Write a problem-solution paragraph (120-150 words) about:

"Littering in public places"

F The Novel

Answer the following questions.

1. Why do you think Phileas Fogg stayed calm during the arrest instead of arguing?
.....
2. In your opinion, why did Phileas Fogg stay calm despite losing time ?
.....
3. Why was the whale incident especially stressful for Fix?
.....



Unit 10 | Find Your Passion!

Learning Outcomes

Reading

- Read the text to infer cause-effect relationships, explaining how events or decisions lead to specific outcomes.
- Use clues from the text to predict how a simple hobby could develop into an income-earning opportunity over time.

Language

- Semi Modals

Listening

- Identify three challenges and two benefits mentioned by speakers.
- Extract the attitudes of people based on an audio track.

Writing

- Write a structured review of a hobby (180) words including introduction, description paragraph, evaluation paragraph, and recommendation.

Speaking

- Compare initial expectations versus the actual reality of a hobby.

Find Your Passion!

- 1 The Importance of Having a Hobby
- 2 New Hobbies



Key Vocabulary

intense (adj) شديد / قوي / مكثف	growth (n) نمو / زيادة	stress (n/v) التوتر / يؤكّد
overwhelmed (adj) منهك / مرهق / مثقل	balance (n/v) توازن / يوازن	instructor (n) مدرب / معلم
ceramic (n) خزف / سيراميك	encourage يشجع / يحفز	deadline (n) موعد نهائي
patience (n) صبر	session (n) جلسة / حصة	give it a try (v) يحاول تجربة شيء جديد

Main Vocabulary

guarantee (n/v) ضمان / يضمن	identity (n) هوية	stressed (adj) متوتر
struggle (n/v) كفاح / يكافح / يعاني	talented (adj) موهوب	photography (n) تصوير فوتوغرافي
pressure (n) ضغط	unexpected (adj) غير متوقع	confident (adj) واثق
emotional (adj) عاطفي	workshop (n) ورشة عمل / دورة تدريبية	dull (adj) ممل / غير مشوق
instructions تعليمات / إرشادات	entirely (adv) تماماً / كلياً	clay (n) طين / صلصال
grade (n/v) درجة / صف دراسي / يدرّج	measure (n/v) إجراء / يقيس	yard (n) فناء / ساحة
influence (n/v) تأثير / يؤثر	originally (adv) في الأصل / أصلاً	delicious (adj) لذيذ
progress (n/v) تقدّم / يتقدّم	professional (adj) محترف / مهني	require (v) يتطلب / يحتاج
difficulties صعوبات	cope (v) يتأقلم مع	challenge (n/v) تحدّي / يتحدّى
musician (n) موسيقي / عازف	force (n/v) قوة / يجبر	relax (v) يسترخي
personality (n) شخصية	reveal (v) يكشف / يظهر	prevent (v) يمنع
bowl (n) سلطانية	creativity إبداع	unnecessary (adj) غير ضروري

Collocations

reduce stress يقلل التوتر	join a workshop يشارك في ورشة عمل
support emotional balance يدعم التوازن العاطفي	waste study time يضيع وقت المذاكرة
experience personal growth يمرّ بنمو شخصي	explore new hobbies يستكشف هوايات جديدة
change his mind يغيّر رأيه	make progress يحقق تقدّماً
require patience يتطلب الصبر	take pictures يلتقط صوراً
bring joy يجلب السعادة	feel overwhelmed يشعر بالإرهاق / بالضغط الشديد
be supposed to من المفترض أن	be meant to معدّ له / الغرض منه أن
spend time on يقضي وقتاً على (نشاط أو شيء)	give you balance يمنحك التوازن

Expressions & Prepositions

your identity is more than grades هويتك أكبر من مجرد الدرجات	prevent from يمنع من
easy to shape سهل التشكيل	filled with مملوء بـ
a waste of time إضاعة للوقت	disconnect from ينفصل عن / يبتعد عن
revision sessions حصص / جلسات المراجعة	deal with يتعامل مع
by the end of بحلول نهاية	agree on يتفق على

Definitions

deadline	موعد نهائي	▶ the latest time by which something must be finished
intense	شديد / قوى	▶ very strong or extreme in degree or feeling
ceramic art	فن الخزف	▶ art made from clay that is shaped and hardened by heat
growth	نمو	▶ the process of increasing in size, number, or importance
overwhelmed	منهك / مرهق / مثقل	▶ feeling unable to cope because there is too much to do
give it a try	يعطى الامر فرصة	▶ to try something even if you are not sure it will succeed
patience	صبر	▶ the ability to stay calm while waiting or facing difficulties
identity	هوية	▶ the qualities and beliefs that make a person or group unique

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
intense	شديد / قوى	strong, extreme, powerful	mild, weak, calm
growth	نمو	development, increase, expansion	decline, decrease, reduction
overwhelmed	منهك / مثقل	stressed, overloaded, exhausted	calm, relaxed, confident
patience	صبر	tolerance, endurance, calmness	impatience, anger, frustration
balance	توازن	stability, harmony, control	imbalance, disorder, instability
encourage	يشجع	support, motivate, inspire	discourage, prevent, weaken
stress	توتر	pressure, tension, anxiety	relaxation, calm, comfort
progress	تقدم	improvement, development, advance	failure, delay, decline
talented	موهوب	gifted, skilled, brilliant	untalented, weak, unskilled

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
balance	يوازن	balance	توازن	balanced	متوازن
encourage	يشجع	encouragement	تشجيع	encouraged	مشجع / متحفز
grow	ينمو	growth	نمو / تطور	growing	متزايد / نامي
intensify	يزيد / يشتد	intensity	شدة / كثافة	intense	شديد / قوي
influence	يؤثر	influence	تأثير	influential	مؤثر



Language Notes



Notice the Difference

overwhelmed	مرهق / واقع تحت ضغط	↔	overwhelming	مرهق / ضاغط بشدة
session	جلسة / حصة	↔	in session	منعقد / جاري
musician	موسيقي (شخص)	↔	musical	موسيقي (فيلم موسيقي / له علاقة بالموسيقى)
personality	شخصية (صفات الشخص)	↔	identity	هوية (من يكون الشخص)
talented	موهوب (قدرة فطرية)	↔	skilled	ماهر (بسبب التدريب والخبرة)

reveal	يكشف / يظهر	release	يطلق / يفرج عن
headline	عنوان رئيسي	deadline	موعد نهائي
instead	وبدلاً من ذلك	instead of	بدلاً من
grade	درجة / يعطى درجة / صف دراسي	degree	درجة حرارة / درجة علمية
require	يتطلب	inquire	يتسائل

overwhelm, overwhelming, overwhelmed & overwhelmingly

overwhelm	يرهق / يثقل (شخصاً) بالمسؤوليات	Exams can overwhelm students sometimes.
overwhelming	مرهق / ضاغط بشدة	The workload was overwhelming this week.
overwhelmed	مرهق / واقع تحت ضغط	She felt overwhelmed before the final exam.
overwhelmingly	بشكل طاعٍ / إلى حد كبير	The response was overwhelmingly positive.

encourage, encouragement, encouraging, encouraged & discourage

encourage	يشجع / يحفز	Teachers encourage students to ask questions.
encouragement	تشجيع / دعم معنوي	Her words gave me encouragement .
encouraging	مشجع / باعث على الأمل	The results were encouraging .
encouraged	مشجع / يشعر بالدعم	I felt encouraged after my teacher praised my work.
discourage	يحبط / يثني عن	Stress can discourage students from studying.
discouragement	إحباط / تثبيط	He felt discouragement after failing the test.

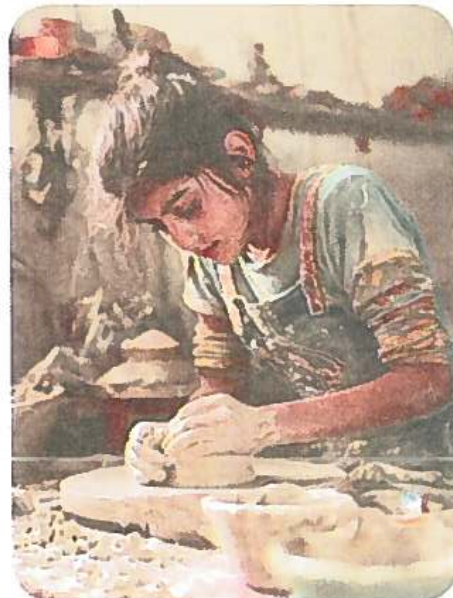
Reading

" A Personal Experience "

When I entered **Grade 11**, I realized that schoolwork had become more **intense** than ever. My days were **filled with deadlines** ⁽¹⁾, revision sessions, and exam pressure. One afternoon, after feeling unusually **overwhelmed** ⁽²⁾, my older cousin advised me to **develop a hobby** ⁽³⁾. At first, I thought the idea was **unnecessary** ⁽⁴⁾. How could **spending time on** a hobby possibly help when I had so much to study?

However, a week later, I decided to **give it a try** and joined a small weekend **workshop** ⁽⁵⁾ on **ceramic art**. On the first day, I **struggled** ⁽⁶⁾. The clay was supposed to be **easy to shape**, yet my hands couldn't control it. Still, as the **instructor** ⁽⁷⁾ **encouraged** me to continue, I began to notice something **unexpected** ⁽⁸⁾: my mind slowly **relaxed** ⁽⁹⁾. Creating something with my hands allowed me to **disconnect** ⁽¹⁰⁾ from **stress** and **focus on** ⁽¹¹⁾ one simple task.

By the end of the month, I had not only made a few **bowls** but also discovered that having a hobby gives you **balance** ⁽¹²⁾. It reminds you that your **identity** ⁽¹³⁾ is more than grades, and that personal **growth** ⁽¹⁴⁾ can come from **patience** ⁽¹⁵⁾, **creativity**, and learning something entirely new.



- (١) موعد نهائي
- (٢) منهك
- (٣) هواية
- (٤) غير ضروري
- (٥) ورشة عمل
- (٦) يعاني
- (٧) مدرب
- (٨) غير متوقع
- (٩) يسترخي
- (١٠) ينفصل
- (١١) يركز على
- (١٢) توازن
- (١٣) هوية
- (١٤) نمو
- (١٥) صبر



Listening



Last month, our teacher asked us to try a new hobby for one week. I chose **photography**⁽¹⁾ because it always seemed to be fun, even though I didn't know much about it. At first, I was supposed to **take pictures** of nature around my school, but the weather was cloudy⁽²⁾ and **dull**⁽³⁾.

So **instead**, I focused on taking photos of daily life - students walking, teachers preparing lessons, and workers cleaning the school **yard**.

My friend Salma tried baking. She said it was meant to be easy, but she quickly learned that baking needs **patience** and careful **measuring**⁽⁴⁾. Still, her cookies were **delicious**. Another student, Omar, learned to play the **ukulele**⁽⁵⁾. He said he seemed to improve a little every day.

By the end of the week, we all agreed that trying new hobbies helps us learn something new about ourselves. Some hobbies **are meant to** challenge us, while others are supposed to bring us joy.

(١) تصوير

(٢) مقيم

(٣) كئيب

(٤) إجراء / قياس

(٥) آلة موسيقية



Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

- She became after managing work, family, and online studies together.
a. overwhelming b. inspired c. careless d. overwhelmed
- Learning a new musical instrument requires and regular practice.
a. access b. boredom c. patience d. failure
- Personal happens when individuals learn from mistakes and new experiences.
a. refusal b. confusion c. growth d. damage
- During the workshop, the explained each step carefully.
a. student b. instructor c. client d. learner
- The artist used colors to express strong emotions in his painting.
a. weak b. boring c. intense d. dull
- The artist shaped wet clay into a beautiful bowl.
a. ceramic b. leather c. digital d. fabric
- She tries to work and family responsibilities without feeling exhausted.
a. balance b. stress c. cancel d. pressure
- is the process of increasing in size, number, or importance.
a. Difficulty b. Growth c. Identity d. Access
- Positive feedback can young athletes to improve their performance.
a. discourage b. encourage c. conflict d. ignore
- She attended a photography to learn advanced camera techniques.
a. vacation b. session c. routine d. break
- Exam affects students when they study without rest or proper planning.
a. stress b. cooperation c. pride d. balance
- The writer rushed to finish the article before the newspaper
a. balance b. deadline c. result d. access
- The engineer was and stressed by complex calculations during the project review.
a. amused b. overwhelmed c. relaxed d. initiative

14. She decided to it a try and join the ceramic art workshop.
 a. make b. have c. give d. take
15. The ability to stay calm while waiting or facing difficulties means
 a. patience b. deadline c. session d. overwhelmed
16. means feeling unable to cope because there is too much to do.
 a. Talented b. Guarantee c. Stressful d. Overwhelmed
17. The competition pushed technology companies to innovate faster.
 a. intense b. ordinary c. dull d. minor
18. Emotional helps artists stay focused during intense creative projects.
 a. weakness b. balance c. waste d. guest
19. Parents healthy habits by setting good examples at home.
 a. damage b. prevent c. discourage d. encourage
20. A swimming must be patient and clear when teaching beginners.
 a. student b. instructor c. passenger d. worker



Exercise 04

Main Vocabulary

21. The company offers a two-year for all electronic devices.
 a. guarantee b. struggle c. grade d. pressure
22. Farmers often against drought during extremely hot summer seasons.
 a. progress b. relax c. guarantee d. struggle
23. Engineers work under when deadlines are tight and resources are limited.
 a. pressure b. freedom c. growth d. patience
24. The movie had an ending that moved many viewers deeply.
 a. careless b. emotional c. technical d. financial
25. The teacher repeated the to ensure everyone understood the task.
 a. grades b. influences c. instructions d. pressures
26. The teacher gave her students a good on their final exam.
 a. grade b. degree c. stress d. struggle
27. Parents strongly children's values through daily behavior.
 a. prevent b. ignore c. influence d. grade
28. Technology continues to rapidly in medical field making great achievements
 a. progress b. stress c. hesitate d. grade
29. Emotional have negative effect on students' academic performance.
 a. talents b. difficulties c. efforts d. Access
30. Her friendly helps her make friends easily.
 a. discouragement b. struggle c. conflict d. personality
31. National plays an important role in shaping societies.
 a. identity b. deadline c. discouragement d. deadline
32. She is in music and performs confidently during school events.
 a. ordinary b. overwhelmed c. talented d. expected
33. A/An result surprised researchers during the scientific experiment.
 a. unexpected b. dull c. simple d. routine
34. She joined a photography to improve camera skills practically.
 a. balance b. deadline c. workshop d. exam
35. He gave a/an presentation using clear language and visual examples.
 a. nervous b. professional c. careless d. childish

36. Learning new skills helps young people with future challenges.
 a. cope b. confuse c. remove d. overwhelm
37. Scientific leads to innovation and technological progress.
 a. routine b. guarantee c. stress d. creativity
38. Students become when deadlines are close and preparation time is limited.
 a. stressed b. ordinary c. dull d. minor
39. He grew after receiving positive feedback from his instructor.
 a. worried b. stressed c. confident d. uncertain
40. colors failed to attract attention in the modern art exhibition.
 a. Bright b. Dull c. Lively d. Inspiring
41. He planted trees in the to improve the home environment.
 a. yard b. garage c. classroom d. kitchen
42. Everyone praised the soup served at the restaurant.
 a. tasteless b. bitter c. dull d. delicious
43. Scientific experiments careful planning and accurate measurements.
 a. inquire b. confuse c. require d. damage
44. Solving complex equations is a hard for many students.
 a. challenge b. instructor c. client d. suppose
45. Wearing helmets can serious head injuries during accidents.
 a. protect b. prevent c. encourage d. spread
46. He avoided spending to save money for future plans.
 a. important b. overwhelmed c. essential d. unnecessary
47. No online course can success without practice and real commitment.
 a. measure b. limit c. guarantee d. fabric
48. The programmer developed innovative applications using simple coding tools.
 a. confused b. talented c. dull d. careless
49. Scientific depends on research, cooperation, and innovation.
 a. progress b. struggle c. conflict d. delay



Exercise 04

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

50. A lifestyle helps teenagers handle pressure more successfully.
 a. balanced b. balance c. stressed d. stressful
51. His coach's words gave him strong before the final match.
 a. encouraging b. encouragement c. discouragement d. encouraged
52. There is a interest in digital art among young designers.
 a. growing b. growth c. grow d. grown
53. Competition became after several companies entered the technology market.
 a. intensity b. intensify c. intensified d. intense
54. The workload was because tasks arrived faster than expected.
 a. overwhelmed b. relaxed c. overwhelming d. balanced
55. Learning new skills allows teenagers to personal growth gradually.
 a. take b. prevent c. experience d. ignore
56. Creative hobbies can joy and emotional balance to daily life.
 a. bring b. remove c. limit d. delay
57. Regular exercise helps students stress before important exams.
 a. create b. reduce c. spread d. collect

58. She decided to a workshop to improve her photography skills.
 a. join b. waste c. cancel d. avoid
59. He spends time photography instead of scrolling on social media.
 a. in b. on c. at d. for
60. Teachers try to prevent students wasting revision sessions.
 a. to b. on c. with d. from

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

61. The intense heat made working outdoors very difficult. The synonym of "intense" is.....
 a. strong b. extreme c. mild d. calm e. weak
62. His intense reaction surprised everyone during the meeting. The antonym of "intense" is
 a. extreme b. strong c. powerful d. calm e. mild
63. Economic growth depends on investment and innovation. The synonym of "growth" is
 a. decline b. development c. reduction d. increase e. decrease
64. She felt overwhelmed by responsibilities at work and home. The synonym of "overwhelmed" is
 a. active b. confident c. stressed d. calm e. exhausted
65. He was overwhelmed during exams but later felt better. The antonym of "overwhelmed" is
 a. calm b. stressed c. relaxed d. overloaded e. exhausted
66. He lost patience after waiting for hours. The antonym of "patience" is
 a. calmness b. impatience c. endurance d. tolerance e. rashness
67. Emotional balance helps students deal with pressure. The synonym of "balance" is.....
 a. stability b. disorder c. instability d. harmony e. imbalance
68. Teachers encourage students to express their ideas freely. The synonym of "encourage" is
 a. discourage b. motivate c. support d. weaken e. prevent
69. She is a talented artist with creative and original ideas. The antonym of "talented" is.....
 a. gifted b. untalented c. brilliant d. skilled e. unskilled
70. Exam stress affects students' concentration and sleep. The synonym of "stress" is.....
 a. pressure b. comfort c. calm d. anxiety e. relaxation

انتظروا
Giants

كتاب مراجعة العمالة
للصف الثاني الثانوي

GIANTS
العمالة

1

seem (seems - seemed)

٢١ بمعنى "يبدو أن" ولا تأتي في الاستمرار أو المجهول ولا يأتي بعدها حال فقط:

- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| ★ Jana seems lazy. ✓ | ★ Jana is seeming lazy. × |
| ★ Jana was seemed lazy. × | ★ Jana seems lazily. × |

٢٢ تستخدم **seem** للتحدث عن كيفية ظهور شيء ما أو شخص ما أو لوصف الحالة :

- ★ Everybody **seemed to** be ready, so we set off.
- ★ I **seem to** be the only person who hasn't heard the news.

Important Forms

seem + صفة

- ★ Toka **seems happy** at her new school.
- ★ Doesn't that **seem weird** to you?

seem + to + inf.

- ★ Ali **seems to be** active.
- ★ The whole situation **seems to be** strange to me.

seem + that / like / as if + جملة

→ يبدو أن

- ★ It **seemed (as if)** the end of the world had come.
- ★ It **seems (that)** someone forgot to lock the door.
- ★ It **seems (like)** they will release the hostages soon.

seem to + be + ing



لوصف حالة مستمرة

- ★ Ali **seems to be studying** hard.
- ★ Jana **seems to be facing** some troubles nowadays.

seem to + have + P.P



لوصف ملاحظة أو استنتاج حول فعل أو حالة في الماضي استنادا إلى الدلائل أو المظاهر الحالية

- ★ Ali **seems to have studied** hard.
- ★ Jana **seems to have faced** some troubles nowadays.

there + seems to be + اسم

→ يبدو أن هناك

- ★ **There seems to be** a misunderstanding between them.
- ★ **There seems to be** no way to fix this issue quickly.

2

mean (means - meant)

mean + ing

٢٣ بمعنى "يعني / يؤدي الي":

- ★ His comment **meant encouraging** me to pursue my dreams.
- ★ Saving money **means cutting** back on unnecessary expenses.

mean + to + inf.

بمعنى "يقصد / ينوي":

- ★ I **didn't mean to** upset you.
- ★ I **mean to study** harder for my exams next semester.

mean + that + clause

بمعنى "يعني / يوضح":

- ★ His absence yesterday **means that** he might be ill.
- ★ Her smile **means that** she is happy with the results.

3 be meant to + inf.

بمعنى "من المفترض أن" ولابد أن تأتي في المجهول في هذه الصيغة:

- ★ If you **are meant to** do something, you should do it.
- ★ Come on, Aya, you're **meant to** be helping me.

Uses الاستخدامات

- School **is meant to** be educational.
- You **are meant to** study hard for your exams.
- I thought the police **were meant to** protect people.

- التحدث عن الغرض أو الحقيقة من شيء ما
- تستخدم للتعبير عن الضرورة أو الإلزام
- تستخدم للتعبير عن المسؤولية أو الواجب

be meant + to + be + ing

تستخدم صيغة الاستمرار للتعبير عن أن شيئاً ما يُفترض أن يحدث أو يكون موجوداً بطريقة معينة

- ★ The changes in the organization **are meant to be improving** efficiency.

be meant + to + have + P.P

تستخدم الصيغة التامة للتعبير عن توقع أو خطة في الماضي قد تكون تحققت أو لم تتحقق

- ★ The repairs **were meant to have** been completed by now.

4 (be) supposed to + inf.

بمعنى "من المفترض أن" ولابد أن تأتي في المجهول في هذه الصيغة:

- ★ We're **supposed to** check out of the hotel by 11 o'clock. ✓
- ★ We **supposed to** check out of the hotel by 11 o'clock. ✗
- ★ We're **supposed to** check out of the hotel by 11 o'clock. ✗
- ★ We're **suppose** check out of the hotel by 11 o'clock. ✗

Uses الاستخدامات

الصيغة و الاستخدام في المضارع او المستقبل

المصدر + am - is - are + supposed + to + مفعول

- You **aren't supposed to** smoke in the hospital.
- I'm **supposed to** cook dinner tonight.
- It **is supposed to** rain this afternoon.
- Smart car **is supposed to** be comfortable.

- تستخدم للتعبير عن الضرورة أو الإلزام
- تستخدم للتعبير عن واجب أو مسؤولية
- تستخدم للتعبير عن التوقع
- تستخدم للتعبير عن الغرض من شيء ما

I'm **supposed to** meet my friends tonight.

٥ تستخدم للتعبير عن النية

All hospitals **are supposed to** be clean.

٦ تستخدم للتعبير عن اعتقاد شائع في شئ أو شخص ما



الصيغة و الاستخدام في الماضي

المصدر + **was - were + supposed + to +** مفعول

Jana **was supposed to** attend the party. What has happened?

١ تستخدم للتعبير عن ترتيبات لم تتحقق

It **was supposed to** be hot yesterday.

٢ تستخدم للتعبير عن توقعات لم تتحقق

It **was supposed to** be the newest car you can buy.

٣ تستخدم للتعبير عن نية لم تتحقق

مفعول + **be supposed + to + be + ing**

٤ تستخدم صيغة الاستمرار للتعبير عن حدث من المفترض ان يستمر فترة من الزمن

★ They **are supposed to be working** on the project this afternoon.

مفعول + **was - were + to + have + P.P**

٥ تستخدم الصيغة التامة للتعبير عن توقع أو خطة في الماضي قد تكون تحققت أو لم تتحقق

★ She **was supposed to have finished** the report by yesterday.



لاحظ يمكننا استخدام المجهول بعدهم كما يلي

seem	+ to + be + P.P	→	في البسيط
be meant			
be supposed	+ to have + been + P.P	→	في التام

★ The project **seems to be delayed**.

★ The rules **are meant to be followed** by everyone.

★ The meeting **is supposed to be scheduled** for tomorrow.



Exercise 04 Language Level 1

- Students follow healthy habits to stay active and focused. SB R 3
 a. are supposed to b. used to c. will have d. are using
- You submit the project on time, or you may lose marks. SB R 4
 a. are able to b. are supposed to c. were used to d. will have
- Turkish be easy at first, but it needed practice . SB
 a. was seeming b. was seemed c. seemed d. seemed to
- People use their free time in a better way. SB
 a. seem b. are supposed to c. are supposing to d. suppose
- Hossam to gain strength from his training, but it was difficult. SB
 a. was supposed b. seemed c. was meaning d. was seemed
- The language lessons be simple, but they were challenging . SB
 a. seemed b. supposed to c. meant to d. were supposed to
- The story to teach everyone a valuable lesson. SB
 a. was seemed b. was meant c. supposed d. seemed
- You are to support your sister; not to shout at her. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢ سما لوط ٢٠٢٢ المنيرة أول ٢٠٢٤
 a. supposed b. supposedly c. supposing d. suppose

9. When I visited my friend, he ill. I advised him to see a doctor. جرجا ٢٠٢٤
 a. has seemed b. was seeming c. was seemed d. seemed
10. You to pass a test to get the job you want. القوصية ٢٠٢٤
 a. are supposing b. supposed c. are supposed d. suppose
11. My friend is to be here in minutes. Let's wait for him. أسبوط أبو تيج ٢٠٢٤ بيا ٢٠٢٤
 a. suppose b. supposing c. supposed d. supposes
12. They are happy, they be having a nice time. أبنوب ٢٠٢٤
 a. are meaning to b. supposed to c. seem to d. won't
13. A lot of students can't answer the maths problem. It difficult. الغربية ٢٠٢٣
 a. is meant b. seems c. is supposed d. is seemed
14. My homework to be full of mistakes; the teacher is angry with me. اسوان ٢٠٢٤
 a. means b. supposes c. seems d. sees
15. Heba upset today. I don't know why. مطروح ٢٠٢٤
 a. seem b. seemed c. is seeming d. is seemed
16. I'm going to watch this film. It to be very impressive and interesting. بني سويف اهناسيا ٢٠٢٤
 a. supposed b. seems c. is seemed d. means



Exercise 04 Language Level 2

17. The film to start at 8.30, but it didn't begin on time. إدارة أبو حماد ٢٠٢٣ بني سويف/الواسطى ٢٠٢٣ الخصوص ٢٠٢٤
 a. seemed b. meant c. was supposed d. wanted
18. My teacher gave me full marks. He to be happy with my work. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
 a. seemed b. meant c. supposed d. is meant
19. This test be for secondary school students. مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٤
 a. is supposed to b. supposes c. suppose d. supposing
20. It to rain last week. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
 a. supposed b. meant c. didn't supposed d. wasn't supposed
21. Schools to follow rules of safety. أسبوط (منازل) ٢٠٢٤
 a. are meant b. supposed c. are seemed d. must
22. Mr. Ali is in a difficult situation. What to do to give him a hand? كفر شكر ٢٠٢٤
 a. is supposing b. are we supposed c. should we d. are we seemed
23. Schools to provide an excellent education for all students. بنها ٢٠٢٤
 a. are meant b. mean c. supposed d. are seemed
24. What is the problem with him? I don't know, but he to have a high temperature.
 a. is meant b. seems c. meant d. supposed
25. You are meant in bed. I don't know why you are still awake. صلخ ٢٠٢٤
 a. for sleeping b. to be sleeping c. being sleep d. to be slept
26. This lorry to carry the new furniture. مطروح ٢٠٢٤
 a. means b. is meant c. is meaning d. meant
27. My mobile be perfect but it broke down few days after I had bought it. شرق الزقازيق ٢٠٢٣
 a. supposed b. suppose to c. is supposed to d. was supposed to
28. The boy was late yesterday. He to have called his parents. بني سويف اهناسيا ٢٠٢٤
 a. was suppose b. was seemed c. was supposed d. was supposing
29. Rana hasn't lost the game, but she seems joking. غرب شبرا ٢٠٢٤
 a. to be b. to being c. being d. be

30. There to be no reason for the alarm.

- a. seems b. supposes c. means d. is supposing

٢٠٢٢ نقادة

31. He doesn't value his position anymore and often takes terrible risks.

- a. seemed b. supposed to c. seem to d. meant to

٢٠٢٢ المنيا

32. Joining the faculty of medicine working hard.

- a. mean b. means c. means to d. meant to

شمال سيناء ٢٠٢٢

33. It seems ; I can hear the rain drops on my window.

- a. rains b. rain c. to have rained d. to be raining

بنها ٢٠٢٢

34. The planned project more than just a train station.

- a. seems to b. meaning c. is meant to be d. is supposed

بسيون ٢٠٢٢

35. Adverts be honest, but we must be careful.

- a. are meant b. are supposed to c. are seemed to d. meant to

البلينا ٢٠٢٢

36. Did he mean her late at night? – No, it was a mistake.

- a. to call b. to be called c. call d. to calling

٤م

37. They are supposed to arrive tomorrow. This sentence shows

- a. ability b. impossibility c. prohibition d. expectation

٤م

38. What to do in the company? I need to know all about my duties here.

- a. do I suppose b. am I supposed c. do I mean d. am I seemed

٤م

39. He to be absent-minded; he didn't see the car coming towards him.

- a. opposed b. supposed c. meant d. seemed

٤م

40. Do you know what by "inspiration?"

- a. supposed b. is meant c. is meaning d. meant

٤م

41. His words to express his apology, but they were misunderstood.

- a. intending b. supposed c. were meaning d. were meant

٤م

42. The new director of the company strict and tough.

- a. seem to b. seems to c. seems to be d. seems to being

43. I can't see this photo clearly. What is it

- a. meaning to be b. seemed to be c. supposed to d. meant to be

44. No one supposed to know about it.

- a. do b. does c. was d. were



Exercise 04 Language Level 3

45. Some new clients are supposed to tomorrow.

- a. meet b. be met c. have met d. being met

الخانكة ٢٠٢٤

46. This piece of cloth to be a jacket, but it was made a suit.

- a. was seemed b. is meant c. was meant d. supposed

بسيون ٢٠٢٤

47. We to help our parents, our society and community.

- a. aren't supposed b. are seeming c. should d. are supposed

الخصوص ٢٠٢٤

48. I was supposed to have revised better for such an exam. The speaker is

- a. regret b. regretful c. regrets d. regretted

بسيون ٢٠٢٤

49. I recommend buying this flat. It the best flat that you can buy.

- a. is supposed to be b. supposed c. not supposed d. is suppose to be

حلوان ٢٠٢٤

50. My driving licence is supposed next month.

- a. to renew b. for renewing c. to be renewed d. to have renewed

غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٤

51. The bus driver needs to concentrate. You..... to talk to him. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
 a. are supposed b. are meant c. seemed d. aren't supposed
52. "You were supposed to be in your office at five, Aya." This means Aya..... in time. بيا ٢٠٢٤
 a. isn't b. is c. wasn't d. was
53. This homework today. The deadline is tomorrow. بني مزار ٢٠٢٤
 a. didn't suppose to do b. is supposed to do
 c. is supposed to be done d. was meant to do
54. One of the following sentences is grammatically **incorrect**. سمالوط ٢٠٢٤
 a. What does this word mean? b. What is meant by this word?
 c. What is the meaning of this word? d. What is this word meaning?
55. It's not to offer your guests food or drinks. بيسيون ٢٠٢٤
 a. mean b. meaningful c. seem d. suppose
56. The train is a of transport . بليس ٢٠٢٣
 a. mean b. meaning c. means d. meant
57. The instructions seem by many people.
 a. to misunderstand b. to be misunderstanding
 c. be misunderstood d. to be misunderstood
58. Don't worry; the car repaired well to be ready for the long journey. £M
 a. seems to have been b. supposed to have been
 c. seems to have d. meant to have been
59. Ahmed seems a wonderful holiday.
 a. has b. have c. had d. to be having
60. It would seem someone left the building unlocked.
 a. then b. to c. than d. that
61. "Why did you move to New York?" "It seemed a good idea at that time"
 a. like b. to c. that d. alike
62. There were so many delays - it seemed we would never get home.
 a. unless b. as unless c. if d. as if

2) Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- She didn't hurt you on purpose. (mean) **S3 R4**
- It appears that the company has suffered serious financial losses. (seems)
- I had no intention of offending you by my comment. (mean)
- It is essential for teachers to deal with students fairly. (meant)
- It is forbidden to use mobile phones during the exam. (supposed)
- It is important for students to revise their lessons daily. (meant)
- It is necessary for the team to arrive early tomorrow. (supposed)
- It is your responsibility to raise awareness about environmental issues. (supposed)
- It was arranged that the school would open early today. (supposed)
- Parents talk proudly about their children these days. (seems)
- The device is designed to save energy automatically. (meant)
- You must show respect to others' opinions at all times. (It ... / supposed)
- The house will be repaired next week. (supposed)
- You are not allowed to park your car here. (supposed)
- You must follow the school rules strictly. (It ... / supposed)

Find Your Passion!

- 3 Making the Most of Our Free Time
4 When a Hobby Becomes Income
5 My Hobby Review



Key Vocabulary

customized (adj) مخصص / مخصصاً	scroll (v) يمرر الشاشة / يتصفح عمودياً	impression (n) انطباع
entrepreneurship (n) ريادة الأعمال	capture (v) يلتقط / يأسر	review (n/v) مراجعة نقدية / يراجع
tutorial (n) فيديو تعليمي / شرح تعليمي	process (n) عملية / إجراء	management إدارة
uneven (adj) غير متساوي	tough (adj) صعب / شاق	crafting (n) الحرفية / فن الصنع
energetic (adj) نشيط / مفعم بالحيوية	feel the same يشعر بنفس الشعور / يوافق في الرأي	take up يبدأ في ممارسة / يشغل (وقتاً أو مساحة)

Main Vocabulary

editing (n) تحرير / تعديل	bead (n) خرزة	calming (adj) مهدئ / مريح نفسي
pronunciation (n) نُطق	thread (n) خيط	chain (n) سلسلة / ميدالية مفاتيح
practice (n) ممارسة / تدريب	engage (v) يشارك / ينخرط في	strength (n) قوة
creativity (n) إبداع	repetitive (adj) متكرر	service (n) خدمة
enjoyment (n) متعة / استمتاع	recommend (v) يوصي بـ	pick (v) يلتقط / يختار
handmade (adj) مصنوع يدوياً	rewarding (adj) مجزي / مرضي	unchanging (adj) ثابت / غير متغير
income (n) دخل	source (n) مصدر	simple (adj) بسيط
initials (n) الحروف الأولى من اسم	workout (n) تمرين رياضي	gaming (n) ألعاب الكترونية
evaluate (v) يقيم	beginner (n) مبتدئ	involve (v) يتضمن
material (n) مادة	neighborhood (n) حي سكني	opportunity (n) فرصة
strategy (n) إستراتيجية	logical (adj) منطقي	effort (n) جهد
coding (n) البرمجة	academic (adj) أكاديمي	jogging (n) هرولة / مشي سريع
rush (v) يندفع		distract (v) يشتت

Collocations

make sense يبدو منطقياً - يكون معقول	take the first step toward يخطو أول خطوة نحو
make the most of يحقق أقصى استفادة من	take practice يقوم بعمل تدريبات
manage time better يدير وقته بشكل أفضل	catch attention يجذب الانتباه
get healthier يتحسن صحياً	take a long time يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً
build problem-solving skills يبني مهارات حل المشكلات	grow into an opportunity يتحول لفرصة
gain strength يكتسب قوة	come out uneven يخرج غير متساوي

Expressions & Prepositions

time management إدارة الوقت	pay for يدفع ثمن لـ
go as planned يسير كما هو مخطط	work on يعمل على / يحسن
source of income مصدر دخل	come out يظهر / يخرج
academic responsibilities مسؤوليات أكاديمية / دراسية	turn out يتضح / يتبين
personal interests اهتمامات شخصية	earn from يكسب من
logical thinking تفكير منطقي	fill in يملأ استمارة

Definitions

customized	مُخصَّص / معدَّ خصيصاً	▶ made specially to fit a person's needs, preferences, or requirements
entrepreneurship	ريادة الأعمال	▶ the skill of starting and running a business to make a profit and create opportunities
tutorial	فيديو تعليمي / شرح تعليمي	▶ a lesson or guide that teaches how to do something step by step
review	مراجعة نقدية	▶ an opinion or evaluation of something
crafting	الحرفية / فن الصنع	▶ making things by hand using skill, creativity, and simple tools
scroll	يمرر الشاشة / يتصفح عمودياً	▶ to move text or images up or down on a screen to see more content
feel the same	لديه نفس الشعور	▶ to have the same opinion or emotion as someone else

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
uneven	غير متساوي	irregular, rough, inconsistent	even, smooth, regular
energetic	نشيط / مفعم بالحيوية	active, lively, dynamic	lazy, inactive, tired
capture	يلتقط / يأسر	catch, seize, record	release, lose, free
recommend	يوصي / يرشح	suggest, advise, propose	discourage, warn against
customized	مُخصَّص / معدَّ خصيصاً	personalized, tailored, modified	standard, general
simple	بسيط	easy, basic, a piece of cake	complex, difficult, complicated
rush	يندفع	hurry, speed, dash	slow down, delay, wait

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
customize	customization	customized
enjoy	enjoyment	enjoyable
create	creativity	creative
reward	reward	rewarding
manage	management	manageable
engage	engagement	engaging
pay	payment	paid



Language Notes



Notice the Difference

workout	تمرين رياضي	work out	يتدرَّب / يحل
source	مصدر	resource	مورد
evaluate	يقيم	appreciate	يقدر

process	عملية (إجراءات)	operation	عملية (جراحية)
initial	حرف أول / أولي	initiative	مبادرة
reward	مكافأة	award	جائزة رسمية
review	مراجعة نقدية	view	رأي / وجهة نظر

control	يسيطر على
a risk	يخاطر
into account	يأخذ في الاعتبار
the lead	يتولى القيادة
a decision	يتخذ قرار

take
(took-taken)

action	يتخذ إجراء
part	يشارك
responsibility / charge	يتولى مسؤولية
notes	يدون ملاحظات
place	يحدث

entrepreneur, entrepreneurial & entrepreneurship

entrepreneur	رائد أعمال	► He is a young entrepreneur who started his own small business.
entrepreneurial	ريادي / له روح ريادة الأعمال	► She has an entrepreneurial mindset and enjoys creating new ideas.
entrepreneurship	ريادة الأعمال	► Entrepreneurship helps young people create jobs and solve problems.

Reading



"When a Hobby Becomes Income"

Read the following text

A Small Idea That Became Something Bigger



When I started Grade 11, I often felt that school **took up** ⁽¹⁾ all my time. Between homework, projects, and exams, my days felt the same. One evening, while **scrolling** ⁽²⁾ through videos online, I saw a **tutorial** ⁽³⁾ on making **handmade** ⁽⁴⁾ key chains using **beads** and **threads**. It looked fun, so I tried it just to relax.

At first, the key chains were supposed to be simple, but mine kept **coming out uneven** ⁽⁵⁾. Still, I enjoyed the **process**. Every evening, I practiced a little, and my designs slowly improved. One day, I brought a few key **chains** ⁽⁶⁾ to school, and my friends were surprised that I had made them myself. Two classmates asked if I could make key chains with their **initials** and they offered to pay.

I didn't expect to **earn money** ⁽⁷⁾ from something I did for fun, but soon teachers and other students began requesting **customized** ⁽⁸⁾ designs. I created a small price list and even started making special key chains for school events. What began as a way to relax became a small **source of income**.

By the end of the term, I learned that hobbies are not just for **enjoyment** ⁽⁹⁾. With **creativity** ⁽¹⁰⁾, **practice**, and **effort**, a hobby can **grow into an opportunity**. Sometimes, what you do in your free time can become your first step toward **entrepreneurship** ⁽¹¹⁾.

- (١) يشغل
- (٢) يتصفح
- (٣) فيديو تعليمي
- (٤) يدوي
- (٥) غير متساوي
- (٦) سلاسل
- (٧) يكسب نقود
- (٨) مخصص
- (٩) تسلية
- (١٠) إبداع
- (١١) ريادة أعمال



Listening



Last month, many people in our **neighborhood** ⁽¹⁾ decided to start using their free time more wisely. Some wanted to build their bodies, while others hoped to learn new skills. I chose morning **jogging** ⁽²⁾ because it seemed to be a simple way to **get healthier**. I was supposed to jog for twenty minutes every day, but on the first morning, the cold air made it harder than I expected. Still, the fresh air and quiet streets were **calming** ⁽³⁾, so I kept going, even if I couldn't complete the full time.

- (1) حي / منطقة
- (2) هرولة
- (3) مهدئ
- (4) يختار
- (5) نطق
- (6) يكتسب قوة
- (7) اقوى
- (8) نشيط

My cousin Mariam wanted to learn a new language. She **picked** ⁽⁴⁾ Turkish because it appeared to be easy for beginners. At first, the words seemed to **make sense**, but she quickly realized that **pronunciation** ⁽⁵⁾ **takes practice**.

Another neighbor, Hossam, joined a gym near the market. His training was meant to help him **gain strength** ⁽⁶⁾, but the exercises were **tougher** ⁽⁷⁾ than they looked. However, after a few days, he said he felt more **energetic** ⁽⁸⁾.

By the end of the month, we all agreed that using our free time wisely doesn't always **go as planned**, but it always helps us grow, learn, and improve ourselves.



Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

1. Getting enough sleep helps students feel more during the day. SB R3
 a. energetic b. bored c. exhausted d. careless
2. The company provided a service designed to meet each customer's unique needs.
 a. customized b. common c. pessimistic d. ordinary
3. His polite behavior created a positive on teachers and classmates at school.
 a. suspicion b. impression c. permission d. management
4. Many teenagers on their phones for hours instead of studying their lessons.
 a. scroll b. customize c. capture d. chain
5. The artist tried to the feeling of happiness through bright colors and shapes.
 a. remove b. distract c. capture d. pay
6. Students should their notes regularly to understand lessons better before exams.
 a. repair b. review c. capture d. forget
7. She followed a simple online to learn basic computer programming skills.
 a. welcome b. agreement c. view d. tutorial
8. encourages creativity and innovation to build successful businesses.
 a. Disability b. Entrepreneurship c. Pronunciation d. Disrespect
9. Improving communication skills is a long that requires practice and patience.
 a. process b. conflict c. yard d. creativity
10. The ground made walking difficult during the long trip across the countryside.
 a. smooth b. paved c. even d. uneven
11. It was certainly a/an challenge, but he accepted it bravely.
 a. tough b. energetic c. simple d. tiny
12. She decided to swimming to stay healthy and reduce stress after work.
 a. take up b. take after c. take over d. take in
13. The child played happily all day and still had plenty of energy at night.
 a. lazy b. confused c. energetic d. dull

14. products usually cost more than standard factory-made items.

- a. Customized b. Mass-produced c. simple d. low-cost

15. Schools now teach to encourage innovation and self-employment.

- a. entrepreneurship b. routine c. supervision d. pronunciation

16. The website published a of the new mobile application.

- a. revision b. confusion c. review d. sight

17. Learning a foreign language is a gradual requiring patience.

- a. operation b. process c. product d. entrepreneurship



Exercise 10

Main Vocabulary

18. Careful improves the quality of articles before they are published online.

- a. spoiling b. editing c. delivery d. storage

19. The teacher encouraged by allowing students to design their own projects.

- a. routine b. pressure c. discipline d. creativity

20. She prefers gifts because they show personal effort and care.

- a. digital b. imported c. handmade d. automatic

21. His monthly increased after he found a better-paying job.

- a. expense b. income c. debt d. donation

22. The meeting focused on introducing the project's main objectives.

- a. initial b. routine c. final d. repeated

23. Teachers often students' progress through tests and classroom activities.

- a. ignore b. decorate c. evaluate d. delay

24. Learning helps students understand how computer programs are created.

- a. typing b. coding c. drawing d. printing

25. A clear is essential for achieving long-term business success.

- a. reaction b. accident c. habit d. strategy

26. Doing tasks every day can quickly lead to boredom.

- a. creative b. exciting c. repetitive d. flexible

27. This bag is made from a recycled to reduce environmental harm.

- a. energy b. material c. skill d. skull

28. She used a small glass to decorate the handmade necklace.

- a. ribbon b. button c. bead d. wire

29. Helping others can be a deeply experience, so we should help each other.

- a. rewarding b. confusing c. tiring d. risky

30. A short morning can improve both physical and mental health.

- a. pause b. rest c. break d. workout

31. This book is perfect for a who is learning English.

- a. expert b. beginner c. master d. leader

32. She plans to pursue a/an career at a well-known university.

- a. academic b. athletic c. artistic d. medical

33. Solving math problems requires thinking and careful steps.

- a. emotional b. logical c. random d. careless

34. Loud noises can easily students during exams.

- a. assist b. calm c. distract d. support

35. Soft music creates a atmosphere in the classroom.

- a. stressful b. calming c. noisy d. tense

36. The rules remained despite many requests for updates. They are always the same.
a. unchanging **b.** flexible **c.** temporary **d.** modern
37. The hotel provides excellent customer to all its guests.
a. product **b.** service **c.** machine **d.** location
38. This scholarship offers a great for students to study abroad.
a. problem **b.** delay **c.** opportunity **d.** excuse
39. She goes every morning to stay fit and active.
a. wrong **b.** jogging **c.** shopping **d.** driving
40. The internet is an important of information for students.
a. result **b.** topic **c.** effect **d.** source
41. The teacher tried to students by asking interesting questions.
a. engage **b.** avoid **c.** interrupt **d.** confuse
42. Listening to soft music has a very and soothing effect after a long stressful day.
a. fake **b.** confusable **c.** carving **d.** calming
43. Yoga increases both physical and mental....., helping people handle stress more efficiently.
a. length **b.** strength **c.** birth **d.** death
44. Volunteering at the orphanage was a very experience, giving her immense happiness.
a. fake **b.** confusable **c.** rewarding **d.** disappointing
45. Traditions are....., passed down from generation to generation without any modification.
a. changing **b.** unchanging **c.** ordinary **d.** flexible



Exercise 04

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

46. He failed the final exam last semester because of poor time...during his study schedule.
a. management **b.** interest **c.** thinking **d.** income
47. You must pay all the damage you caused to the rental car immediately.
a. on **b.** for **c.** from **d.** in
48. Clear instructions help ideas sense to new learners.
a. do **b.** get **c.** make **d.** take
49. Solving puzzles and challenges problem-solving skills in young learners.
a. distract **b.** ignore **c.** build **d.** damage
50. Small daily habits can into an opportunity for future success.
a. break **b.** fall **c.** stop **d.** grow
51. She spends her free time following her personal and hobbies to stay happy and healthy.
a. interested **b.** interests **c.** interesting **d.** interestingly
52. The school trip didn't go as due to unexpected heavy rain during the morning.
a. plan **b.** planning **c.** plans **d.** planned
53. The story turned to be false after the investigation revealed all the facts.
a. on **b.** as **c.** out **d.** from
54. Practice and repetition help students the most of their learning time.
a. lose **b.** take **c.** make **d.** break
55. Wearing bright colors can attention in crowded public places.
a. catch **b.** lose **c.** avoid **d.** drop

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

56. The road surface became uneven after heavy rain. The synonym of "uneven" is
 a. irregular b. smooth c. rough d. flat e. sleepy
57. The road was uneven before workers repaired it. The antonym of "uneven" is
 a. bumpy b. rough c. smooth d. regular e. irregular
58. The energetic coach motivated his players. The synonym of "energetic" is
 a. extreme b. active c. lazy d. weak e. lively
59. The artist tried to capture emotions clearly through colors. The synonym of "capture" is
 a. record b. ignore c. catch d. lose e. forget
60. The energetic athlete felt tired after running for hours. The antonym of "energetic" is
 a. active b. confident c. lazy d. dynamic e. inactive
61. Teachers often recommend useful websites. The antonym of "recommend" is
 a. advise b. suggest c. refuse d. ignore e. cancel
62. The company offers customized courses. The antonym of "customized" is
 a. tailored b. modified c. personalized d. general e. standard
63. The store sells customized items, not standard products. The synonym of "customized" is
 a. personalized b. common c. tailored d. standard e. general
64. The instructions were simple enough for beginners to follow. The synonym of "simple" is
 a. complex b. easy c. basic d. difficult e. advanced
65. People rush to leave the office early on busy weekdays. The antonym of "rush" is
 a. speed b. wait c. quick d. slow down e. hurry
66. The task was simple before extra steps made it difficult. The antonym of "simple" is.....
 a. easy b. plain c. complex d. basic e. complicated

Giants

انتظروا!!!!

كتاب مراجعة العملاقة
للصف الثاني الثانوي



Writing a Review

المقال النقدي

Definition of a review

- ★ A review is a piece of writing in which the writer gives information and an opinion about something, such as a hobby, a book, a movie, or a product.
- المقال النقدي هو قطعة كتابية يقدم فيها الكاتب معلومات ورأيه الشخصي عن شيء معين مثل هواية أو كتاب أو فيلم.
- ★ It describes what the thing is, evaluates its good and bad points, and gives a recommendation.

المقال النقدي يشرح الشيء، يقيم مميزاته وعيوبه، ثم يقدم نصيحة أو توصية في النهاية.

A review Structure

1) Introduction (Engage the reader)

المقدمة (جذب القارئ)

Purpose:

الهدف

- ★ Catch the reader's attention
 - ★ Introduce what you are reviewing (a hobby, book, movie, etc.)
 - ★ Give a short general opinion (Is it good? fun? useful?)
- جذب انتباه القارئ
تقديم الشيء الذي تقوم بمراجعته (هواية، كتاب، فيلم، الخ)
إعطاء رأي عام قصير (هل هو جيد؟ ممتع؟ مفيد؟)

Includes:

تشمل

- ★ Hook (a question/feeling/surprising detail)
 - ★ The name of the thing being reviewed
 - ★ Your general impression (positive, negative, or mixed)
- جملة افتتاحية جذابة (سؤال / شعور / تفصييلة مفاجئة)
اسم الشيء الذي تتم مراجعته
الانطباع العام (إيجابي، سلبي، أو مختلط)

2) Description Paragraph (What is it?)

فقرة الوصف (ما هي؟)

Purpose:

الهدف

- ★ Give the main information the reader needs to understand about the hobby.
- إعطاء المعلومات الأساسية التي يحتاجها القارئ لفهم الهواية

Includes:

تشمل

- ★ What the hobby involves
 - ★ When/why you started it
 - ★ Tools, skills, or steps
 - ★ What people usually do when practicing it
- مما تتكون الهواية
متى ولماذا بدأت ممارستها
الأدوات أو المهارات أو الخطوات
ما يفعله الناس عادة عند ممارستها

3) Evaluation Paragraph (What's good / bad about it?)

فقرة التقييم (ما الجيد / السيئ فيها؟)

Purpose:

الهدف

- ★ Share your opinion supported by reasons and examples.
- مشاركة رأيك مدعوماً بالأسباب والأمثلة

Includes: تشمل

- ★ What you like
- ★ (Optional) What you don't like
- ★ Examples from your experience
- ★ Words of opinion (I think, I believe, In my view...)

ما تحبه
ما لا تحبه (اختياري)
أمثلة من تجربتك الشخصية
كلمات تدل على الرأي

4) Recommendation (Final paragraph)

التوصية (الفقرة الأخيرة)

Purpose: الهدف

- ★ Tell the reader if you recommend the hobby and why.

إخبار القارئ هل تنصح بهذه الهواية ولماذا

Includes: تشمل

- ★ Restated opinion
- ★ Who would enjoy this hobby
- ★ Final thought or advice

إعادة صياغة الرأي
من الذي سيستمتع بهذه الهواية
فكرة أخيرة أو نصيحة

Summary of Review Structure

PART	PURPOSE	WHAT TO INCLUDE
Introduction	Engage the reader	Hook + name of hobby + general opinion
Description	Explain the hobby	What it is, how it works, when you began
Evaluation	Give your opinion	Likes/dislikes + examples
Recommendation	Final advice	Who should try it + restated opinion

Model Review

نموذج لمقال نقدي

My favorite hobby is coding, which I started during a very busy school year. At first, I thought spending time learning to code would distract me from my studies, but I soon discovered that it actually helped me think more clearly. When I work on coding tasks, I focus deeply on solving problems, which helps me forget stress and stay calm.

This hobby has taught me patience, logical thinking, and creativity, as writing code requires planning and careful testing. Coding also helps me manage my time better and balance my academic responsibilities with personal interests. I would strongly recommend coding to other students because it builds problem-solving skills, prepares us for future careers, and shows that learning can be both useful and enjoyable.

**Exercise 04****Writing**

- The paragraph that aims to catch the reader's attention and give a short general opinion is the
 a. Description paragraph b. Evaluation paragraph
 c. Recommendation paragraph d. Introduction
- Giving information about what the hobby involves is the purpose of the paragraph.
 a. Evaluation b. Recommendation c. Introduction d. Description
- Which of the following is mainly used as a hook in the introduction?
 a. Tools and skills b. A question, feeling, or surprising detail
 c. Final advice d. Examples from experience

4. The introduction of a review should include the name of the thing being reviewed and a impression.
 - a. detailed
 - b. final
 - c. general
 - d. negative
5. When explaining when and why you started a hobby, which paragraph should you write?
 - a. Description
 - b. Evaluation
 - c. Introduction
 - d. Recommendation
6. Advice to the reader is mainly found in the paragraph.
 - a. Introduction
 - b. Description
 - c. Evaluation
 - d. Recommendation
7. The paragraph that focuses on sharing opinions supported by reasons and examples is the
 - a. Introduction
 - b. Description
 - c. Evaluation
 - d. Recommendation
8. Which of the following may be optional in the evaluation paragraph?
 - a. What you like
 - b. Opinion words
 - c. Examples from experience
 - d. What you do not like
9. Tools, skills, or steps related to a hobby are usually mentioned in the
 - a. Introduction
 - b. Description
 - c. Evaluation
 - d. Recommendation
10. Where does the writer restate their opinion?
 - a. Introduction
 - b. Recommendation
 - c. Evaluation
 - d. Description
11. Words such as "I think" and "In my view" are mainly used in the paragraph.
 - a. Evaluation
 - b. Description
 - c. Introduction
 - d. Recommendation
12. Why are examples included in the evaluation paragraph?
 - a. To attract attention
 - b. To explain tools
 - c. To support opinions
 - d. To give advice
13. The main purpose of the recommendation paragraph is to
 - a. describe the hobby
 - b. explain tools and skills
 - c. give a general impression
 - d. tell the reader whether you recommend the hobby
14. The description paragraph mainly helps the reader to
 - a. decide whether to try the hobby
 - b. understand the hobby
 - c. share personal opinions
 - d. give advice
15. A short general opinion about the hobby should appear in the
 - a. Introduction
 - b. Description
 - c. Evaluation
 - d. Recommendation
16. Which paragraph focuses more on facts than opinions?
 - a. Introduction
 - b. Description
 - c. Evaluation
 - d. Recommendation
17. Giving likes and dislikes about a hobby is mainly done in the
 - a. Introduction
 - b. Description
 - c. Evaluation
 - d. Recommendation
18. The hook is mainly used to
 - a. attract the reader's attention
 - b. give advice
 - c. restate opinion
 - d. explain tools
19. What comes directly after the introduction in a review?
 - a. Evaluation paragraph
 - b. Recommendation paragraph
 - c. Description paragraph
 - d. Final thought
20. The general impression in the introduction can be
 - a. positive only
 - b. negative only
 - c. detailed only
 - d. positive, negative, or mixed
21. Which paragraph usually ends with a final thought or advice?
 - a. Introduction
 - b. Description
 - c. Evaluation
 - d. Recommendation
22. Which of the following is NOT included in the description paragraph?
 - a. What the hobby involves
 - b. Tools and skills
 - c. Final advice
 - d. When you started it



Exercise 04

Translation

1. Egypt's information and communications technology sector is the fastest growing sector in the Egyptian economy over the past few years.

أ- يعتبر قطاع تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات في مصر سريع النمو في الاقتصاد المصري خلال الأعوام القليلة الماضية.
 ب- يعتبر قطاع تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات في مصر أسرع القطاعات نمواً في الاقتصاد المصري خلال الأعوام القليلة الماضية.
 ج- يعتبر قطاع تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات في مصر أسرع القطاعات نمواً في الاقتصاد المصري منذ الأعوام القليلة.
 د- يعتبر قطاع تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات في مصر أسرع القطاعات نمواً في الاقتصاد المصري خلال الأعوام القليلة القادمة.

2. The Ministry of Electricity and Renewable Energy has affirmed that all the solar power plants in Egypt operate at full capacity across various temperatures.

أ- أكد وزير الكهرباء والطاقة المتجددة أن جميع محطات الطاقة الشمسية في مصر تعمل بكامل طاقتها في درجات الحرارة المختلفة.
 ب- أكدت وزارة الكهرباء والطاقة المتجددة أن جميع محطات الطاقة الحرارية في مصر تعمل بكامل طاقتها في درجات الحرارة المختلفة.
 ج- أكدت وزارة الكهرباء والطاقة المتجددة أن جميع محطات الطاقة الشمسية في مصر تعمل بكامل طاقتها في درجات الحرارة المختلفة.
 د- أكدت وزارة الكهرباء والطاقة المتجددة أن جميع محطات الطاقة الشمسية في مصر تعمل بنصف طاقتها في درجات الحرارة المختلفة.

3. The government does its best to provide food for every citizen by achieving the food security.

أ- تبذل الحكومة قصارى جهدها لتشتري الغذاء لكل مواطن من خلال تحقيق الأمن الغذائي.
 ب- تبذل الحكومة قصارى جهدها لزراعة الغذاء لكل مواطن من خلال تحقيق الأمن الغذائي.
 ج- تبذل الحكومة قصارى جهدها لتوفير الغذاء لكل مواطن من خلال تحقيق التقدم الغذائي.
 د- تبذل الحكومة قصارى جهدها لتوفير الغذاء لكل مواطن من خلال تحقيق الأمن الغذائي.

4. Hobbies help us satisfy our desires and get rid of the pressure of hard work. We have to practise our hobbies regularly.

أ- الهوايات تساعدنا على إشباع رغباتنا والتخلص من ضغط العمل الشاق. علينا ممارسة هواياتنا بالتدريج.
 ب- الهوايات تساعدنا على إشباع رغباتنا والتخلص من ضغط العمل الشاق. علينا ممارسة هواياتنا بانتظام.
 ج- الهوايات تساعدنا على إشباع رغباتنا والتأقلم مع ضغط العمل الشاق. علينا ممارسة هواياتنا بانتظام.
 د- الهوايات تساعدنا على تحسين رغباتنا والتخلص من ضغط العمل الشاق. علينا ممارسة هواياتنا بانتظام.

٥. المتطوعون لا يعملون من أجل المال ولكن من أجل رؤية الابتسامة على وجه شخص مريض أو فقير.

- a. Volunteers do not work for money, but to see the smile on the face of a sick or poor person.
 b. Volunteers do not work with money, but to see the smile on the face of a sick or poor person.
 c. Volunteers do not work for money, but to seeing the smile on the face of a sick or poor person.
 d. Volunteers do not work for money, but to see the smile on the face of a sick or poor person.

٦. يساعدنا الإنترنت على معرفة كل شيء يحدث في جميع أنحاء العالم وهو مصدر للثقافة للعديد من الناس.

- a. The Internet help us to know everything that is happening around the world and is a source of culture for many people.
 b. The Internet helps us to know something that is happening round the world and is a source of culture for many people.
 c. The Internet helps us to know everything that is happening around the world and is a source of culture for many people.
 d. The Internet helps us to know everything that is happening around the world and is a source of cultural for many people.



General Exercises

on

Unit

10



Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

- "Finding your passion can increase your motivation." The synonym of motivation is.....
a. encouragement b. drive c. boredom d. laziness e. weakness
- "Regular exercise helps people stay fit." The opposite of fit is
a. healthy b. strong c. weak d. tired e. active

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- After the final exams, many students felt completely by the heavy workload.
a. confident b. curious c. relaxed d. overwhelmed
- If you're unsure about coding, just and learn from mistakes.
a. avoid it b. give it a try c. forget it d. delay it
- The online helped students understand graphic design step by step.
a. tutorial b. fight c. debate d. death
- The teacher provided a/an study plan based on each student's learning style.
a. ignored b. outdated c. customized d. traditional
- Schools now encourage to prepare students for creating their own businesses.
a. laziness b. entrepreneurship c. retirement d. unemployment
- Teenagers should learn how to study time with rest and social life.
a. ignore b. separate c. balance d. remove
- He to like the new T-shirt; it isn't fashionable. EM
a. doesn't seem b. isn't seemed c. isn't supposing d. not supposed
- He have read many books; he is really knowledgeable. EM
a. seems to b. supposed to c. can't d. should
- You study day and night to get good marks. سوهاج ٢٠٢٢
a. are supposed to b. are supposing to c. seeming d. was seemed
- This restaurant is to be excellent. البحيرة ٢٠٢٤
a. mean b. meant c. meaning d. means
- Mentioning who would enjoy the hobby is part of the paragraph.
a. Introduction b. Description c. Evaluation d. Recommendation
- Which paragraph explains what people usually do when practicing the hobby?
a. Introduction b. Description c. Evaluation d. Recommendation



Reading Comprehension

We may think of dinosaurs as dangerous and powerful, but what would you say if you found out that they caught colds and coughs?

Scientists have come across something they have never seen before: lumps in the neck of a dinosaur. They believe that these were caused by a virus that affected breathing. The fossil that led to this finding was of a long-necked herbivorous, or plant-eating, dinosaur that the scientists have nicknamed Dolly. This dinosaur was discovered in 1990 in Montana, USA, and it is thought to be around 150 million years old. When looking at the neck, scientists located peculiar bony bumps in places that would have been connected to the dinosaur's lungs.

Due to this location, it is believed that the viral infection that affected this dinosaur was a respiratory illness. Usually, diseases that affect breathing don't have an impact on bones, so Dolly must have been very ill.

Although this wasn't great for Dolly, it is exciting for those interested in the life of dinosaurs. Most diseases affect the organs and skin rather than the skeleton. But it is that hard organic matter that is most likely to be preserved in fossils, which are all that scientists have available to investigate the things that affected dinosaurs' bodies. When looking for

signs of illness in dinosaurs from millions of years ago, most of the evidence so far has only been found in their teeth, knees, and elbow joints. Experts can study these issues and determine more about the evolution of dinosaurs; in fact, the infection that Dolly had seems to be almost identical to one found in birds today; a fact that further confirms the link, first revealed in the 19th century, between these animals.

- The main idea of the passage is
 a. dinosaurs died millions of years ago b. the dangers of viruses
 c. a new discovery d. dinosaurs were all killed by infections
- Despite their, dinosaurs could also get runny noses and sore throats.
 a. danger b. strength c. science d. age
- A respiratory illness usually only affects
 a. viruses b. bones c. joints d. breathing
- Scientists are particularly interested in this finding because
 a. it told them about the dinosaur's teeth and joints
 b. they don't know much about dinosaur illnesses not related to bones
 c. Dolly was discovered in America d. it was a fossil of soft organic material
- Which of the following is not true about the dinosaur that had the neck lumps?
 a. The scientist who discovered it was called Dolly b. It didn't eat meat.
 c. The neck lumps were on the dinosaur's bones. d. It was alive 150 million years ago.
- Scientists are that the dinosaur they found had been extremely unwell.
 a. unhappy b. certain c. unsure d. angry
- Which of the following sentences can best summarise the fourth paragraph?
 a. Bones are the most useful tool scientists have available to tell them about dinosaurs.
 b. Scientists look at dinosaurs' organs to know how they became ill.
 c. Fossils can show scientists all the types of illnesses that dinosaurs had.
 d. Dinosaurs only suffered from teeth and knee problems.
- According to the passage, dinosaurs may be similar to
 a. infections b. evolution c. humans d. birds



Writing

- The rapid population growth is a major problem that hinders the development projects implemented by the government.

١. يعتبر التلوث السريع مشكلة كبيرة تعيق المشاريع التنموية التي تنفذها الحكومة.
 بـ يعتبر النمو السكاني السريع مشكلة كبيرة تعيق المشاريع الصناعية التي تنفذها الحكومة.
 جـ يعتبر النمو السكاني السريع مشكلة كبيرة تعيق المشاريع التنموية التي تنفذها الحكومة.
 دـ يعتبر النمو السكاني السريع مشكلة كبيرة تعيق المشاريع التنموية التي تشرف عليها الحكومة.
٢. أن الألوان كي يصبح كل مواطن في هذا البلد عاملاً فعالاً في مجالات العمل والإنتاج.

- Time has come for all citizen in this country to become an effective worker in the fields of work and production.
- Time has come for every citizen in this country to become an effect worker in the fields of work and production.
- Time has come for every citizen in this country to become an effective worker in the fields of work and production.
- Time has came for every citizen in this country to become an affective worker in the fields of work and production.

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

- The building will be completed by the end of the year.
- It is your responsibility to protect the environment.

(meant)
(supposed)

Answer the following questions:

- Why is burning the ship an extreme but logical decision ?
- What does the buffalo delay suggest about travel during that period ?

Write an Essay of about (180) words of the following: "Online learning"



Unit **11** | Healthy Choices, Healthy Life

Learning Outcomes

Reading

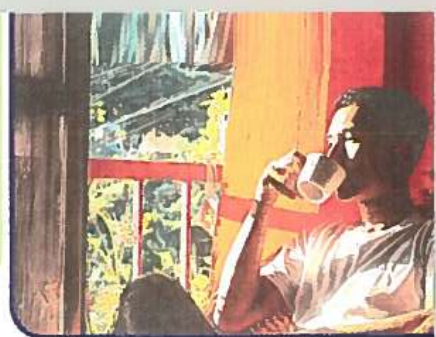
language

Listening

Writing

Speaking

- Skim and scan the text to locate four essential steps for maintaining oral health and two risks of ignoring it.
- Scan for key details to identify three physiological benefits of hydration for the blood, joints, and kidneys.
- Use "used to" and "would" to express something happened in the past.
- Identify the purpose of five pieces of health advice given in a real-life dialog.
- Summarize the core message of "The Power of Positive Thinking" in an audio track.
- Draft a 180-word health advice article titled «How to Reach Your Goals».
- Incorporate at least five target vocabulary words into a coherent paragraph about daily wellness.
- Summarize how a positive mental attitude affects physical health in a 2-minute class presentation.



Key Vocabulary

essential (adj)	أساسي	important (adj)	مهم	sleepy (adj)	نعسان
ignore (v)	يتجاهل	stiff (adj)	متصلب / متيبس	dentist (n)	طبيب أسنان
proactive (adj)	استباقي / مبادر	wash out (v)	يفسل	bleed (v)	ينزف
gums (n)	لثة	confused (adj)	مرتبك / مختار	pain (n)	ألم
cavities (n)	تسوس الأسنان	kidneys (n)	كليتان	severe (adj)	شديد / حاد
floss (n)	خيوط الأسنان	sweat (n)	عرق	brush (n/v)	فرشاة / يفرش الأسنان
flossing (n)	استخدام خيوط الأسنان	joints (n)	مفاصل	appointment (n)	موعد

Main Vocabulary

remove (v)	يزيل	benefits (n)	فوائد	reduce (v)	يقلل
healthy (adj)	صحي	preventative (adj)	وقائي	pieces (n)	قطع
toothpaste (n)	معجون الأسنان	slippery (adj)	منزلق	prevent (v)	يمنع
fluoride (n)	فلورايد (مادة لمنع التسوس)	cost (n/v)	يكلف / تكلفة	risks (n)	مخاطر
expert (n)	خبير	value (n/v)	قيمة / يقيم	stomach (n)	معدة
brushing (n)	تنظيف الأسنان	thread (n/v)	خيوط / يخيوط	exercise (n/v)	يتدرب / تدريب
check-up (n)	فحص طبي	weight (n)	وزن	energetic (adj)	نشط / مليء بالطاقة
sicknesses (n)	أمراض	whole (adj)	كامل	natural (adj)	طبيعي
energy (n)	طاقة	steps (n)	خطوات	temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة
levels (n)	مستويات	dehydrated (adj)	جاف / مصاب بالجفاف	movement (n)	حركة
swollen (adj)	منتفخ / متورم	dental (adj)	متعلق بالأسنان	surround (v)	يحيط
expert (n)	خبير	necessary (adj)	ضروري	rules (n)	قواعد
concentration (n)	تركيز	germs (n)	جراثيم / ميكروبات	maintain (v)	يحافظ على
serious (adj)	خطير	properly (adv)	بشكل صحيح	tissue (n)	نسيج

Collocations

change a habit	يغير عادة	make an appointment	يحدد موعداً
brush teeth	ينظف الأسنان بالفرشاة	cause weight gain	يسبب زيادة الوزن
avoid risk	يتجنب المخاطر	take action	يتخذ إجراء
use dental floss	يستخدم خيوط الأسنان	recommend a dental check-up	يوصي بفحص الأسنان
have (feel) pain	يعاني من ألم	maintain a healthy mouth	يحافظ على صحة الفم
start flossing	يبدأ في استخدام خيوط الأسنان	pay attention	يولي اهتماماً / ينتبه
stay healthy	يحافظ على صحته	feel sleepy	يشعر بالنعاس
stay active	يبقى نشيطاً	have a great value	يتمتع بقيمة كبيرة

Expressions & Prepositions

essential for	ضروري له / أساسي له	wait for things to happen	ينتظر حدوث الأمور
brush your teeth with	ينظف أسنانه به	at the end of	في نهاية
necessary for	ضروري له	learn from	يتعلم من
worry about	يقلق بشأن / يهتم به	take care of	يعتني به
suffer from	يعاني من	mixed up	مشوش / مرتبك
benefits of	فوائد	help the kidneys with	يساعد الكلى على
pay for	يدفع ثمن	cool down	يبرد / يهدأ
take out	يخلع / يزيل	preventative steps	إجراءات وقائية
a dental check-up	فحص أسنان دوري	oral health	صحة الفم

Definitions

floss	خيط الأسنان	▶ thread used to clean between your teeth
gums	اللثة	▶ soft tissue in your mouth that surrounds your teeth
cavity	تسوس الأسنان / تجويف	▶ a little hole in your tooth caused by sugar and germs
essential	أساسي / ضروري	▶ absolutely needed; very important
ignore	يتجاهل / تجاهل	▶ fail to pay attention to something
sleepy	نعسان / يشعر بالنعاس	▶ feeling tired and ready to fall asleep
important	مهم	▶ having a great value
stiff	متصلب / جامد	▶ hard to move
wash out	يفسل	▶ clean up
confused	مرتبك / مختار	▶ unsure or mixed up

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
healthy	صحي	well, fit, strong	sick, unhealthy, weak
essential	ضروري / أساسي	necessary, crucial, vital	optional, unnecessary, unimportant
ignore	يتجاهل	neglect, overlook, disregard	notice, heed, attend
swollen	متورم	inflamed, puffy, enlarged	normal, flat, shrunken
concentration	تركيز	focus, attention, mindfulness	distraction, inattention, confusion
prevent	يمنع / يقي	avoid, stop, hinder	cause, allow, trigger
pain	ألم	ache, soreness, discomfort	relief, comfort, ease
active	نشط	energetic, lively, dynamic	inactive, lazy, idle
proactive	استباقي / مبادر	anticipatory, forward-looking, preemptive	passive, inactive
benefits	فوائد / منافع	advantages, gains, perks	drawbacks, disadvantages, harms
necessary	ضروري	essential, required, compulsory	unnecessary, optional, unneeded
severe	شديد / حاد	intense, extreme, harsh	mild, gentle, soft

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
brush	ينظف بالفرشاة / يفرش	brushing	تنظيف الأسنان بالفرشاة	brushable	قابل للتنظيف
ignore	يتجاهل	ignorance	جهل / عدم معرفة	ignorant	جاهل
prevent	يمنع / يقي	prevention	الوقاية / الحماية	preventive	وقائي
reduce	يقلل	reduction	تقليل / تخفيض	reducible	قابل للتقليل
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسين / تطوير	improved / improvable	محسن / قابل للتحسين
change	يغير	change	تغيير / تحول	changeable	قابل للتغيير



Language Notes



Notice the Difference

piece	قطعة	peace	سلام
pain	ألم (قوي)	ache	وجع (أخف ومستمر)
floss	خيوط (للأسنان)	thread	خيوط (بوجه عام)
smile	يبتسم	smell	يشم / رائحة
dentist	طبيب أسنان	dental	متعلق بالأسنان
necessary	ضروري	necessity	ضرورة
ignore	يتجاهل (لا يهتم)	deny	ينكر (يرفض الاعتراف)
proactive	مبادر	productive	منتج
temperature	درجة الحرارة	temper	المزاج
stick	عصا	stuck	عالق
gum	لبان / صمغ / يلصق	gums	اللثة
tissue	منديل	issue	مشكلة
fail	يفشل	feel	يشعر
sweet	حلو	sweat	عرق

confuse, confused, confusing & confusion

confuse (v)	يربك	► This question confuses me.
confused (adj)	مربك / محتار	► I am confused about the lesson.
confusing (adj)	مربك / محير	► The instructions are confusing .
confusion (n)	ارتباك	► There is a lot of confusion in the class.

concentrate, concentrated & concentration

concentrate (v)	يركز	► Try to concentrate on your work.
concentrated (adj)	مركّز / مكثف	► The discussion was very concentrated on the problem.
concentration (n)	تركيز	► This job needs a lot of concentration .

"Oral Health "



Why do you think dental floss is as important as a toothbrush?

A healthy mouth is **essential** ⁽¹⁾ for your whole body, not just for a beautiful smile. To keep your mouth healthy, you must brush your teeth twice a day with fluoride **toothpaste** ⁽²⁾.

You mustn't forget to use **dental floss** ⁽³⁾ daily. Many students think brushing is enough, but **flossing** ⁽⁴⁾ is **necessary** ⁽⁵⁾ for taking out small pieces of food your brush can't reach, especially between your teeth. Years ago, people often **ignored** ⁽⁶⁾ their teeth, only seeing a dentist when they had **terrible pain** ⁽⁷⁾. Today, we have to be **proactive** ⁽⁸⁾. **Dentists** ⁽⁹⁾ say everyone has to visit them for a **check-up** ⁽¹⁰⁾ at least every six months. If your gums are **bleeding**, ⁽¹¹⁾ you need to make an **appointment** ⁽¹²⁾



quickly; you don't have to wait until the pain is severe. I learned this from my own problem. When I was younger, I rarely used floss. I was lucky, so I didn't have to worry about **cavities** ⁽¹³⁾, but my **gums** ⁽¹⁴⁾ became red and swollen. My dentist told me I had to completely change my habit. I had to start flossing every day. I needn't have **worried about** ⁽¹⁵⁾ the cost, as my school helped pay for the plan. Now I know that a healthy mouth helps prevent other **sicknesses**, ⁽¹⁶⁾ like heart problems. You mustn't ignore these simple steps. Eating less sugar is also most **important** ⁽¹⁷⁾. It helps the body stay healthy and **active** ⁽¹⁸⁾. Too much sugar can cause weight gain and tooth problems. Reducing sugar improves **concentration** ⁽¹⁹⁾ and **energy levels** ⁽²⁰⁾. It also helps prevent **serious** ⁽²¹⁾ health problems in the future.

- (١) أساسي
- (٢) معجون الأسنان
- (٣) خيط الأسنان
- (٤) استخدام خيط الأسنان
- (٥) ضروري
- (٦) تجاهلوا
- (٧) ألم
- (٨) استباقيين
- (٩) أطباء الأسنان
- (١٠) فحص
- (١١) نزيف
- (١٢) موعد
- (١٣) تسوس الأسنان
- (١٤) اللثة
- (١٥) القلق بشأن
- (١٦) أمراض
- (١٧) مهم
- (١٨) نشيط
- (١٩) تركيز
- (٢٠) مستويات الطاقة
- (٢١) خطير



Listening



Bassem
Leen

I feel so **sleepy** ⁽¹⁾ and tired. I need something fast to feel better now! Drink water, Bassem! You are probably just a little **dehydrated** ⁽²⁾. Water is the most **important** ⁽³⁾ thing for your body.

Bassem
Leen

Why does water give me so much energy? Because it helps your **blood** ⁽⁴⁾ move food and oxygen to all your body parts. It also keeps your body from getting too hot – it **cools you down** ⁽⁵⁾ when you sweat!

Bassem
Leen

Good point. My body also feels **stiff** ⁽⁶⁾ when I move. Water makes your **joints** ⁽⁷⁾ **slippery** ⁽⁸⁾, like oil, so you can move easily. It also helps your brain think clearly so you don't feel **confused** ⁽⁹⁾.

Bassem
Leen

That's great! And it helps me go to the bathroom too, right? Yes! It helps your **stomach** ⁽¹⁰⁾ **break down** ⁽¹¹⁾ food. And your **kidneys** ⁽¹²⁾ need water to **wash out** ⁽¹³⁾ bad things **toxins** ⁽¹⁴⁾ and clean your system.

Bassem

Wow. It does so much! I will make sure to drink water all the time now.

- (١) نعسان
- (٢) مصاب بالجفاف
- (٣) هام
- (٤) دم
- (٥) يخفف / يبرد
- (٦) متعب / متعب
- (٧) المفاصل
- (٨) زلق / أملس
- (٩) مشوش / متعب
- (١٠) المعدة
- (١١) يهضم
- (١٢) الكلى
- (١٣) يتخلص من / يطرد
- (١٤) سموم



Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

1. A healthy mouth is for your whole body, not just for a beautiful smile. S3
 a. essential b. risky c. unnecessary d. ordinary
2. You mustn't forget to use dental daily. S3
 a. dress b. floss c. grass d. loss
3. If your are bleeding, you need to make an appointment quickly.
 a. gems b. gums c. germs d. generations
4. Never ignore pain in your teeth or unusual gum signs.
 a. caring b. misunderstanding c. bleeding d. inviting
5. It is important to eat a balanced diet and sleep
 a. uselessly b. carelessly c. poverty d. properly
6. I felt very during class because I stayed up late.
 a. connected b. healthy c. fit d. sleepy
7. Visiting the regularly is necessary to prevent cavities and disease.
 a. dentist b. mechanic c. architect d. geographer
8. Being about health helps prevent serious problems in the future.
 a. hopeless b. inactive c. proactive d. native
9. I was by the doctor's instructions about taking my medicine.
 a. confusing b. confused c. missed d. lost
10. He felt sharp in his back after lifting heavy boxes yesterday.
 a. pain b. reign c. ruin d. destruction
11. Eating too many sweets can easily cause in your teeth.
 a. power b. strength c. pollution d. cavities
12. daily removes food stuck between teeth and prevents cavities.
 a. Sleeping b. Running c. Flossing d. Curving
13. Water makes your slippery so you can move easily. S3
 a. joints b. points c. tasks d. hair
14. Using floss every day helps prevent cavities and gum problems.
 a. cooperative b. mental c. dental d. fictional
15. I scheduled a/an with the dentist for next Wednesday morning.
 a. meeting b. appointment c. interview d. assignment
16. High sugar in blood can cause serious health issues.
 a. levels b. layers c. positions d. ranks
17. Physical is essential for maintaining strong muscles and joints.
 a. monuments b. moments c. movement d. silence
18. She experienced headache and nausea after climbing the high hill.
 a. severe b. solid c. physical d. wooden
19. When you exercise, water cools you down when you S3
 a. sleep b. sweat c. sweet d. steer
20. Your need water to wash out bad things. S3
 a. feet b. kidneys c. lungs d. ears

21. Always your mouth after eating sugary or sticky foods.
 a. catch with b. get up c. stay up d. wash out
22. is a soft thread used to clean between your teeth.
 a. Gum b. Floss c. cavity d. Brush
23. are the soft tissues in your mouth that surround your teeth.
 a. Gums b. Floss c. Lungs d. Kidneys
24. is a little hole in your tooth caused by sugar and germs.
 a. Sweat b. Pain c. Floss d. Cavity



Exercise Ph

Main Vocabulary

25. You should unhealthy snacks from your daily diet to feel better.
 a. move b. remove c. reunite d. mix
26. Good sleep improves and memory during the day.
 a. confusion b. concentration c. fiction d. population
27. The bathroom floor was after someone spilled water.
 a. stormy b. foggy c. slippery d. sleepy
28. Exercise has many for physical and mental health.
 a. tasks b. tricks c. conservations d. benefits
29. Washing hands removes that cause infections.
 a. gums b. genes c. games d. germs
30. care saves money and avoids serious medical problems.
 a. Preventative b. Disrespected c. Misunderstanding d. Native
31. Athletes feel tired when they become during exercise.
 a. wet b. hydrated c. dehydrated d. moist
32. carries oxygen and nutrients throughout the body.
 a. Water b. Air c. Flood d. Blood
33. It is important to good hygiene every day.
 a. stress b. maintain c. feel d. risk
34. His gums became because he stopped brushing properly.
 a. swollen b. polite c. gentle d. comfortable
35. Body rises slightly when someone has an infection.
 a. care b. muscles c. pulse d. temperature
36. Breakfast gives the body to start the day actively.
 a. urgency b. nationality c. poverty d. energy
37. Doctors drinking water regularly to avoid dehydration.
 a. recommend b. avoid c. respect d. remind
38. Ignoring dental pain can lead to health complications.
 a. gentle b. respected c. serious d. hopeful
39. protects teeth by strengthening enamel and preventing cavities.
 a. Chloride b. Magnesium c. Ethanol d. Fluoride
40. People should their health more than temporary pleasures.
 a. minimize b. value c. realize d. celebrate

41. Good hygiene helps prevent caused by bacteria and viruses.
 a. sicknesses b. businesses c. differences d. facts
42. Maintaining a healthy reduces stress on the body.
 a. night b. fight c. weight d. wait
43. She feels after eating healthy food and sleeping well.
 a. exhausted b. energetic c. tired d. tiring
44. Dental treatment can a lot if problems are ignored too long.
 a. cost b. coast c. value d. boost
45. remedies are sometimes helpful but not always enough.
 a. Coastal b. Fictional c. Natural d. Nature
46. Smoking increases health and causes serious diseases over time.
 a. risks b. ignorance c. masks d. conflicts
47. Using fluoride helps keep teeth clean and strong every.
 a. minral b. device c. machine d. toothpaste
48. Regular exercise can many health problems.
 a. blame b. pretend c. invest d. prevent
49. Doctors advise people to sugar intake to protect their teeth.
 a. increase b. reduce c. value d. develop
50. Damaged needs time and care to heal.
 a. issue b. tissue c. floss d. disease
51. The stomach helps break food so the body can absorb nutrients easily.
 a. down b. out c. through d. into
52. Drinking enough water is part of a lifestyle .
 a. careless b. healthy c. stressful d. lazy
53. Getting enough sleep helps students feel more during the day.
 a. energetic b. bored c. exhausted d. careless



Exercise 04

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

54. I need to an appointment with the dentist next Monday morning.
 a. do b. make c. feel d. give
55. Eating too much junk food can weight gain and health problems.
 a. win b. cause c. earn d. have
56. Wearing a helmet while cycling helps risk of serious head injuries.
 a. avoid b. carry c. concentrate d. focus
57. Starting flossing daily is important to cavities and gum disease.
 a. move b. float c. make d. prevent
58. Eating balanced meals, exercising, and sleeping well helps you healthy.
 a. fail b. have c. remind d. stay
59. Brushing, flossing, and regular dentist visits a healthy mouth.
 a. discourage b. maintain c. take d. do
60. Exercise and healthy eating a great value for long-term health.
 a. enhance b. remain c. have d. feel

61. You should action immediately if you notice unusual pain or swelling.

- a. follow b. take c. face d. exit

62. Success comes from hard work, not just waiting things to happen.

- a. on b. with c. for d. by

63. Don't worry small problems; focus on solving them calmly instead.

- a. about b. with c. in d. by

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

64. "People must not ignore their mental health." The meaning of ignore is

- a. forget b. neglect c. care d. obey e. include

R4

65. "Eating healthy food helps maintain good nutrition." The meaning of nutrition is

- a. proper diet b. healthy eating c. illness d. starvation e. hunger

R4

66. "Regular exercise helps people stay fit." The opposite of fit is

- a. healthy b. strong c. weak d. tired e. active

R4

67. Eating fruits daily helps you stay healthy. The synonym of the underlined word "healthy" is

- a. fit b. weak c. strong d. separate e. terrible

68. Water is essential for human life. The synonym of the underlined word "essential" is

- a. secret b. unnecessary c. useless d. important e. vital

69. Some students ignore their homework and fail exams. The synonym of the underlined word "ignore" is

- a. overlook b. observe c. respect d. neglect e. lose

70. He suffered from severe pain after the surgery. The antonym of the underlined word "severe" is

- a. mild b. slight c. strong d. serious e. linked

71. Sleep is necessary for good health. The antonym of the underlined word "necessary" is

- a. required b. optional c. unnecessary d. essential e. vital

72. She is very active at school activities. The antonym of the underlined word "active" is

- a. lazy b. passive c. lively d. busy e. energetic

73. Regular exercise can prevent many diseases. The synonym of the underlined word "prevent" is

- a. allow b. cause c. encourage d. stop e. block

74. Good sleep improves concentration during studying. The synonym of the underlined word "concentration" is

- a. boredom b. distraction c. attention d. focus e. weakness

75. His face became swollen after the accident. The antonym of the underlined word "swollen" is

- a. normal b. ignorant c. disrespected d. flatted e. difficult

Past habits

عادات في الماضي

نستخدم **used to** بمعنى اعتاد على التعبير عن مواقف أو عادات منتظمة في الماضي أو للتعبير عن فعل شيء في الماضي وتم التوقف عنه في الحاضر.

Affirmation الإثبات

(used to) + inf.

- ⇒ I **used to rent** a car, but now I **don't**.
- ⇒ Jana **used to play** football when she was young.

Negation النفي

(didn't use to) + inf.

- ⇒ I **used to** play with my friends. (Negation)
- = I **didn't use to** play with my friends.
- = I **never used to** play with my friends.
- = I **used not to** play with my friends.

Question السؤال

(Did) + Sub + use to + inf. ?

- ⇒ Did she **use to** cry a lot when she was a baby?

Passive الجنبى للمجهول

مفعول + used to + be + P.P

- ⇒ I **used to study** English late at night. (active)
- ⇒ English **used to be studied** late at night. (passive)

اعتاد على
Used to

① لاحظ فعل الجملة الثانية: جملة التعقيب بعد **but now** تكون مضارع وعكس الجملة الأساسية.

ويستخدم **do - does** إذا كان فعل الجملة. أما إذا كان **V. be** نستخدم **am - is - are**.

- ★ She **used to get** up early, but now she **doesn't**.
- ★ I **used to play** with children but now I **don't**.
- ★ She **used to be** active, but now she **isn't**.
- ★ I **used to be** rich but now I **am** poor.

- في المثال الأول والثاني استخدمنا (**don't - doesn't**) نظراً لوجود فعل أصل في الجملة الأولى.
- في المثال الثالث والرابع استخدمنا (**am - isn't**) في الجملة الثانية نظراً لوجود (**be**) في الجملة الأولى.

② نستخدم **used to** للتعبير عن عادة أو موقف في الماضي ولا يحدث الآن.

- ★ Mai **used to get** up early. This means
- = Mai **no longer gets** up early.
- = Mai **doesn't get up** early anymore.
- = It **was Mai's habit to get up** early.
- = Mai **always got** up early but now she **doesn't**.



٣ تستخدم **no longer** بدلاً من **used to** ويأتي بعدها الفعل في المضارع البسيط وتستخدم **any longer / anymore** بدلاً من **used to** مع نفي الفعل في المضارع البسيط وتأتي في نهاية الجملة:

- ★ Toka **used to live** in Cairo.
- ★ Toka **no longer lives** in Cairo.
- ★ Toka **doesn't live** in Cairo **anymore**.

(no longer) (any more)

٤ لاحظ الاختلاف بين **used to / would**

would + inf.	used to + inf.	
تستخدم للتعبير عن عادات وأحداث متكررة	تستخدم للتعبير عن عادات وأحداث متكررة	للتعبير عن عادات وأحداث متكررة
▶ When I was young, I would play tennis. ✓	▶ When I was young, I used to play tennis. ✓	في السؤال
لا تستخدم في السؤال عندما تدل على عادة	يمكن استخدامها في السؤال	
▶ Would she get up early? ✗	▶ Did she use to get up early? ✓	
لا يفضل استخدامها في النفي عندما تدل على عادة	يمكن استخدامها في النفي	في النفي
▶ I wouldn't smoke. ✗	didn't use to ✓ never used to ✓ used not to ✓	
	▶ He didn't use to get up early. ✓	
لا تأتي في المجهول عندما تدل على عادة	تأتي في المبني للمجهول used to be + P.P	في المجهول
▶ The room would be cleaned. ✗	▶ The building used to be owned by a different company.	
لا تستخدم مع أفعال الحالة	يمكن استخدامها مع أفعال الحالة	مع أفعال الحالة be / have / love / hate..
▶ I would have a sports car. ✗	▶ I used to have a sports car. ✓	
▶ She would be fat. ✗	▶ She used to be fat. ✓	
لا تستخدم مع موقف دائم / حالة ثابتة	تستخدم مع موقف دائم / حالة ثابتة	للتعبير عن موقف دائم / حالة ثابتة في الماضي
▶ He would work as a fisherman. ✗	▶ He used to work as a fisherman. ✓	
▶ I would live in a flat when I was young. ✗	▶ I used to live in a flat when I was young. ✓	
▶ I would live in Cairo but I moved to Assiut last year. ✗	▶ I used to live in Cairo but I moved to Assiut last year. ✓	
لا تستخدم إلا مع وجود إشارة زمنية في الماضي	تستخدم في وجود إشارة زمنية أو عدم وجودها	مع إطار زمني أو إشارة إلى الماضي
▶ I would play football in the garden. ✗	▶ I used to play football in the garden. ✓	
▶ When I was young, I would play in the garden. ✓	▶ When I was young I used to play football in the garden. ✓	
تأتي قبل ظروف التكرار فقط	تأتي قبل أو بعد ظروف التكرار	مع ظروف التكرار always / often / never...
▶ When I was young, I would always practise sport. ✓	▶ When I was young, I always used to practise sport. ✓	
▶ When I was young, I always would practise sport. ✗	▶ When I was young, I used always to practise sport. ✓	
لا تستخدم مع العادات المنتظمة	تستخدم مع العادات المنتظمة	مع العادات الهامة والمنتظمة والسلوك البارز في الماضي
▶ Omar would play a lot of football. ✗	▶ Omar used to play a lot of football. ✓	
▶ He would smoke. ✗	▶ He used to smoke. ✓	

٥ لاحظ يمكننا استخدام (was - were - got - became - grew) used to + ing للتعبير عن عادة كانت مألوفة في الماضي

used to + inf. = was / were + in the habit of
got used to + ing used to + ing

- ★ He **used to travel** up and down the country.
- = He **was used to travelling** up and down the country.
- = He **got used to travelling** up and down the country.
- = He **was in the habit of travelling** up and down the country.

٦ نستخدم للتعبير عن أشياء كانت حقيقية في الماضي ولم تعد موجودة الآن :

There used to be ... / There didn't use to be ...

- ★ **There used to be** a cinema in our street. Now it is a big restaurant.
- ★ **There didn't use to be** an airport in Aswan in 1900.

٧ لا تستخدم التعبيرات الزمنية مع العادة لأن العادة تتكرر حدوثها فترة زمنية طويلة

- ★ She **used to visit** her relatives **last week**. (X)
- ★ She **visited** her relatives **last week**. (✓)

Enrich your language

٨ نستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن عادة في المضارع :

am / is / are + in the habit of + ing
+ used to + ing. =
get used to + ing

- ★ I **am used to playing** football with my friends.
- = I **get used to playing** football with my friends.
- = I **am in the habit of playing** football with my friends.

٩ ولكن لاحظ أن **is - are used to** تأتي بمعنى (يستخدم لكي) ويليه **inf.** :

is + used for + ing
are + used to + inf.

- ★ The saw **is used to cut** wood. = The saw **is used for cutting** wood.

١٠ لاحظ : استخدام اسم أو ضمير بعد **be used to**

- ★ I am (**get**) used to **hot weather**. → اسم
- ★ I am used to **her**. → ضمير

انتظروا

GIANTS

كتاب مراجعة العملاقة
للفصل الثاني الثانوي

GIANTS
العملاقة



Exercise 9h Language Level 1

1. In the past, Ahmed skip breakfast every morning. S3
 a. would be b. used to c. is used to d. used
2. People to prioritize sleep, but now they understand its importance. S3
 a. didn't used b. wouldn't c. don't used d. use
3. When Sara felt stressed, she eat too much fast food. S3
 a. would be b. use c. would d. used
4. There be a limit on sugary drinks in his diet. S3
 a. didn't use to b. wouldn't c. wouldn't have d. didn't used to
5. We use would to talk about..... S3
 a. past habits and repeated actions b. past states and situations
 c. present routines d. future plans
6. When I was a child, I love cartoons. شين القناطر ٢٠٢٤
 a. used b. used to c. would d. wouldn't
7. Ramadan Sobhy play for El Ahli; but now he plays for Pyramids. أسيوط ٢٠٢٤
 a. is used to b. no longer c. got used to d. used to
8. Our school have more equipment than they بني سويف ٢٠٢٤
 a. used b. used to c. uses d. was used to
9. I simple computer games when I was a child. ديروط ٢٠٢٤
 a. use to play b. didn't used to play c. used to play d. am used to playing
10. When I was young, I swimming with my friends. ابو كبير ٢٠٢٣
 a. am used to go b. goes c. go d. would go
11. Reham.....play tennis when she was young. It was a past habit. اسوان ٢٠٢٤ القوصية ٢٠٢٤ ههيا ٢٠٢٣
 a. doesn't use b. used to c. use d. was used to
12. He used to be a driver, but now he شين القناطر ٢٠٢٤ الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤ بركة السبع ٢٠٢٤
 a. hasn't b. doesn't c. is d. isn't
13. He no longer smokes as he طوخ ٢٠٢٤ E3M
 a. used b. was used c. used to d. is used to
14. She no longer feels attracted to video games as she الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤
 a. used to do b. used to be c. is used to d. used to have
15. I used to catch fish when I was young, but now I don't E3M
 a. some more b. anymore c. lot more d. no more
16. They used to be fast but now they الخارجة ٢٠٢٤
 a. don't b. are c. didn't d. aren't
17. She used to cook her dinner at home but she now. المنيا ٢٠٢٤
 a. isn't b. hasn't c. doesn't d. wasn't
18. My father didn't use to go to work by car, but now he شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٤
 a. does b. isn't c. doesn't d. is
19. He didn't use to be a heavy smoker, but now he القوصية ٢٠٢٤ المنيا ٢٠٢٤ شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤
 a. did b. does c. is d. was
20. My brother to be active, but now he is. الحسينية ٢٠٢٤
 a. used b. uses c. using d. didn't use



Exercise 04 Language Level 2

21. I a lot, but now I do. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
 a. used to read b. am reading c. didn't use to read d. read
22. Mr. Hassan his clothes from malls, but now he buys them online. أولاد صقر ٢٠٢٤
 a. would buy b. didn't use to buy c. uses to buy d. is used to buy
23. He used to go to the cinema, but now he goes to the cinema. العياط ٢٠٢٤
 a. any longer b. no longer c. no more d. longer
24. Ali to smoke cigarettes. He enjoys good health. ببا ٢٠٢٤
 a. never used b. doesn't use c. used d. didn't used
25. in a bank when he was younger? الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤ ههيا ٢٠٢٤
 a. Is he working b. Did he use to work c. Has he worked d. Is he used to working
26. My father go to work by car, but now he does. دكرنس ٢٠٢٤ طوخ ٢٠٢٤ المراغة ٢٠٢٤
 a. used to b. is used to c. isn't used to d. didn't use to
27. When we were young, mum accompany us to bed and read us a story. ساقلنة ٢٠٢٤
 a. didn't used to b. wasn't used to c. would d. was used to
28. My father no longer smokes as he البوqr قاصص ٢٠٢٤
 a. used to b. used to have c. is used to d. used to be
29. It was my habit to do all the housework. I do so.
 a. often b. still c. sometimes d. no longer
30. Learning Spanish is a bit difficult. I'm sure that I'll soon it. الشروق ٢٠٢٤
 a. used to b. didn't use to c. never used d. get used to
31. Many people come to the beach every weekend but it's much quieter now. الشروق ٢٠٢٤
 a. would b. are using to c. use to d. would be
32. Ali to live in a big city; he wanted to enjoy living in the village. LM السويس ٢٠٢٤
 a. is used b. gets used c. didn't use d. used
33. It's my habit. I it. قويسنا ٢٠٢٤
 a. used to b. am used to c. am using d. used
34. Fortunately, I'm not used to a large number of students. طامية ٢٠٢٤
 a. teaching b. teach c. taught d. teaches
35. In the past, people go as far away on holiday as they do today. قلين ٢٠٢٤
 a. weren't used to b. didn't use to c. didn't get used to d. aren't used to
36. She no longer glasses, but she used to do that when she was young. طامية ٢٠٢٤
 a. wore b. wear c. is wearing d. wears
37. He used to send letters to his friends but now he e-mails. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
 a. was sending b. used to send c. sends d. is sending
38. How do you think our ancestors without electricity 100 years ago? كفر الزيات ٢٠٢٣
 a. used to living b. were used to living c. are used to live d. were used to live
39. She in Aswan anymore. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
 a. never live b. doesn't live c. didn't live d. used to live
40. When we were young, our mother delicious meals every day. شربين ٢٠٢٣
 a. would cook b. uses to cook c. is used to cooking d. got used to cook

41. Faten: come on time? Basim: Yes, he was always punctual.
 a. Is Adel used to b. Will Adel c. Did Adel use to d. Does Adel
 42. Sherif by the Nile bank every morning; it is his favourite habit.
 a. isn't used to walking b. like walking c. used to walk d. is used to walking
 43. I life in Cairo; I find it more familiar than before.
 a. get used to b. didn't use to c. used to d. am not used to
 44. Hatim newspapers; he likes to get the latest news online instead.
 a. never read b. used to read c. is used to reading d. isn't used to reading
 45. My grandfather up early. He was always active.
 a. usually gets b. never got c. used to get d. is used to getting
 46. When I was in primary school, I to school on foot.
 a. used to going b. would go c. use to go d. would be going
 47. She jogging every morning to stay healthy.
 a. used to b. uses to c. is used to d. was used



Exercise on Language Level 3

48. There a lot of tourists visiting this place a long time ago.
 a. was b. are c. used to be d. would be
 49. Did he to the cold weather when he was in Scotland?
 a. use b. uses c. used d. get used
 50. My father hard work. He is never lazy.
 a. used to b. doesn't use to c. didn't use to d. is used to
 51. My father have a big car when he was young.
 a. used to b. would c. gets used to d. is used to
 52. In the past, the sea as warm as it is today; matters are getting worse nowadays.
 a. wouldn't be b. used to being c. didn't use to be d. doesn't use to be
 53. Did your friend playing the drum?
 a. get used to b. is used to c. use to d. used to
 54. When I was a student, I have long and fair hair. Now, I am almost bald.
 a. would b. wouldn't c. use to d. used to
 55. My grandfather lessons easily when he was a child.
 a. had understood b. used to understand c. would understand d. was understanding
 56. Plastic is used to safe toys for children.
 a. make b. makes c. making d. be made
 57. A : come on time? B : Yes, he is always punctual.
 a. Is Adel used to b. Did Adel use to c. Does Adel d. Did Adel
 58. I used to like salted fish. This means I
 a. never liked salted fish b. don't like salted fish anymore
 c. didn't like salted fish at all d. still like salted fish
 59. In some countries, the wind is used to electricity.
 a. generates b. generating c. generate d. generated

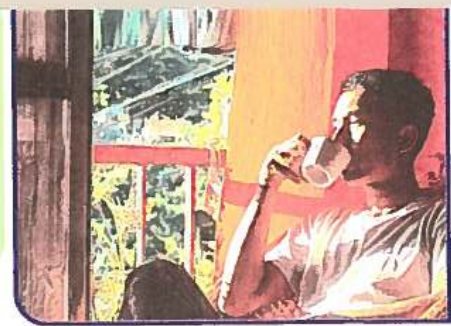
60. My friend used to do naughty things. This means that
 a. he no longer did
 b. he doesn't do them no longer
 c. he no longer does
 d. b & c
61. Mustafa a bike when he was young.
 a. used to have
 b. would have
 c. used to having
 d. would always have
62. In the past, my grandfather a lot of cattle and sheep on his farm.
 a. use to have
 b. used to have
 c. would have
 d. b & c
63. Mum a hand with the housework.
 a. used to given
 b. uses to give
 c. used to giving
 d. used to be given
64. My father a Mercedes, but now he has a Honda.
 a. has
 b. would have
 c. used to have
 d. used to having
65. The noise doesn't bother me. I it.
 a. am not used to
 b. am used to
 c. used
 d. didn't use to
66. This machine is used to ice cream cone in a healthy way.
 a. make
 b. be made
 c. making
 d. being made
67. The European cold weather.
 a. has used to
 b. are used to
 c. used to
 d. didn't use to
68. In the past, Latin studied to join top faculties in Europe.
 a. used to be
 b. used to being
 c. was used to
 d. used to
69. Tamer up early, isn't he?
 a. never used to get
 b. is used to getting
 c. didn't use to get
 d. isn't used to getting
70. This company a profit last year.
 a. used to make
 b. would make
 c. made
 d. makes
71. She was of sleeping in class.
 a. get used to
 b. the habit
 c. used to
 d. in the habit
72. She getting up early every Friday.
 a. is used to
 b. used to
 c. is use to
 d. get used to

2) Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- I no longer wake up late on school days. (used to) S3 R 4
- She used to hate spicy food, but now she eats it. (got) S3 R 4
- Soha no longer sleeps late. (used to)
- In the past, I used not to drink enough water. (use) S3
- Ahmed would often go for a walk after dinner. (would) S3
- Sara used to eat fast food, but she doesn't anymore. (no longer) S3
- When I felt tired, I would take a short nap. (used) S3
- Sara didn't use to drink water regularly. (used) S3
- Ahmed used to skip breakfast every morning. (anymore) S3
- I don't play football after school anymore. (used to)
- He doesn't drink fizzy drinks now. (used to)
- When Ahmed felt stressed, he took a short break. (would)
- She used to be shy, but now she speaks confidently. (no longer)
- We don't watch TV together in the evening now. (used to)

Healthy Choices, Healthy Life

- 3 Healthy Daily Habits
4 The Power of Positive Thinking
5 A Health Advice Article



Key Vocabulary

mental attitude ⁽ⁿ⁾ الموقف الذهني / العقلية	recover ^(v) يتعافى	daily routine ⁽ⁿ⁾ الروتين اليومي
disease ⁽ⁿ⁾ مرض	surgery ⁽ⁿ⁾ جراحة	support ^(v/n) يدعم / دعم / مساندة
lifespan ⁽ⁿ⁾ العمر المتوقع / فترة الحياة	mind ^(v/n) العقل / الذهن / يمانع	function ⁽ⁿ⁾ وظيفة / أداء
immune system ⁽ⁿ⁾ جهاز المناعة	gratitude ⁽ⁿ⁾ الامتنان	substance ⁽ⁿ⁾ مادة
energetic ^(adj) نشيط / مليء بالطاقة	infection ⁽ⁿ⁾ عدوى	self-talk ⁽ⁿ⁾ الحوار الداخلي / الكلام مع النفس
optimist ⁽ⁿ⁾ متفائل	stress ⁽ⁿ⁾ ضغط نفسي / توتر	negative ^(adj) سلبي
power ⁽ⁿ⁾ طاقة	high stress ⁽ⁿ⁾ توتر شديد	positive thinking ⁽ⁿ⁾ التفكير الإيجابي

Main Vocabulary

feeling ⁽ⁿ⁾ شعور	sign ^(v/n) علامة / إشارة / يوقع	fight ^(v/n) يقاوم / يقاتل
research ⁽ⁿ⁾ بحث	stressful ^(adj) مجهد / شاق	against ^(prep) ضد / معارض لـ
positively ^(adv) بشكل إيجابي	physical ⁽ⁿ⁾ بدني	pressure ⁽ⁿ⁾ ضغط
worry ^(v/n) قلق / يقلق	practice ⁽ⁿ⁾ ممارسة / تدريب	view ⁽ⁿ⁾ رؤية / وجهة نظر
seriously ^(adv) بجدية	sunny ^(adj) مشمس	experience ^(v/n) تجربة / خبرة / يجرب
affect ^(v) يؤثر	change ^(v/n) تغيير / يغير	remind ^(v) يذكر
valuable ⁽ⁿ⁾ قيم / ثمين	connected ^(adj) متصل / مرتبط	goal ⁽ⁿ⁾ هدف
mood ⁽ⁿ⁾ مزاج	obligations ⁽ⁿ⁾ التزامات	article ⁽ⁿ⁾ مقال
weaken ^(v) يضعف	focus ^(v/n) تركيز / يركز	repeat ^(v) يكرر / تكرر
illness ⁽ⁿ⁾ مرض	helpful ^(adj) مفيد / مساعد	toxins ⁽ⁿ⁾ سموم
thoughts ⁽ⁿ⁾ أفكار	exercise ⁽ⁿ⁾ تمرين / ممارسة الرياضة	certain ^(adj) محدد / معين / مؤكد
habit ⁽ⁿ⁾ عادة	system ⁽ⁿ⁾ نظام	rule ^(v/n) قاعدة / حكم / يحكم
healthily ^(adv) بشكل صحي	length ⁽ⁿ⁾ طول / مدة	harmful ^(adj) ضار
specific ^(adj) محدد / معين	continue ^(v) يستمر	improve ^(v) يحسن

Collocations

stay connected	يبقى على اتصال	improve life span	يحسن فترة الحياة
affect your health	يؤثر على صحتك	remove harmful toxins	يزيل السموم الضارة
weaken immune system	يضعف جهاز المناعة	have negative thoughts	لديه أفكار سلبية
get sick	يصاب بالمرض / يمرض	take a short rest	يأخذ قسطاً قصيراً من الراحة
have more pain	يشعر بمزيد من الألم	reduce sugar	يقلل السكر
feel tired	يشعر بالتعب	ignore signs of stress	يتجاهل علامات التوتر
learn valuable lessons	يتعلم دروساً قيمة	follow rules	يتبع القوانين
give advice	يعطي نصيحة	practice gratitude	يمارس الامتنان

Expressions & Prepositions

write down	يكتب / يكتب	based on	مبني على
chat with	يتحدث مع / يدرش مع	focus on	يركز على
fight against	يقاوم / يحارب	remove.... from	يزيل... من
cheer yourself on	تشجع نفسك / تحفز نفسك	stay up late	يسهر حتى وقت متأخر

positive view of life	نظرة إيجابية للحياة	good for your mood	مفيد لحالتك المزاجية
signs of stress	علامات التوتر	positive self-talk	حديث إيجابي مع النفس
spend money on	ينفق مالا على	discuss....with	يناقش مع
a limit on sugary drinks	حد لاستهلاك المشروبات السكرية	recover from	يتعافى من

Definitions

mental attitude	الموقف الذهني / الحالة الذهنية	▶ a way of thinking and feeling (an "attitude") connected with the mind and thinking (mental)
stress	التوتر	▶ pressure or worry caused by problems in somebody's life or by having too much to do
lifespan	مدة الحياة / العمر	▶ the length of time that something is likely to live, continue, or function
immune system	جهاز المناعة	▶ the system in your body that produces substances to help it fight against infection and disease

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
positive	إيجابي	optimistic, hopeful, upbeat	negative, pessimistic, gloomy
stress	التوتر	pressure, tension, strain	relaxation, calm, peace
immune	مناعي	defensive, protective, resistant	vulnerable, weak, exposed
health	الصحة	wellness, fitness, well-being	illness, disease, sickness
optimist	شخص متفائل	hopeful person, positive thinker, idealist	pessimist, cynic, doubter
strong	قوي	powerful, solid, tough	weak, fragile, feeble
attitude	موقف / أسلوب	mindset, outlook, perspective	indifference, apathy, negativity
support	يدعم	help, assist, encourage	hinder, oppose, discourage
connected	متربط / متصل	linked, close, bonded	isolated, alone, separated
practice	يمارس	exercise, apply, train	neglect, ignore, abandon
gratitude	الامتنان	thankfulness, appreciation, recognition	ingratitude, unthankfulness, resentment
negative	سلبى	pessimistic, harmful, discouraging	positive, helpful, encouraging

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
recover	recovery	recoverable
infect	infection	infectious
worry	worry	worried / worrying
advise	advice	advisable
focus	focus	focused
support	support	supportive
affect	effect	affected

Notice the Difference

cover	يغطي	recover	يتعافى
chat	يأرشد	cheat	يفش
attitude	موقف / سلوك	gratitude	الامتنان / الشكر
change	يغير / تغيير	challenge	تحدي
mood	مزاج	mode	وضع / نمط
optimist	متفائل	pessimist	متشائم
serious	جاد	series	سلسلة / متتابع
energy	طاقة	energetic	نشط / مليء بالطاقة
sign	علامة	signal	إشارة / إشارة تحذيرية
routine	روتين أو نظام يومي	red tape	الروتين الحكومي
think	يفكر	thought	فكرة / تفكير
infection	عدوى	affection	مودة / محبة
surgeon	جراح	surgery	عملية جراحية
ignore	يتجاهل	ignorant	جاهل / غير مطلع

Reading



"The Power of Positive Thinking"

How might changing your thinking affect your ability to get well when you are sick?

Positive thinking⁽¹⁾ is more than just feeling happy; it is a **mental attitude**⁽²⁾ where you **focus**⁽³⁾ on good and helpful things, even when times are hard.

Research⁽⁴⁾ shows that this kind of thinking is not just good for your mood it can **seriously**⁽⁵⁾ affect your **health**⁽⁶⁾. When you think **positively**⁽⁷⁾, your body has less stress because you worry less. High stress can weaken your **immune system**⁽⁸⁾, making you sick easily. Positive thinking helps keep your immune system strong. Studies show that **optimists**⁽⁹⁾ often have better heart health and a longer **lifespan**⁽¹⁰⁾. They also recover faster from **illness**⁽¹¹⁾ or **surgery**⁽¹²⁾. We all



have negative **thoughts**⁽¹³⁾ sometimes, but we can change this habit. Here are some simple ways to think more positively and live **healthily**⁽¹⁴⁾: Practice Gratitude: Every night, write down three good things that happened that day. They can be small things, like a sunny morning or a nice **chat with**⁽¹⁵⁾ a friend. Use Positive **Self-Talk**⁽¹⁶⁾: Change "I can't do this" to "I can try this." Be your own best friend and cheer yourself on. Stay **Connected**⁽¹⁷⁾: Spend time with people who make you feel happy and **energetic**⁽¹⁸⁾. Good friends **support**⁽¹⁹⁾ your positive **view**⁽²⁰⁾ of life. By practicing these simple ideas, you can use the power of your **mind**⁽²¹⁾ to live a happier and healthier life.

- (١) التفكير الايجابي
- (٢) التوجه الذهني
- (٣) يركز
- (٤) بحث
- (٥) بشكل كبير / بجدية
- (٦) الصحة
- (٧) ايجابية
- (٨) النظام المناعي
- (٩) المتفائلون
- (١٠) متوسط العمر
- (١١) المرض
- (١٢) الجراحة / العملية
- (١٣) الأفكار السلبية
- (١٤) بطريقة صحية
- (١٥) درشة مع
- (١٦) الحديث مع النفس
- (١٧) ابقى على تواصل
- (١٨) نشيط / مليء بالطاقة
- (١٩) يدعمون
- (٢٠) نظرة / رؤية
- (٢١) العقل

Listening

Ahmed

I feel great now! I've changed my **routine** ⁽¹⁾. I used to follow the same routine for years without thinking. I used to **force** ⁽²⁾ myself out of bed and I felt extremely tired. I would often **skip** ⁽³⁾ breakfast every morning. Now, I wake up early and eat well.

Sara

That's fantastic! People didn't use to **prioritize** ⁽⁴⁾ sleep, but now many understand its **importance** ⁽⁵⁾. Some people would say eight hours wasn't necessary, but experts in health and medicine agree that it helps people **recover** ⁽⁶⁾ and makes a big difference.

Ahmed

Exactly!

Sara

Last year, I used to **ignore** ⁽⁷⁾ my health, and I would eat too much fast food. That used to be a bad habit, and it was a big **mistake** ⁽⁸⁾.

Ahmed

We all make mistakes. I used to think I had to be a **gym expert** ⁽⁹⁾, but now I know that simple **movements** ⁽¹⁰⁾ are enough. My doctor would always advise me to drink more water and take vitamins.

Sara

He's right. I used to buy fancy **pills** ⁽¹¹⁾, and they would cost a lot of money, but now I focus on basic habits. I would walk every day and would **stretch** ⁽¹²⁾ in the morning to stay **active** ⁽¹³⁾. I won't forget this routine because it helps me stay active.

Ahmed

Let's keep **encouraging** ⁽¹⁴⁾ each other when things feel difficult.

- (1) روتين / نظام يومي
- (2) يجبر
- (3) يتخطى / يفوت
- (4) يعطي أولوية
- (5) أهمية
- (6) يتعافى
- (7) يتجاهل
- (8) خطأ
- (9) خبير في الجيم
- (10) حركات
- (11) أقراص / حبوب
- (12) يتمدد
- (13) نشيط
- (14) تشجيع



Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

1. When you think positively, your body has less..... because you worry less.
 - a. dress
 - b. stress
 - c. power
 - d. loss
2. A positive mental helps people face challenges in everyday life successfully.
 - a. altitude
 - b. gratitude
 - c. attitude
 - d. candidate
3. Eating too much sugar and junk food can cause serious later.
 - a. diseases
 - b. releases
 - c. infections
 - d. invitations
4. Healthy habits and regular exercise can increase a person's significantly.
 - a. attitude
 - b. identity
 - c. lifestyle
 - d. lifespan
5. Practicing every day improves happiness and mental health in adults.
 - a. disrespect
 - b. dishonesty
 - c. ingratitude
 - d. gratitude
6. Eating fruits and vegetables strengthens the system and prevents infection.
 - a. immune
 - b. mechanic
 - c. architect
 - d. geographer
7. Alcohol is a dangerous that can harm the liver and brain.
 - a. expert
 - b. sentence
 - c. substance
 - d. balance
8. A/ An always looks for the good in every difficult situation faced.
 - a. gloomy
 - b. pessimist
 - c. optimist
 - d. negative
9. I was by the doctor's instructions about taking my medicine.
 - a. confusing
 - b. confused
 - c. missed
 - d. lost
10. Positive helps students feel confident and reduce anxiety before exams.
 - a. self-talk
 - b. selfishness
 - c. severe
 - d. distraction
11. Positive encourages people to solve problems instead of feeling hopeless.
 - a. cheating
 - b. painting
 - c. ranking
 - d. thinking
12. thoughts often make people feel sad, tired, and less motivated.
 - a. Positive
 - b. Creative
 - c. Negative
 - d. Smart

13. Washing hands regularly reduces the chance of spreading in school.
 a. infection b. direction c. connection d. mention
14. The heart's is to pump blood and deliver oxygen to organs.
 a. road b. fact c. function d. fiction
15. The doctor explained that the would take two hours to complete.
 a. injury b. treasury c. cavity d. surgery
16. A healthy daily includes exercise, balanced meals, and enough sleep every day.
 a. tongue b. knees c. red tape d. routine
17. Children feel and happy after a good night's sleep and breakfast.
 a. energetic b. bored c. pessimistic d. upset
18. Friends and family is important for patients during recovery and treatment.
 a. ingratitude b. conflict c. support d. silence
19. Working under high every day can harm mental and physical health.
 a. relaxation b. calmness c. relief d. stress
20. eating and regular exercise can increase a person's lifespan significantly
 a. Negative b. Unnecessary c. Healthy d. Unhealthy
21. When Drinking water and exercising daily give the body energy and.....
 a. inflexibility b. weakness c. tower d. power
22. means the length of time that something is likely to live, continue, or function.
 a. Lifespan b. Routine c. Experience d. Lifestyle
23. is the system in your body that produces substances to help it fight against infection and disease
 a. circulatory system b. digestive system c. nervous system d. immune system
24. is pressure or worry caused by problems in somebody's life or by having too much to do.
 a. Stress b. Courage c. Happiness d. Relief



Exercise 04

Main Vocabulary

25. Thinking helps people manage stress and improve their mental attitude.
 a. negatively b. positively c. carelessly d. angrily
26. Time is..... so spend it on healthy habits and exercise daily.
 a. hopeless b. valuable c. limitless d. disappointing
27. Listening to music can improve your and reduce stress quickly.
 a. certainty b. mode c. mood d. challenge
28. Washing hands often prevents the spread of at school or work.
 a. views b. tricks c. conservations d. illness
29. Drinking water helps remove..... from the body and improves health.
 a. gums b. tissues c. cells d. toxins
30. Positive can reduce stress and improve mental attitude naturally.
 a. thoughts b. droughts c. meals d. diseases
31. Follow a diet plan to improve energy and lose weight safely.
 a. confusing b. hydrated c. specific d. pacific
32. Smoking is..... to the lungs and can cause serious illness.
 a. helpful b. careful c. harmless d. harmful
33. High at work can negatively affect mental and physical health.
 a. enjoyment b. relaxation c. pressure d. harmony

34. A strong immune protects the body from diseases and infections.
 a. track b. system c. stem d. vision
35. Poor nutrition and lack of sleep can the immune system seriously.
 a. weaken b. strengthen c. develop d. improve
36. Staying with friends and family improves mental and emotional health.
 a. contacted b. angry c. isolated d. connected
37. You should take mental seriously to prevent stress-related illnesses.
 a. health b. healthy c. cavity d. pressure
38. Daily like work and study can increase stress if unmanaged.
 a. creation b. operation c. obligations d. information
39. The doctor gave about proper diet, exercise, and regular checkups.
 a. speech b. advice c. device d. review
40. you can use the power of your to live a happier and healthier. SB
 a. skin b. mind c. muscles d. feet
41. Regular exercise is very important for maintaining good overall health.
 a. physical b. critical c. fictional d. fake
42. The factory high-quality furniture for homes and offices every year.
 a. deduces b. fights c. produces d. ruins
43. Eating and exercising regularly improves your body and mind significantly.
 a. healthily b. unhealthily c. carelessly d. angrily
44. I had a strange after drinking cold water too quickly yesterday.
 a. sense b. time c. feeling d. failing
45. She is strong because she trains at the gym every day.
 a. physically b. loudly c. emotionally d. ordinary
46. He himself to study all night even though he was extremely tired and sleepy.
 a. felt b. forced c. made d. had
47. She decided not to breakfast because skipping meals always makes her feel weak.
 a. eat b. have c. skip d. take
48. It is important to your health and rest over unnecessary daily distractions.
 a. prioritize b. damage c. ruin d. spoil
49. The doctor recommended taking only when necessary and focusing on healthy habits instead.
 a. down b. out c. through d. pills
50. Every morning, I my muscles for a few minutes to stay flexible and active.
 a. study b. feed c. stretch d. bruch
51. Her words motivated him to continue working even during very difficult times.
 a. encourag b. encouraging c. encouraged d. encouragment
52. Healthy habits can prevent many problems.
 a. health b. healthy c. unhealthy d. sociable



Exercise PH

Expressions, Prepositions, Derivatives & Language Notes

53. Healthy eating and regular exercise can lifespan significantly.
 a. prove b. improve c. believe d. make
54. It is very important to connected with family and close friends.
 a. do b. stay c. fail d. take
55. Smoking too much every day can seriously your overall health.
 a. affect b. connect c. make d. effect

56. gratitude every day to improve your happiness and overall health.
 a. Make b. Remove c. Practice d. prevent
57. Teachers often advice to help students succeed in their studies.
 a. take b. have c. remind d. give
58. Many people signs of stress until serious problems appear suddenly.
 a. discourage b. ignore c. recognize d. prefer
59. Ignoring injuries can later make you more pain than before.
 a. feed b. fall c. feel d. fail
60. After working for long hours, it is good to a short rest.
 a. follow b. take c. face d. make
61. People who negative thoughts often feel unhappy and stressed.
 a. stay b. lead c. have d. take
62. Having a positive of life makes challenges easier to handle successfully.
 a. review b. view c. interview d. scene
63. It is wise to spend money healthy food rather than junk.
 a. about b. with c. on d. by
64. If you do not wash your hands, you might easily sick.
 a. get b. have c. fall d. come
65. Listening to music every day is good your mood and energy.
 a. about b. with c. on d. for

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

66. Having positive thinking helps you solve problems easily. The synonym of “positive thinking” is
 a. hopeful b. doubtful c. optimistic d. lazy e. angry
67. She always has a positive attitude toward challenges. The antonym of “positive” is.....
 a. happy b. confident c. energetic d. negative e. upset
68. Too much stress can affect your health seriously. The synonym of “stress” is
 a. anxiety b. comfort c. relaxation d. tension e. calm
69. Exercise helps you become physically strong and healthy. The antonym of “strong” is
 a. weak b. fragile c. energetic d. powerful e. muscular
70. Eating healthy food keeps your immune system strong. The antonym of “immune” is.....
 a. resistant b. vulnerable c. weak d. essential e. safe
71. Good nutrition is important for your health. The synonym of “health” is
 a. fitness b. vitality c. disease d. illness e. weakness
72. She is an optimist who always expects the best outcomes. The antonym of “optimist” is.....
 a. cheerful b. confident c. hopeful d. pessimist e. negative
73. Having a positive attitude can change your whole day. The synonym of “attitude” is.....
 a. laziness b. stress c. mindset d. behavior e. sadness
74. You should practice gratitude every day to feel happier. The synonym of “practice” is....
 a. do b. ignore c. neglect d. perform e. miss
75. Showing gratitude makes you and others feel appreciated. The antonym of “gratitude” is
 a. disregard b. generosity c. thankfulness d. indifference e. kindness
76. Regular exercise is very important for your mental health. The synonym of “mental” is
 a. healthy b. emotional c. linked d. physical e. spiritual
77. Regular exercise is very important for your mental health. The antonym of “mental” is
 a. psychological b. emotional c. material d. physical e. spiritual

مقال عن الإرشادات الصحية

A Health Advice Article



Definition of health care article

- ★ A health care article is a short written text that gives information and advice to help people maintain and improve their health.

مقال الرعاية الصحية هو نص مكتوب قصير يقدم معلومات ونصائح لمساعدة الناس على الحفاظ على صحتهم وتحسينها.



You must use these structures and words in your article

Target Language

- ★ used to past habits or states.
 - ❖ I used to skip breakfast.
- ★ would repeated past actions.
 - ❖ I would stay up late playing games.
- ★ had to past obligation.
 - ❖ I had to walk to school every day.

Target Vocabulary

- ★ Try to include at least five of these words:
 - ❖ Dehydrated / Energetic / Joints/ Lifespan/ Immune System
 - ❖ Mental attitude/ Stress/ Toxins / Waste Removal/ Slipper

Writing Task

Write an advice article (about 180 words) titled: Healthy Habits I Used to Ignore In your article:

- ❖ Describe past habits using used to and would.
- ❖ Explain past obligations using had to.
- ❖ Give three pieces of advice based on what you learn.



Exercise 04

Writing

1. A health care article gives health

a. games	b. advice	c. money	d. shoes
----------	-----------	----------	----------
2. A health care article helps people improve their

a. clothes	b. sleep	c. health	d. shoes
------------	----------	-----------	----------
3. A health care article is a short written

a. text	b. story	c. letter	d. song
---------	----------	-----------	---------
4. A health care article provides to help people.

a. Pollution	b. information	c. Misunderstanding	d. tasks
--------------	----------------	---------------------	----------



Exercise 04

Translation

1. Education aims at creating an Egyptian citizen who is able to face the challenges of modern life.

- أ. يهدف التعليم إلى تكوين مواطن مصري غير قادر على مواجهة تحديات الحياة العصرية.
- ب. يهدف التعليم إلى تكوين مواطن مصري قادر على مواجهة تحديات الحياة المصرية.
- ج. يهدف التعليم إلى تكوين مواطن مصري قادر على وجه تحديات الحياة العصرية.
- د. يهدف التعليم إلى تكوين مواطن مصري قادر على مواجهة تحديات الحياة العصرية.

2. The state strives to improve life conditions for its citizens in various fields.

- أ. تعمل الدولة على تحسين الظروف المعيشية لمواطنيها في مختلف المجالات.
- ب. عملت الدولة على تحسين الظروف المعيشية لمواطنيها في مختلف المجالات.
- ج. عملت الدولة على تدمير الظروف المعيشية لمواطنيها في مختلف المجالات.
- د. تعمل الدولة على تحسين الظروف المعيشية لموظفيها في مختلف المجالات.

3. Tourism is one of the most important sources of national income as it brings in a lot of hard currency which is invested in plenty of projects.

- أ. تعتبر السياحة من أهم مصادر الدخل القومي لأنها تجلب الكثير من العملات الصعبة التي يتم استثمارها في الكثير من المشاريع.
- ب. تعتبر السياحة من أهم مصادر الدخل القومي لذلك تجلب الكثير من العملات الغريبة التي يتم استثمارها في الكثير من المشاريع.
- ج. تعتبر السياحة من أهم مصادر الدخل القومي لأنها تجلب الكثير من العملات الصعبة التي يتم إنفاقها في الكثير من المشاريع.
- د. تعتبر السياحة من أهم مصادر الدخل العالمي لأنها تجلب الكثير من العملات الصعبة التي يتم استثمارها في الكثير من المشاريع.

٤. من المعروف أن الاستخدام الخاطئ لمواقع الإنترنت ووسائل التواصل الاجتماعي يهدر الوقت والجهد ويدمر الصحة.

- a. It is good known that misusing websites and social media wastes time and effort and damages health.
- b. It is well known that misusing websites and social media wastes time and effort and damage health.
- c. It is well known that misusing websites and social media wastes time and effort and damages healthy.
- d. It is well known that misusing websites and social media wastes time and effort and damages health.

٥. تنفذ الحكومة الكثير من المشروعات القومية العملاقة كمحطات توليد الطاقة الشمسية واستصلاح الأراضي في صعيد مصر.

- a. The government is implementing many mega national projects such as solar energetic stations and land reclamation in Upper Egypt.
- b. The government is implementing many mega national projects such as solar power stations and land reclamation in Upper Egypt.
- c. The government is implementing many mega international projects such as solar power stations and land reclamation in Upper Egypt.
- d. The government is implementing much mega national projects such as solar power stations and ground reclamation in Upper Egypt.

٦. إن تحسين الإنتاج وزيادة الصادرات ضروريان لتحقيق الاستقرار الاقتصادي.

- a. Improving production and increasing imports are necessary to achieve economic stability.
- b. Improving production and increasing exports are necessity to achieve economic stability.
- c. Improving production and increasing exports are necessary to achieve economically stability.
- d. Improving production and increasing exports are necessary to achieve economic stability.



General Exercises on

Unit 11



A Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

- Being proactive helps you prevent problems before they happen. Synonym of "proactive" is
 a. lazy b. careless c. slow d. initiative-taking e. active
- Smoking has a bad effect on your health. Antonym of "health" is
 a. disease b. illness c. strength d. energy e. fitness

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The remove waste from the blood and maintain body balance.
 a. tongue b. knees c. heart d. kidneys
- your teeth at least twice daily to avoid tooth decay.
 a. Search b. Beel c. Cut d. Brush
- Healthy gums are very to keep teeth strong and clean.
 a. regular b. unnecessary c. important d. silly
- You must take care your body by eating healthy and exercising.
 a. on b. with c. of d. by
- your teeth daily helps prevent dental problems.
 a. Carving b. connecting c. Flossing d. defending
- People who gratitude feel happier and more satisfied with life.
 a. practice b. make c. perform d. benefit
- These days, most people emails instead of writing letters. سوهاج ٢٠٢٥
 a. are used b. used c. are using d. have used
- She to such hard work; she is always lazy. ببا ٢٠٢٥
 a. is used b. used c. isn't used d. didn't use
- Loujain doesn't like her new school, but I am sure she it sooner or later. شربين ٢٠٢٥
 a. used to b. will get used to c. will be suing to d. will have used to
- A health care article gives health
 a. advice b. games c. money d. shoes
- We in the countryside, but now we live in the city. سوهاج ٢٠٢٥
 a. used to living b. used to live c. use to live d. live
- A health care article helps people improve their
 a. clothes b. sleep c. health d. shoes

B Reading Comprehension

Perhaps more swimmers have been drowned by cramp than by anything else, and only those who have suffered from it can conceive its fatal power. Even good swimmers, when seized with cramp, have been known to sink instantly, overcome with the sudden pain, and nothing can save the victim but the greatest presence of mind. The usual spot where the cramp is felt is the calf of the leg; and it sometimes comes with such violence that the muscles are gathered up into knots. There is only one method of proceeding under such circumstances: to turn on one's back at once, kick the leg out in the air, disregarding the pain, and rub the spot smartly with one hand, while the other is employed in paddling towards shore. These directions are easy enough to give, but quite difficult to obey; cramp seems to deprive the sufferer of all reasons for the time, and it seems to overpower him with mingled pain and terror. Therefore, the method of saving a person drowning because of cramp demands great practice. The chief difficulty lies in the fact that a person who

cannot swim feels, in deep water, much as if he were falling through air, and consequently clutches instinctively at the nearest object. If he succeeds in grasping the person who is trying to save him, both will probably sink together. Every precaution should be taken to prevent such a misfortune and the drowning man should always be seized from behind and pushed forwards. Top of Form.

1. According to the passage, although the correct course of action for cramp is simple,....
 - a. the pain caused by it takes a long time to disappear
 - b. it is clear that few people remember to follow it
 - c. barely anyone has ever survived an attack in water
 - d. it cannot be applied without the help of another person
2. The force of cramp is so great that
 - a. it is hopeless to try and save a victim
 - b. only previous victims can imagine it
 - c. rubbing the spot affected is useless
 - d. most people affected never go swimming again
3. The author warns readers that
 - a. rescuers should approach a victim head-on
 - b. rescuers can be dragged down with the victim
 - c. once struck with cramp while swimming, the person must stay still and wait for assistance
 - d. one should not attempt to help someone struck by cramp
4. Which of the following is a true statement?
 - a. The drowning man should always be seized from behind and pushed forwards.
 - b. The drowning man shouldn't be approached.
 - c. Cramp isn't as fatal as other reasons of drowning.
 - d. Cramp seems to improve all reasons for the time.
5. Which of the following can best express the main idea of this passage?
 - a. It is easy to handle cramp
 - b. Cramp is the enemy of swimmers
 - c. It is dangerous to save a drowning swimmer
 - d. You shouldn't swim alone
6. The antonym of (violence) is
 - a. kindness
 - b. brutal
 - c. terrorism
 - d. fighting
7. According to the passage, the most important thing to survive a cramp is to be
 - a. healthy
 - b. sensible
 - c. sensitive
 - d. patient
8. The underlined pronoun he refers to
 - a. the rescuer
 - b. the drowning swimmer
 - c. people
 - d. cramp



Writing

1. We use the best methods to raise our young children because they are our hope for the near future and the basis for the progress of our beloved country.

١. نستخدم أفضل الطرق لرفع أطفالنا الصغار لأنهم أملنا في المستقبل القريب وأساس لتقدم بلدنا الحبيب.
 - ب. نستخدم أفضل الطرق لتربية أطفالنا الصغار لأنهم أملنا في المستقبل المجاور وأساس لتقدم بلدنا الحبيب.
 - ج. نستخدم أفضل الطرق لتربية أطفالنا الصغار لأنهم أملنا في المستقبل القريب وأساس لتقدم بلدنا الحبيب.
 - د. استخدمنا أفضل الطرق لتربية أطفالنا الصغار لأنهم أملنا في المستقبل القريب وأساس لتقدم بلدنا الحبيب.
٢. تلعب الرياضة دوراً حيوياً في حياتنا. فمن خلالها نكتسب الكثير من الفضائل مثل التعاون.

- a. Sport plays a vital rule in our life. Through them we acquire many virtues such as cooperation.
- b. Sports play a vital role in our life. Through them we require many virtues such as cooperation.
- c. Sports plays a vital role in our life. Through them we acquire many virtues such as cooperation.
- d. Sports play a vital role in our life. Through them we acquire many virtues such as cooperation.

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

1. Mona no longer stays up late on school nights.
2. In the past, my father often drove me to school.

(used to)

(would)

Answer the following questions:

1. If you were in Fogg's position, would you have taken control of the Henrietta? Why?
2. Why do you think the crew agreed to follow Fogg instead of Captain Speedy?

Write an Essay of about (180) words of the following: "Healthy habits you should follow"



1) Complete the following dialogue:

الجيزة ٢٠٢٥

Your and Reda are talking about the mid-year holiday.

Your : Good morning! What are you going to do in the mid-year holiday?

Reda : ①

Your : ②?

Reda : I will go there by train.

Your : ③?

Reda : I will stay in Luxor for a week.

Your : Great! Have a nice holiday.

Reda : ④

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

الجيزة ٢٠٢٥

In 1898, a man named Morgan Robinson wrote a book about a huge ship which was called the Titan. In the Robinson's story the Titan had been sailing across the Atlantic Ocean, when it suddenly sank and lots of passengers died. Fourteen years later, in the early morning of 15th April 1912, a real ship called the Titanic hit an iceberg while it was sailing across the Atlantic Ocean. The ship sank and over 1500 people died. But nine lucky people didn't die. They had all bought tickets for the Titanic but they didn't travel on the ship. The day before the ship left, they all had the same strange dream – They had heard a voice saying that 'The Titanic will sink!' So they stayed at home, they didn't use their tickets and they didn't die.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What did Morgan Robinson write about?
2. What happened to the Titan ship?
3. What does the underlined word "it" refer to?

B. Choose the right answer:

4. The titanic hit while it was sailing across the Atlantic.
a. snow b. an iceberg c. ice d. stone
5. Nine lucky people their tickets and they didn't die.
a. use b. didn't use c. used d. uses

3) A. Translate into Arabic:

الدقهلية ٢٠٢٥

It is important to respect our older relatives and show our respect for the most important people in our family.

B. Translate into English:

الدقهلية ٢٠٢٥

العبادة هي كمال الخضوع لله تعالى مع كمال الحب.



Unit **12** | Time Habits & Punctuality

Reading

Learning Outcomes

- Compare and contrast the characteristics of "Clock People" and "Event People" by inferring from the text how their perceptions of time affect their behavior.
- Identify the "planning fallacy" by skimming for examples and clues in the text that show how people underestimate the time needed for tasks.

Language

- The Future Perfect Tense

Listening

- Identify the specific reason for lateness in a workplace dialogue.
- Note three separate lessons learned regarding being late for important life events.

Writing

- Compose a 180-word formal apology letter to a principal.

Speaking

- Role-play a formal manager-employee conversation to give a warning and an appropriate apology.



Key Vocabulary

optimistic (adj)	متفائل	suspension (n)	تعليق / إيقاف مؤقت	personality (n)	شخصية
promptly (adv)	على الفور / بسرعة	productivity (n)	إنتاجية	misunderstanding (n)	سوء تفاهم
spontaneous (adj)	عفوي / تلقائي	psychologist (n)	عالم نفسي	traits (n)	صفات
delay (n/v)	تأخير / يؤجل	perception (n)	إدراك / تصور	relationship (n)	علاقة
attendance (n)	حضور	punctual (adj)	دقيق المواعيد	confident (adj)	واثق
consistent (adj)	ثابت / منتظم	punctuality (n)	الالتزام بالمواعيد	intentionally (adv)	عمدا / عن قصد
rude (adj)	وقح / فظ			intentional (adj)	متعمد / مقصود

Main Vocabulary

race (n)	سباق	graduate (n/v)	خريج / يتخرج	ensure (v)	يضمن / يتأكد من
straight (adj)	مستقيم / مباشر	promising (adj)	واعد / مبشر بالخير	concern (n)	اهتمام
valuable (adj)	ثمين / ذو قيمة	pattern (n)	نمط	wonder (n)	دهشة / إعجاب
resource (n)	مورد	adulthood (n)	مرحلة الرشد / البلوغ	employee (n)	موظف
schedule (n)	جدول مواعيد	frequently (adv)	كثيراً / بشكل متكرر	manage (v)	يدير / يدير
strict (adj)	صارم / شديد	annoying (adj)	مزعج	lateness (n)	التأخر / عدم الالتزام بالمواعيد
lack (n)	نقص / قلة	immediately (adv)	فوراً / مباشرة	improve (v)	يحسن / يطور
respect (n/v)	يحترم / احترام	differently (adv)	بشكل مختلف	amount (n)	كمية
hopeful (adj)	متفائل / متطلع للأفضل	strictly (adv)	بصرامة / بدقة	immediate (adj)	فوري / مباشر
current (adj)	حالي / جاري	flexibly (adv)	بمرونة	present (n/v)	حاضر / هدية / يقدم
activity (n)	نشاط / فعالية	productivity (n)	إنتاجية	event (n)	حدث / مناسبة
flexible (adj)	مرن	board (n)	هيئة / مجلس إدارة	cause (n/v)	سبب / يسبب
task (n)	مهمة / واجب	exactly (adv)	بالضبط	allow (v)	يسمح / يتيح
warning (n)	تحذير	consistently (adv)	باستمرار / بثبات	furniture (n)	أثاث
manager (n)	مدير	truly (adv)	حقاً / بصدق	promotion (n)	ترقية / ترويج
excuse (n/v)	عذر / يعذر	period (n)	فترة / مدة زمنية	tone (n)	نبرة / أسلوب
describe (v)	يصف	celebration (n)	احتفال	apologetic (adj)	أسف / اعتذاري

Collocations

develop a perception	يكون تصور / يدرك شيء	reach adulthood	يبلغ سن الرشد
manage time	ينظم الوقت	arrive promptly	يصل في الوقت المناسب
follow schedule	يتبع الجدول	take action	يتخذ إجراء
build relationships	يبنى علاقات	reflect a spontaneous personality	يعكس شخصية عفوية
make plans	يضع خطط	face misunderstanding	يواجه سوء التفاهم
do tasks	يقوم بالمهام	take actions	يتخذ إجراءات
show respect	يظهر احترام	give excuses	يقدم أذذار
complete a task	يكمل مهمة	lose time	يفضيح الوقت

Expressions & Prepositions

divide into	يقسم إلى	run late	يتأخر
by the end of	بحلول نهاية	lack of respect	نقص الإحترام
take part in	يشارك في	intentionally rude	فظ عن قصد
confident about	واثق من	spontaneous personality	شخصية عفوية
positive personality traits	سمات شخصية ايجابية	valuable teammate	زميل ثري ذو قيمة
worried about	قلق بشأن	exactly on time	في الموعد تماما
focus on	يركز على	give excuses for	يقدم أعذارا عن

Definitions

optimistic	متفائل	hopeful and confident about the future
promptly	فورا / في الحال	done quickly or immediately; without waiting
delays	تأخيرات	things that stop you from doing something or that make you wait
spontaneous	عفوي	done suddenly and without a lot of thought or planning
attendance	الحضور	act of being present at a place or event
consistent	منتظم / ثابت	always happening in the same way
productivity	الإنتاجية	getting more tasks done in a given amount of time
suspension	إيقاف مؤقت	not allowing someone to take part in something for some time

Types of People and Time Perception

Clock People	اشخاص ملتزمون بالوقت	strict with schedule; values time.	ملتزمون بالجدول؛ يقدر الوقت
Event Person	شخص مرن مع الوقت	think they have more time than they really do	
Racing the Clock	التسابق مع الوقت	trying to do something quickly before time runs out	محاولة إنجاز شيء بسرعة قبل انتهاء الوقت
Planning Fallacy	مغالطة التخطيط	overestimating what can be done in time	المبالغة في تقدير ما يمكن إنجازه في الوقت
Using a broken clock	الاعتماد على وسيلة خاطئة لمعرفة الوقت	it means following something that doesn't work properly	يعني الاعتماد على شيء لا يعمل بشكل صحيح

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
punctual	ملتزم بالمواعيد	on time, prompt, timely	late, delayed, slow, overdue
punctuality	الالتزام بالمواعيد	timeliness, promptness, regularity	lateness, delay, procrastination
spontaneous	عفوي	natural, unplanned, impulsive	planned, deliberate, intentional
optimistic	متفائل	hopeful, positive, confident	pessimistic, negative, doubtful
suspension	توقف مؤقت	pause, halt, interruption	continuation, resumption, progress
promptly	فورا / على الفور	immediately, quickly, instantly	slowly, belatedly, delayed
productivity	إنتاجية	efficiency, output, performance	inefficiency, idleness, inactivity
misunderstanding	سوء تفاهم	confusion, misinterpretation, mistake	understanding, clarity, agreement

perception	إدراك	awareness, understanding, insight	misunderstanding, ignorance, confusion
delay	تأخير / يؤخر	postpone, defer, lag	advance, hasten, accelerate
attendance	حضور	presence, participation, appearance	absence, nonattendance, neglect
intentional	متعمد	deliberate, planned, purposeful	accidental, unintentional, random
strict	صارم	rigid, exacting, severe	lenient, flexible, relaxed

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
waste	يهدر	waste	هدر	wasteful	مهذر
believe	يصدق	belief	اعتقاد	believable	معقول / يمكن تصديقه
manage	يدير	management	إدارة	manageable	قابل للإدارة
understand	يفهم	understanding	فهم / إدراك	understandable	مفهوم
complete	يكمل	completion	إكمال	complete	مكتمل
reflect	يعكس / يظهر	reflection	انعكاس / تفكير	reflective	متأمل / معكوس
delay	يؤجل / يتأخر	delay	تأخير	delayed	متأخر



Language Notes



Notice the Difference

divide	يقسم (إلى أجزاء محددة)	share	يشارك، يتقاسم (بالتساوي أو لا)
incident	حادثة، واقعة (عامة)	accident	حادثة (غير مقصود، عادة سيئة)
employee	موظف	employer	صاحب عمل
perception	إدراك أو فهم	reception	استقبال أو استلام
optimistic	متفائل (صفة)	optimist	متفائل (شخص)
trait	سمة شخصية	treat	يعالج أو يعامل
strict	صارم	district	منطقة أو حي
lose time	يضيع الوقت بدون قصد	waste time	يضيع الوقت بلا فائدة أو عن قصد
task	مهمة	tusk	ناب (أسنان الحيوان)
spontaneous	عفوي	deliberate	متعمد أو محسوب
complete d	مكتمل	complicated	معقد
confident	واثق	confidant	صديق مقرب / شخص مؤتمن
schedule	جدول أعمال أو مواعيد	timetable	جدول مواعيد (غالباً للمدارس أو المواصلات)
psychologist	عالم نفس	physician	طبيب بشري / باطني

sure, ensure, assure & reassure

sure (v)	مؤكد، واثق	I'm sure about my answer.
ensure (v)	يضمن / يتأكد	Please ensure the door is locked.
assure (v)	يؤكد لشخص، يطمئن	I assure you that everything is fine
reassure (v)	طمئن مجدداً، يزيل القلق	The doctor reassured me about my health.

Prompt, Promptness & Promptly

- prompt** (v) يَجْفَزُ / يدفع على / يسرع ▶ The teacher **prompted** the student to answer.
- Promptness** (n) القيام بشيء فوراً ▶ His **promptness** in replying to emails is impressive
- Prompt** (adj) سريع / عاجل / فوري ▶ She was **prompt** in replying to emails.
- Promptly** (adv) بسرعة / فوراً ▶ He answered **promptly**.

attend, attendance, attentive & attentively

- attend** (v) يحضر / يشارك ▶ I will **attend** the meeting tomorrow.
- attendance** (n) انحصور / نسبة انحصور ▶ **Attendance** at the class is mandatory.
- attentive** (adj) منتهية / مهتم ▶ The students were **attentive** during the lecture.
- attentively** (adv) بانتباه / بتركيز ▶ She listened **attentively** to the instructions.

Reading



"Racing the Clock"

Do you ever wonder why some people always arrive **promptly** ⁽¹⁾ for everything, while others are always running late?

Psychologists ⁽²⁾ say that by the time we reach **adulthood** ⁽³⁾, we will have developed a specific **perception** ⁽⁴⁾ of time.

Psychologists divide people into two groups based on how they see time. The first group includes the people who are usually **punctual** ⁽⁵⁾; we can call them '**Clock People**' ⁽⁶⁾. They see time as a straight line, like a road. It is a valuable **resource** ⁽⁷⁾ that they must manage carefully, like money. By the end of a busy week, they will have followed their **schedule** ⁽⁸⁾ strictly to avoid wasting a single moment. For these people, being late means they are losing time and showing a lack of respect. The second group includes the people who are **frequently** ⁽⁹⁾ late; we can call them '**Event People**' ⁽¹⁰⁾. This group sees time more **flexibly** ⁽¹¹⁾, not as a **strict** ⁽¹²⁾ line. For them, finishing a **current** ⁽¹³⁾ activity is more important than the clock. They are often **optimistic** ⁽¹⁴⁾ and truly believe that by the time an hour passes, they will have completed many **tasks** ⁽¹⁵⁾. This is often called the "**planning fallacy** ⁽¹⁶⁾." While being late can be **annoying** ⁽¹⁷⁾, studies show it is not usually because the person is **intentionally** ⁽¹⁸⁾ rude. Often, it reflects a **spontaneous** ⁽¹⁹⁾ personality type that focuses more on what is happening now. By the time these two types work together, they will have faced many misunderstandings, but understanding these **traits** ⁽²⁰⁾ helps build better **relationships** ⁽²¹⁾.



- (١) بدقة / على الوقت
- (٢) علماء النفس
- (٣) مرحلة البلوغ / الرشد
- (٤) إدراك / تصور
- (٥) ملتزم بالمواعيد
- (٦) أشخاص ملتزمون بالوقت
- (٧) مورد / قيمة / مصدر
- (٨) جدول / خطة زمنية
- (٩) بشكل متكرر
- (١٠) أشخاص مرتبون مع الوقت
- (١١) بمرونة
- (١٢) صارم / دقيق
- (١٣) الحالي / الجاري
- (١٤) متقائل
- (١٥) مهام / أعمال
- (١٦) مغالطة التخطيط
- (١٧) مزيج
- (١٨) عن قصد / عمدا
- (١٩) عفوي / تلقائي
- (٢٠) سمات / خصال
- (٢١) علاقات / صلات



Listening



Mr Ahmed

Salah, please sit down. We need to discuss your **attendance**⁽¹⁾. By the time this weekend, you will have arrived late four times

Salah

I am very sorry, Mr Ahmed. I had some unexpected **delays**⁽²⁾ with the bus. I thought I would have reached the office by 8:00 a.m., but the traffic was terrible.

Mr Ahmed

I understand, but **punctuality**⁽³⁾ is vital for our **productivity**⁽⁴⁾. If this **pattern**⁽⁵⁾ continues, by your next review, the **board**⁽⁶⁾ will have decided on your **suspension**⁽⁷⁾.

Salah

I promise to change. By tomorrow morning, I will have arranged a different way to get to work.

Bassem

I hope so. We **value**⁽⁸⁾ your work, but we need a **consistent**⁽⁹⁾ **teammate**⁽¹⁰⁾. If you improve, we will have forgotten this **incident**⁽¹¹⁾ by next month.

(١) الحضور

(٢) تأخيرات

(٣) الالتزام بالمواعيد

(٤) الإنتاجية

(٥) نمط

(٦) مجلس الإدارة

(٧) الإيقاف / التعليق

(٨) يقدر / يثمن

(٩) ثابت / متواصل

(١٠) زميل الفريق

(١١) حادث / واقعة



Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

1. Being late to school every day shows poor R4
 a. nutrition b. punctuality c. fitness d. talent
2. Event People often believe they will have completed many tasks due to being S3
 a. optimistic b. risks c. pessimistic d. ordinary
3. The student facedafter repeatedly breaking important school rules.
 a. suspicion b. suspension c. permission d. attention
4. His friendlymakes it easy for others to trust and believe him quickly.
 a. disability b. personality c. clothing d. disrespect
5. She respondedto the email, showing respect and professional responsibility.
 a. stupidly b. carelessly c. promptly d. lazily
6. Good time management increasesand reduces stress during busy workdays.
 a. dishonesty b. lateness c. poverty d. productivity
7. A simplecaused tension between the friends for several days.
 a. welcome b. agreement c. understanding d. misunderstanding
8. Lateness often reflects apersonality type. S3
 a. spontaneous b. punctual c. perfect d. careful
9. Thehelped patients understand their emotions and behavior more clearly.
 a. receptionist b. artist c. psychologist d. geologist
10. Honesty and kindness are importantthat every successful leader should possess .
 a. greetings b. traits c. trades d. grades
11. Flightcaused by bad weather affected hundreds of passengers waiting at the airport
 a. delays b. reigns c. agreements d. signs
12. Beingshows respect for other people's time and builds a strong reputation.
 a. careless b. hopeless c. ignorant d. punctual
13. A healthyrequires trust, honesty, and consistent efforts from both sides.
 a. shipping b. spaceship c. relationship d. hardship
14. Yourof events can change depending on your mindset and experiences.
 a. perception b. reception c. deception d. revision

15. **Regular** at work or school is essential for achieving long-term success.
 a. conflict b. difference c. attendance d. confusion
16. It is never acceptable to be even if you feel stressed or frustrated.
 a. rude b. handsome c. polite d. creative
17. He ignored the warning signs, which later caused serious problems for everyone involved.
 a. daily b. mentally c. intentionally d. physically
18. Maintaining effort every day is the key to improving skills and results.
 a. Consistent b. Inconsistent c. Irregular d. Unstable
19. A person usually approaches challenges with determination, and self-assurance.
 a. doubtful b. confident c. shy d. uncertain
20. means done quickly or immediately; without waiting. **SB**
 a. Suddenly b. Promptly c. Lazily d. Tardily
21. means done suddenly and without a lot of thought or planning. **SB**
 a. Intentional b. spontaneous c. Deliberate d. Planned
22. is the act of being present at a place or event. **SB**
 a. Attendance b. Absence c. Violence d. Patience
23. means getting more tasks done in a given amount of time. **SB**
 a. productivity b. Poverty c. Safety d. cavity
24. **Clock People** believe time is like **SB**
 a. a flexible resource b. money that must be spent carefully
 c. a random event d. a part of life that cannot be helped
25. **An Event Person** is likely to **SB**
 a. arrive too early b. think they have more time than they really do
 c. avoid making plans d. see time as a straight line
26. If an **Event Person** is late, it is usually because they are **SB**
 a. intentionally rude b. spontaneous and optimistic
 c. lazy and tired d. using a broken clock
27. **Clock People** are
 a. strict with schedule; values time b. flexible and relaxed with deadlines
 c. often late due to planning fallacy d. focused only on current activity
28. **Racing the clock** means
 a. allowing a broken clock b. overestimating what can be done
 c. ignoring all schedules d. trying to do something quickly before time runs out
29. **The planning fallacy** is
 a. being intentionally rude b. racing the clock
 c. overestimating what can be done in time d. doing tasks too slowly
30. **Using a broken clock** means
 a. depending on something that doesn't work properly b. being flexible with time
 c. following a schedule strictly d. arriving promptly



Exercise 04 Main Vocabulary

31. **Planning your tasks** helps you use your time **R4**
 a. effectively b. suddenly c. accidentally d. slowly
32. **The library** is a valuable for students seeking information and research materials.
 a. sauce b. resource c. sensor d. soil

33. I need to carefully plan my workto balance meetings and personal tasks.
 a. confusion b. connection c. interview d. schedule
34. Thecan affect productivity and cause misunderstandings at work.
 a. Timeliness b. Punctuality c. Lateness d. Promptness
35. The young scientist showed aapproach that could revolutionize renewable energy research.
 a. excited b. surprised c. promised d. promising
36.brings more responsibilities and important life decisions.
 a. Childhood b. Adulthood c. Toddlerhood d. Infancy
37.are expected to arrive promptly for meetings and important appointments.
 a. Employees b. Children c. Mountains d. Lakes
38. Everyreceived a certificate recognizing their academic achievements .
 a. employer b. manager c. graduate d. grade
39. Hersounded polite and professional during the conversation.
 a. stone b. tone c. tune d. bone
40. She called the doctorafter noticing the unusual symptoms in her child.
 a. immediately b. carelessly c. impolitely d. risky
41. The school principal, known for being....., ensures that every student follows all rules.
 a. confusing b. misleading c. panic d. strict
42. The manager takes extra steps tothat every project is completed on time.
 a. ensure b. capture c. insure d. enhance
43. After years of dedication and hard work, she finally received a well-deserved
 a. generation b. pollution c. promotion d. prediction
44. He feltfor his mistake and immediately offered to make things right.
 a. energetic b. satisfied c. proud d. apologetic
45. She handled the changes at work, adapting quickly to every new situation
 a. flexibly b. lazily c. unkindly d. falsely
46. He tried tohis mistake by explaining he was very busy yesterday.
 a. excuse b. reuse c. value d. boost
47. The teacher gave ato students who did not complete their homework.
 a. meeting b. waiting c. warming d. warning
48. Environmental pollution is a growingfor governments and communities .
 a. celebration b. ceremony c. concert d. concern



Exercise

Expressions, Prepositions,
Derivatives & Language Notes

49. Good communication helps people relationships based on trust and respect.
 a. do b. make c. build d. give
50. His behavior a spontaneous personality that enjoys unexpected experiences.
 a. reflects b. carries c. makes d. faces
51. Most people adulthood with clearer goals and stronger personal values.
 a. move b. get c. arrive d. reach
52. She tries to a schedule carefully to avoid stress and confusion.
 a. capture b. catch c. follow d. stay
53. Students must time well to balance study, work, and rest.
 a. discourage b. manage c. take d. make

54. He tried to excuses instead of taking responsibility for his mistake.
 a. give b. make c. win d. do
55. They usually plans before starting any new project together.
 a. ask b. give c. make d. feel
56. the clock causes stress when deadlines approach too quickly.
 a. Getting b. Running c. Racing d. Seeing
57. Psychologists divide people groups based on how they perceive time.
 a. about b. with c. in d. into
58. the end of the week, he completed all his required tasks.
 a. For b. By c. in d. On

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

59. "Being punctual shows respect for others time." The antonym of punctual is **SB R4**
 a. late b. on time c. tardy d. careful e. fast
60. People who are punctual always arrive on time. The synonym of "punctual" is
 a. on time b. delayed c. timely d. separate e. careless
61. The teacher is strict with the rules. The antonym of "strict" is
 a. harsh b. firm c. rigid d. flexible e. Lenient
62. He is spontaneous in making decisions. The synonym of "spontaneous" is
 a. unplanned b. strict c. prepared d. impulsive e. careful
63. Regular attendance is important for students. The antonym of "attendance" is
 a. absence b. nonappearance c. participation d. arrival e. linked
64. Sleep is necessary for good health. The antonym of the underlined word "necessary" is
 a. required b. optional c. unnecessary d. essential e. vital
65. The flight experienced a delay. The antonym of "delay" is
 a. hurry b. promptness c. lateness d. pause e. slow
66. Increasing productivity helps the company grow. The synonym of "productivity" is
 a. idleness b. delay c. laziness d. efficiency e. output
67. His perception of the situation was wrong. The antonym of "perception" is
 a. awareness b. observation c. misunderstanding d. ignorance e. insight
68. She replied to the message promptly. The synonym of "promptly" is
 a. immediately b. slowly c. carelessly d. quickly e. late
69. They cleared up the misunderstanding. The antonym of "misunderstanding" is
 a. conflict b. dispute c. confusion d. agreement e. clarity
70. The school announced a suspension of classes today. The synonym of "suspension" is
 a. interruption b. start c. pause d. continuation e. beginning
71. He intentionally broke the vase. The synonym of "intentionally" is
 a. deliberately b. unknowingly c. carelessly d. on purpose e. accidentally

المستقبل التام
Future Perfect

Affirmation

الإثبات

will have + P.P.

- ❖ You **will have finished** your project by the end of this term.
- ❖ I **will have read** the book before I return it to the library.

Negation

النفي

won't have + P.P.

- ❖ I **won't have gone** to sleep before 8 pm.
- ❖ They **will not have** exercised before we meet.

Question

السؤال

Will + Sub + have + P.P. ?

- ❖ Will you **have read** the book before you return it to the library?
- ✓ Yes, I **will**.
- ✗ No, I **won't**.

Passive

المبنى للمجهول

will have + been + P.P.

- ❖ Your project **will have been finished** by the end of this term.
- ❖ The book **will have been read** before I return it to the library.

Key Words

الكلمات الدالة

by

by this (the) time

before

in

in (3 days' ...) time

for

بجول / قبل

في خلال / في نهاية

- ▶ By 2030, the types of transport available to us **will have changed** completely.
- ▶ We **will have arrived** in Alex by this time tomorrow.
- ▶ They **will not have** exercised before we meet.
- ▶ We **will have been** in London in next three weeks.
- ▶ Why do you think more people **will have decided** to use public transport in twenty years' time?
- ▶ I **will have lived** here for one year next week.

Uses

الاستخدامات

① يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف ينتهي في وقت معين في المستقبل..

- ★ By the end of this year, I **will have finished** my study.
- ★ His new house **will have been** built by 2030.

② للتعبير عن حدث سوف يتم في المستقبل أو يتم قبل حدث آخر في المستقبل.

- ★ Before our parents come, we **will have tidied** our room.
- ★ In five years, a lot of books **will have been** published.

③ للتعبير عن حدث اكتمال مدة في المستقبل.

- ★ By 2030, I **will have worked** as a teacher for 20 years.



ملاحظات هامة على صيغ المستقبل

للحظ الاختلاف بين كل من المستقبل البسيط و المستقبل المستمر و المستقبل التام

- ★ I **will study** English at 7 o'clock. (يعبر المستقبل البسيط هنا عن بداية الحدث)
- ★ I **will be studying** English at 7 o'clock tomorrow. (يعبر المستقبل المستمر هنا عن استمرار (منتصف) الحدث)
- ★ I **will have studied** English by 7 o'clock tomorrow. (يعبر المستقبل التام هنا عن انتهاء الحدث)

للحظ استخدام الصيغة التالية بدلاً من المستقبل التام نستخدم المستقبل البسيط:

expect to have + P.P

معلوم

- ★ We **expect to have arrived** by 4 o'clock this afternoon.

be expected to have been + P.P

مجهول

- ★ This bridge **is expected to have been built** by the end of next year.

يمكننا استخدام المستقبل البسيط المستقبل المستمر مع الكلمات الدالة على المستقبل التام :

- ★ In three months, I **will be** studying abroad. هنا بمعنى خلال ثلاث شهور سيكون يدرس بالخارج.
- ★ In three months, I **will have** studied abroad.. هنا بمعنى خلال ثلاث شهور سيكون انتهى من الدراسة بالخارج

Future time clauses

العبارات الزمنية
الدالة على المستقبل

نستخدم المستقبل البسيط مع العبارة الزمنية ليدل على بداية الحدث في المستقبل :

رابط زمني

+

inf. / inf. + s

مضارع بسيط

will + inf.

have / has + P.P

مضارع تام

مستقبل بسيط

- ★ After I **(do) have done** my homework, I'll go to bed.
- ★ She **will** call me as soon as she **arrives (has arrived)** in London.

يمكننا استخدام المستقبل التام مع العبارة الزمنية وليس المستقبل البسيط للتعبير عن نهاية الحدث في المستقبل :

رابط زمني

+

inf. / inf. + s

مضارع بسيط

will have + P.P

have / has + P.P

مضارع تام

مستقبل تام

- ★ By the time my holiday **is** over, I **will have visited** lots of interesting places
- ★ Before I **go** home, I **will have finished** everything.

ويمكن استخدام اي صيغ مستقبل اخري حسب المعني.

- ★ After I **have finished** my study, I **am going to** travel abroad as planned.

انتظروا!!!!

GIANTS

كتاب مراجعة العملاقة

للمصف الثاني الثانوي

معلمة

GIANTS

المعالم



Exercise 14 Language Level 1

1. By the end of this month, she a whole daily study schedule. SB R 4
 a. completes b. will complete c. will have completed d. has completed
2. By the time my father comes home, I my research for three hours. SB R 4
 a. will have done b. will do c. have done d. had been done
3. I expect we all the work by five o'clock this evening. SB R 4
 a. will have been done b. will have done c. will be done d. will be doing
4. By next month, I enough money for a new laptop. SB
 a. will save b. will have saved c. will be saved d. am saving
5. By the time the guests arrive, Ali the house. SB
 a. cleaned b. cleans c. will clean d. will have cleaned
6. In three days, the explorers the top of the mountain. SB
 a. will be reached b. are reaching c. will have reached d. are being reached
7. By the end of this lesson, the students the grammar. SB
 a. are understood b. will have understanding c. are understanding d. will have understood
8. Amr will his tasks by next month. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
 a. be finished b. has finished c. have finished d. finish
9. Huda to a new flat by this time next year. ساقية ٢٠٢٤
 a. is going to move b. will have moved c. will move d. moves
10. In a year time, they this massive building. بنها ٢٠٢٣ اسوان ٢٠٢٤ قوص ٢٠٢٤
 a. will have finished b. will finishing c. will be finished d. are finishing
11. We the project in three days' time. الشروق ٢٠٢٤
 a. have finished b. will finish c. will be finishing d. will have finished
12. By next March, I will my new car. العياض ٢٠٢٤
 a. be received b. have received c. be receiving d. may be received
13. I all of the books on the list by the end of the year. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
 a. will read b. is going to read c. reads d. will have read
14. By the end of next June, my final exams شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤
 a. will finish b. will have finished c. will have been finished d. are finished
15. By next year, I a new villa. البلدشين ٢٠٢٤
 a. well built b. will have built c. have built d. building
16. They in this house for a year next July. هيا ٢٠٢٤
 a. will have been b. will be c. have been d. are
17. I my report by this time next week. دكنرس ٢٠٢٤
 a. will finish b. have finished c. will have finished d. had finished
18. They say that they this task by 2 o'clock tomorrow. اولاد صقر ٢٠٢٤
 a. will be achieving b. will have achieved c. has achieved d. will have been achieved
19. ten o'clock tomorrow, I will have finished all my homework. اسيوط ٢٠٢٣
 a. At b. By c. In d. On

20. I the essay by 7 o'clock tomorrow.

العباط ٢٠٢٤ ههيا ٢٠٢٢

- a. will have finished b. have finished c. have been finished d. had finished

21. The secretary all these piles of letters by 12 o'clock.

بالبيس ٢٠٢٢

- a. will have typed b. will type c. will be typed d. will be typing

22. My brother from the university by the end of next July.

٤م

- a. is going to graduate b. will be graduating
c. has graduated d. will have graduated



Exercise 24 Language Level 2

23. In three weeks' time, the new dam will have

بيا ٢٠٢٤

- a. build b. built c. been building d. been built

24. By the time my holiday is over, I lots of interesting places.

أسيوط ٢٠٢٤

- a. have visited b. will have visited c. visit d. will be visiting

25. By next October, the new factory

أخميم ٢٠٢٤

- a. will be building b. is going to be built c. will have been built d. will build

26. By the time I am 30, I a nice villa.

أبو حماد ٢٠٢٤

- a. will own b. will have owned c. will be owning d. own

27. By the time I get home, my wife lunch.

المنيا ٢٠٢٤

- a. prepared b. is preparing c. will be prepared d. will have prepared

28. A technician the air conditioner before we move into the new house.

الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤

- a. has checked b. will have checked c. had checked d. was checking

29. Before the end of this year, a lot of projects done in many villages.

بيا ٢٠٢٤

- a. will surely b. had been c. will have d. will have been

30. By next week, the bridge

الخارجة ٢٠٢٤

- a. will build b. will have been built c. is built d. is building

31. By this time next month, the prisoner set free.

طامية ٢٠٢٤

- a. had b. had been c. will have d. will have been

32. By 2050, scientists believe that a cure for cancer will found.

بني سويف ٢٠٢٤

- a. have b. be c. have been d. being

33. A new high-tech hospital before the end of the year.

- a. built b. will have been built c. will be building d. will build

34. By the time the school year is over, we most of the grammar tenses.

أجا ٢٠٢٤

- a. will study b. will have studied c. had studied d. will be studying

35. I think we this task before the end of next week; we'll need more time.

السويس ٢٠٢٤

- a. will have finished b. have finished c. are finishing d. won't have finished

36. Will the house by next month?

بني سويف ٢٠٢٤

- a. be painting b. paint c. have painted d. have been painted

37. All our financial problems are expected to by next year.

كوم حمادة ٢٠٢٤

- a. solve b. have solved c. have been solved d. have been solving

38. Faten the shopping before she returns home.

٤م

- a. would have done b. will have done c. had to do d. will have been done

39. The 6th October City Monorail line by 2028.

اسوان ٢٠٢٤

- a. will complete b. completed
c. will have been completed d. complete

40. the final report before the manager arrives?

٤م

- a. Did you prepare b. Will you have prepared
c. had you prepared d. were you preparing

41. Which sentence expresses the end of an action?

- a. I will study English at 7 o'clock.
b. I am going to study English at 7 o'clock tomorrow.
c. I will have studied English by 7 o'clock tomorrow.
d. I will be studying English at 7 o'clock tomorrow.



Exercise 04

Language Level 3

42. What before next summer?

قلين ٢٠٢٤

- a. will have you done b. have you will done c. you will have done d. will you have done

43. Take your time and I for you by the gate.

ميت عمر ٢٠٢٤

- a. will be waited b. will have waited c. will wait d. going to wait

44. By 2050, English language will by millions of people.

ادفو ٢٠٢٣ دمنهور ٢٠٢٤

- a. have been speaking b. have spoken c. be spoken d. speak

45. Ali sixteen next week.

الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤

- a. is b. is going to be c. will be d. will have been

46. By 2030, they expect three more lines of the Cairo Metro.

العصرة ٢٠٢٣

- a. to build b. will have built c. to have built d. will have been built

47. I can't meet you tonight because I for my sister's wedding party.

الشروق ٢٠٢٤

- a. was preparing b. will be preparing c. will have prepared d. have prepared

48. This time next week, we to Saudi Arabia.

العياذ ٢٠٢٤

- a. will be flying b. will fly c. are going to flying d. fly

49. I my uncle next week. I've arranged it.

دمياط ٢٠٢٤

- a. visiting b. would visit c. am visiting d. was visiting

50. Don't phone me after 1.00 a.m. because I then.

ابوتشت ٢٠٢٤

- a. sleep b. will have been slept c. will be sleeping d. have slept

51. I you if you insult your friend again.

أخميم ٢٠٢٤

- a. punish b. will be punishing c. will have punished d. will punish

52. He'll take a shower after he lunch.

الحسينية ٢٠٢٤

- a. has had b. had c. had had d. have

53. I have already confirmed the reservation; I to Rome tomorrow.

السويس ٢٠٢٤

- a. am flying b. had flown c. was flying d. will fly

54. We to London tomorrow; we've got our visa and booked tickets.

فاقوس ٢٠٢٤

- a. travel b. are traveling c. will travel d. is going to travel

55. I think we this big task before the end of next week; we will take longer.

٤م

- a. will have finished b. won't have finished
c. haven't finished d. are finishing

56. By the end of next year, Samir bigger house; I'm uncertain.
 a. has bought b. will have been bought
 c. will buy d. might have bought
57. The problem of food shortages.....solved by the end of the next decade. Who knows?
 a. will have b. will have been c. might have been d. might have
58. I expect five units by next night. المراجعة ٢٠٢٤
 a. to have revised b. to be revised c. will be revising d. will have revised
59. I my exams until next Sunday.
 a. will be finishing b. will have finished c. won't be finished d. won't have finished
60. I won't have done all of my homework you get home.
 a. by the time b. by c. before d. a & c
61. Which sentence means "Before next week, I will no longer be here". طامية ٢٠٢٤
 a. Before next week, I will have left. b. Before next week, I will be leaving.
 c. Before next week, I will leave. d. Before next week, I have left.
62. Which sentence shows that an action will be completed before a future time?
 a. They will play the match at 6 p.m.
 b. They will be playing the match at 6 p.m.
 c. They will have played the match by 6 p.m.
 d. They are going to play the match at 6 p.m.

2) Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Will you finish the project before it is Friday ? (by Friday) SB R 4
2. I plan to finish reading this book before tomorrow. (by) SB
3. The secretary will finish typing the letters before the manager arrives. (will have) SB
4. Before going to bed, she will have done her homework. (by the time) SB
5. By the time the match ends, the team will have scored a goal. (been)
6. They will finish the project before the manager checks it. (will have)
7. By the time the exam begins, the teacher will have explained the lesson. (The lesson)
8. His new house will have been built by 2030. (in)
9. The students will finish the exam before the bell rings. (will have)
10. I will fully complete my study in three years' time. (by)
11. Mai is supposed to finish her study in 2030. (will have)

GIANTS

انتظروا

كتاب مراجعة العملاقة
للفصل الثاني الثانوي



Time Habits and Punctuality

- 3 Planning for the Big Day
4 Time is Money
5 A Formal Apology Letter



Key Vocabulary

principal ⁽ⁿ⁾	مدير	productivity ⁽ⁿ⁾	الإنتاجية	well-organized ^(adj)	منظم جيداً
submit ^(v)	يقدم / يسلم	productive ^(adj)	منتج	well-planned ^(adj)	مخطط جيداً
disappointment ^(adj)	خيبة أمل	lifespan ⁽ⁿ⁾	العمر الافتراضي	neatly arranged ^(adj)	مرتب بدقة
master ^(v)	يتقن	apology ⁽ⁿ⁾	اعتذار	commitment ⁽ⁿ⁾	التزام
organized ^(adj)	مرتب، منظم	deadline ⁽ⁿ⁾	الموعد النهائي	long-term ^(adj)	طويل الأمد
reliability ⁽ⁿ⁾	الاعتمادية	timeline ⁽ⁿ⁾	الجدول الزمني	time-management ⁽ⁿ⁾	إدارة الوقت
sharp ^(adj)	حاد / ذكي	professional ^(n/adj)	محترف	efficiency ⁽ⁿ⁾	الكفاءة

Main Vocabulary

investment ⁽ⁿ⁾	استثمار	disruption ⁽ⁿ⁾	تشويش / تعطيل	apologize ^(v)	يعتذر
punctuality ⁽ⁿ⁾	الالتزام بالمواعيد	phrase ⁽ⁿ⁾	عبارة	establish ^(v)	يؤسس
profound ^(adj)	عميق	resource ⁽ⁿ⁾	مورد / مصدر	install ^(v)	يثبت/يركب
central ^(adj)	مركزي	success ⁽ⁿ⁾	نجاح	view ⁽ⁿ⁾	وجهة نظر
knowledge ⁽ⁿ⁾	معرفة	traffic ⁽ⁿ⁾	المروء	treat ^(v)	يعالج/يعامل
knowledgeable ^(adj)	مطلع/ذو معرفة	wealth ⁽ⁿ⁾	ثروة	final ^(adj)	نهائي
efficient ^(adj)	فعال / كفء	reasons ⁽ⁿ⁾	أسباب	sincerely ^(adv)	بإخلاص
inefficient ^(adj)	غير فعال	bank account ⁽ⁿ⁾	حساب بنكي	quarterly ^(adv)	ربع سنوي
identify ^(v)	يحدد / يتعرف على	social media ⁽ⁿ⁾	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	actually ^(adv)	في الواقع
intense ^(adj)	شديد	prove ^(v)	يثبت/يرهن	formal ^(adj)	رسمي
failure ⁽ⁿ⁾	فشل	projects ⁽ⁿ⁾	مشاريع	informal ^(adj)	غير رسمي
skilled ^(adj)	ماهر	department ⁽ⁿ⁾	قسم	unhappiness ⁽ⁿ⁾	حزن
patience ⁽ⁿ⁾	صبر	aim ⁽ⁿ⁾	هدف	entire ^(adj)	كامل
distractions ⁽ⁿ⁾	مشتتات	impact ^(v/n)	تأثير	polish ^(v/n)	صقل / تحسين / تلميع
struggle ^(v/n)	يكافح / كفاح	progress ⁽ⁿ⁾	تقدم	slide ⁽ⁿ⁾	شريحة
improvement ⁽ⁿ⁾	تحسين	achievement ⁽ⁿ⁾	إنجاز	important ^(adj)	مهم
due in	مستحق خلال / موعده خلال	visual aids ⁽ⁿ⁾	وسائل بصرية	conclusion ⁽ⁿ⁾	الخاتمة / الاستنتاج

Collocations

prove reliability	يثبت الموثوقية	increase productivity	يزيد الإنتاجية
ensure lifespan	يضمن العمر الافتراضي	master productivity	يتقن الإنتاجية
achieve goals	يحقق الأهداف	affect productivity	يؤثر على الإنتاجية
check social media	يتفقد وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	set a deadline	يحدد الموعد النهائي
plan breaks	يخطط لفترات الاستراحة	waste time	يهدر الوقت
take breaks	يأخذ فترات راحة	follow habits	يتبع العادات
show commitment	يظهر الالتزام	stay efficient	يبقى فعالاً

Expressions & Prepositions

invest in your future	تستثمر في مستقبلك	Sincere apologies	اعتذارات صادقة
submit their project to	يقدمون مشروعاتهم إلى	fewer disappointments	خيبرات أمل أقل
apologize for	يعتذر عن (شيء)	firm deadlines	مواعيد نهائية صارمة
apologize to	يعتذر لـ (شخص)	time is gone	مضى الوقت
professional setting	بيئة مهنية	quarterly review	مراجعة ربع سنوية
time-management plan	خطة لتنظيم الوقت	professional habits	عادات مهنية
time is money	الوقت ثمن كالمال	consistent morning routine	روتين صباحي ثابت
keep your focus sharp	حافظ على تركيزك حاداً	lack of punctuality	عدم الالتزام بالمواعيد
scheduling app	تطبيق جدولة		

Definitions

disappointment	خيبة أمل	► a feeling of unhappiness when hopes are not met
master	يتقن شيء	► to become very skilled or knowledgeable in something
organized	منظم	► well planned and neatly arranged
resource	مورد / مصدر	► something helpful that can be used to achieve an aim
sharp	حاد (في الذكاء أو الانتباه)	► quick to understand and able to focus well

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym
apology	اعتذار	excuse, regret, remorse	blame, accusation, denial
well-organized	منظم جيداً	systematic, methodical, Neat	disorganized, chaotic, messy
well-planned	مخطط له جيداً	strategized, organized, thought-out	haphazard, unplanned, disorganized
disappointment	خيبة أمل	displeasure, regret, frustration	satisfaction, joy, contentment
neatly arranged	مرتب بشكل منظم	well-ordered, tidy, organized	messy, disordered, cluttered
firm	ثابت	Strong, Steady, resolute	weak, uncertain, flexible
master	يتقن	perfect, excel, specialize	fail, struggle, mismanage
commitment	التزام	dedication, obligation, pledge	indifference, apathy, negativity
long-term	طويل المدى	extended, lasting, perpetual	short-term, temporary, fleeting
reliability	الاعتمادية	dependability, trustworthiness, consistency	unreliability, Inconsistency, uncertainty
sharp	حاد أو ذكي	keen, acute, quick-witted	dull, slow, blunt
professional	محترف	expert, specialist, master	amateur, novice, beginner
efficiency	كفاءة	effectiveness, competence, productivity	inefficiency, wastage, sluggishness

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
manage	يدير	management	إدارة	managerial	إداري
lead	يقود	leadership	القيادة	leading	قيادي
earn	يكسب	earning	الكسب	earned	مكتسب
mean	يعني	meaning	المعنى	meaningful	ذو معنى
apologize	يركز	apology	اعتذار	apologetic	اعتذاري / مبدأ أسف
accept	يقبل	acceptance	قبول	acceptable	مقبول
rely	يعتمد	reliable	موثوق / يعتمد عليه	reliability	الموثوقية / الاعتمادية



Language Notes



Notice the Difference

productivity	إنتاجية	↔	activity	نشاط
recent	حديث	↔	recently	مؤخراً
prove	يثبت	↔	proof	دليل
commitment	التزام	↔	comment	تعليق
profession	مهنة	↔	professor	أستاذ جامعي
patient	مريض / صبور	↔	patience	صبر
deadline	موعد نهائي	↔	headline	عنوان رئيسي
account	حساب	↔	count	يعد
break	يكسر / استراحة	↔	brake	فرامل
habit	عادة	↔	habitat	موطن طبيعي
famous	مشهور	↔	fame	شهرة
expert	خبير	↔	export	يصدر
department	قسم / إدارة	↔	apartment	شقة
entire	كامل	↔	enter	يدخل

stress, stressed & stressful

stress	ضغط	▶ Work-related stress can affect your health.
stressed	متوتر / مضغوط	▶ She felt stressed before the exam.
stressful	مجهّد / مليء بالضغط	▶ It was a stressful day at the office.

manage, manager & management

manage	يدير / يتحكم	▶ He can manage his team effectively.
manager	مدير	▶ The manager called a meeting to discuss the project.
management	إدارة	▶ Good management is key to the company's success.

"Time is Money"

If you manage your time well, how can it help you reach your most important goals?

Time is Money

The famous **phrase**⁽¹⁾, "Time is money," means that time is a **valuable**⁽²⁾ **resource**⁽³⁾ that, if managed well, can lead to **success**⁽⁴⁾ and wealth. Unlike money, which you can earn back, lost time is gone forever.

This idea is **central**⁽⁵⁾ to good time **management**⁽⁶⁾. When you are organized, you reduce **stress**⁽⁷⁾ and increase your **productivity**⁽⁸⁾.

To value your time, you must **treat**⁽⁹⁾ it like money in your bank **account**⁽¹⁰⁾. **Experts**⁽¹¹⁾ suggest that if you start managing your time today, by this time next year, you will have achieved your most important goals. Wasting time often happens because we don't plan. For example, spending hours checking **social media**⁽¹²⁾ or starting too many **tasks**⁽¹³⁾ at once is simply not **efficient**⁽¹⁴⁾. However, if you set firm **deadlines**⁽¹⁵⁾ now, by the end of the month, you will have finished all your difficult **projects**⁽¹⁶⁾.

Finally, take short, planned breaks to keep your focus sharp. By valuing and managing your time, you invest in your future and **ensure**⁽¹⁷⁾ a longer, happier **lifespan**⁽¹⁸⁾. If you follow these habits, by the time you **graduate**⁽¹⁹⁾, you will have mastered the art of productivity, **leading to**⁽²⁰⁾ more time for important things and fewer **disappointments**⁽²¹⁾.



- (١) عبارة
- (٢) قيم / ثمن
- (٣) مورد
- (٤) نجاح
- (٥) أساسي / محور
- (٦) إدارة الوقت
- (٧) توتر / ضغط
- (٨) إنتاجية
- (٩) يتعامل
- (١٠) حساب
- (١١) الخبراء
- (١٢) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
- (١٣) مهام
- (١٤) كلف
- (١٥) الموعد النهائي
- (١٦) مشروعات
- (١٧) يؤكد
- (١٨) فترة الحياة
- (١٩) يتخرج
- (٢٠) يؤدي إلى
- (٢١) خيبات الأمل



Listening



Mazen and Ziad are planning their final school project which is **due in**⁽¹⁾ **two weeks**

- | | | |
|--------------|---|-----------------|
| Mazen | We need to hurry, Ziad! By the time we meet our teacher on Thursday, we will have spent three weeks on this project, and we still haven't finished the conclusion ⁽²⁾ . | مستحق خلال |
| Ziad | Don't worry. I have a plan. By tomorrow evening, I will have completed all the research ⁽³⁾ for the final chapter. | الخاتمة |
| Mazen | That's good, but what about the design? By the time you finish the research, will you have started the PowerPoint slides ⁽⁴⁾ ? | البحث |
| Ziad | Yes. Actually ⁽⁵⁾ , by Friday morning, I will have designed all the visual aids ⁽⁶⁾ too. | شرائح |
| Mazen | I hope so. I'm worried about the printing. If we wait until Monday, the shop will have closed for the holiday. | في الحقيقة |
| Ziad | You're right. I will have printed everything by Sunday afternoon, then. | الوسائل البصرية |
| Mazen | Great! If we work hard this weekend, we will have polished ⁽⁷⁾ the entire ⁽⁸⁾ presentation before the deadline ⁽⁹⁾ . | صقل / حسن |
| Ziad | By the time the other students start their work on Monday morning, we will have submitted ⁽¹⁰⁾ ours to the principal ⁽¹¹⁾ . | كامل / بالكامل |
| Mazen | Perfect. By then, we will have earned a long rest! | الموعد النهائي |



Exercise 04

Key Vocabulary

1. When you are organized, you reduce stress and increase your S3
 a. poverty b. productivity c. laziness d. lateliness
2. The of the school ensures that all students follow the rules strictly.
 a. president b. gardener c. principal d. candidate
3. You should your project by the end of the day to meet the deadline.
 a. submit b. transmit c. infect d. Invent
4. Being allows you to manage your time and tasks efficiently.
 a. badly-paid b. well-known c. well-dressed d. well-organized
5. A meeting helps the team achieve goals and move forward quickly.
 a. productive b. descriptive c. prophetic d. predictive
6. A strategy can make a significant difference in reaching your objectives.
 a. badly-built b. badly-maintained c. well-planned d. well-dressed
7. He worked hard to the art of public speaking and became a great speaker.
 a. exercise b. train c. master d. balance
8. the deadline caused a lot of among the team members. They were totally upset.
 a. excitement b. enjoyment c. appointment d. disappointment
9. Long-term to a healthy lifestyle is key to maintaining good health.
 a. confusion b. commitment c. development d. connection
10. Increasing in the workplace can lead to better results with fewer resources.
 a. efficiency b. fluency c. emergency d. inefficiency
11. is an important trait in a team member, ensuring tasks are completed on time.
 a. Reliability b. Cruelty c. Dishonesty d. Disappointment
12. A mind helps solve problems faster and make better decisions at work.
 a. negative b. foolish c. sharp d. passive
13. The for submitting the report is tomorrow evening, so we need to hurry.
 a. deadline b. timeline c. temperature d. headline
14. skills are essential for balancing work and personal life effectively.
 a. Time-ignoring b. Time-wasting c. Time-management d. Time-seeking
15. A attitude at work helps build trust and respect among colleagues.
 a. fake b. fictional c. professional d. unlawful
16. A/An can go a long way in repairing damaged relationships and sudden misunderstandings.
 a. geology b. biology c. energy d. apology
17. The office looks, making it easier to concentrate and work effectively.
 a. neatly arranged b. half-organized c. over-crowded d. badly-organized
18. The for the project was clearly outlined in the meeting yesterday.
 a. borderline b. sideline c. timeline d. frontline
19. is a feeling of unhappiness when hopes are not met. S3
 a. Appointment b. Disappointment c. Environment d. Encouragement
20. It is thought that regular exercise and a balanced diet can increase your
 a. mind b. length c. size d. lifespan

21. means to become very skilled or knowledgeable in something. S3
 a. Register b. Foster c. Master d. Maintain
22. means well planned and neatly arranged. S3
 a. Negative b. Organized c. Healthy d. Unhealthy
23. means quick to understand and able to focus well. S3
 a. Fast b. Cheap c. Sharp d. Charm



Exercise 04 Main Vocabulary

24. To value your time, you must treat it like money in your bank..... S3
 a. amount b. account c. calculation d. branch
25. is essential for building a professional reputation in the workplace.
 a. Punctuality b. Disappointment c. Carelessness d. Disruption
26. The speaker gave a speech that inspired many people to change their mindset.
 a. foolish b. useless c. weak d. profound
27. She is a teacher who can explain complex concepts in a simple and clear way.
 a. helpless b. inexpensive c. ignorant d. knowledgeable
28. An system can help save both time and money in the long run.
 a. efficient b. inefficient c. irregular d. illegal
29. Avoiding helps maintain focus and efficiency when working on important tasks.
 a. clarity b. distractions c. management d. commitment
30. Continuous is key to staying competitive in the field of industry.
 a. difference b. carelessness c. disappointment d. improvement
31. The of completing the project on time was celebrated by the whole team.
 a. achievement b. disability c. pressure d. disaster
32. Despite the challenges, he continues to to meet his goals and be proud of himself.
 a. spoil b. struggle c. summarize d. guess
33. The is working on the new product launch scheduled for next month.
 a. apartment b. adventure c. departure d. department
34. in the workplace can lead to reduced productivity and low morale.
 a. Unhappiness b. Happiness c. Cooperation d. commitment
35. can sometimes teach us more than success as it helps us learn from our mistakes.
 a. Fiction b. foundation c. failure d. Furniture
36. We need to address the process that's causing the project delays.
 a. wonderful b. inefficient c. efficient d. effective
37. It's important to the root cause of the problem before taking action.
 a. identify b. critical c. fictional d. fake
38. He is a designer, able to bring innovative ideas to life quickly.
 a. negative b. limited c. skilled d. infected
39. The team contributed to the success of the project by working together.
 a. isolated b. unhealthily c. careless d. entire
40. Acquiring in your field helps you make informed decisions at work.
 a. knowledge b. inattention c. ignorance d. stupidity

41. They decided to a new software to improve efficiency in the department.
a. retell b. sail c. install d. drive
42. Clearly, Water is a vital for both survival and agricultural production.
a. difference b. resource c. force d. stream
43. Spending time on learning new skills is a valuable in yourself.
a. connection b. investment c. communication d. intention
44. It's important to clear guidelines for any new step or project.
a. polish b. publish c. spread d. establish
45. The project report is in three days, so we must work very hard together carefully.
a. result b. due c. come d. gone
46. Please include a clear in your presentation to explain all the main ideas visually.
a. sight b. side c. slide d. blinde
47. We need urgently to our report carefully before submitting it to the teacher.
a. apologize b. capture c. refresh d. polish
48. Using visual during the lesson helps students understand complicated concepts .
a. aids b. needs c. messages d. cases
49. The of the essay summarizes the main points and presents a final argument .
a. introduction b. conclusion c. body d. middle
50. I decided to my time in improving my English. R4
a. invest b. master c. install d. prove
51. Setting clear goals helps students achieve in life. R4
a. success b. delay c. failure d. weakness



Exercise 04

Expressions, Prepositions,
Derivatives & Language Notes

52. By focusing on efficiency, you can productivity and achieve better results.
a. prove b. master c. believe d. make
53. You need to a deadline to ensure that the project is completed on time.
a. do b. stay c. set d. take
54. To succeed in any field, you must commitment to your work and long-term goals.
a. affect b. connect c. make d. show
55. It's essential to efficient by eliminating distractions and focusing on priority tasks.
a. stay b. Remove c. Practice d. prevent
56. It's important to breaks throughout the day to maintain high energy levels.
a. make b. plan c. remind d. give
57. Poor time management can productivity and lead to missed deadlines.
a. affect b. ignore c. recognize d. neglect
58. Implementing efficient systems can help productivity across the company.
a. follow b. increase c. face d. make
59. Regular exercise and proper nutrition are essential to lifespan and well-being.
a. capture b. reassure c. ensure d. resign
60. breaks regularly to recharge your mind and improve your productivity.
a. Sit b. Take c. Make d. Tell

61. Apologizing being late shows that you are responsible and care about others' time.
a. about b. with c. on d. for
62. Once time is, you cannot get it back, so it's essential to use it wisely.
a. gone b. done c. fallen d. made
63. It's important to invest your education to improve your career opportunities.
a. about b. in c. on d. for
- Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.**
64. He made an apology for being late. The synonym of "apology" is
a. excuse b. doubtful c. regret d. complain e. thanks
65. She keeps her notes well-organized. The synonym of "well-organized" is
a. tidy b. messy c. chaotic d. ordered e. collected
66. He behaved in a professional way. The antonym of "professional" is
a. skilled b. careless c. expert d. amateur e. qualified
67. The new system improves efficiency. The synonym of "efficiency" is
a. effectiveness b. productivity c. waste d. weakness e. laziness
68. They have a long-term plan. The antonym of "long-term" is
a. lasting b. short-term c. temporary d. endless e. permanent
69. He is known for his reliability. The synonym of "reliability" is
a. trustworthiness b. dependability c. honesty d. weakness e. carelessness
70. He felt disappointment after failing the exam. The antonym of "disappointment" is
a. sadness b. pleasure c. regret d. joy e. happiness
71. The manager is firm with his decisions. The antonym of "firm" is
a. boring b. strong c. flexible d. soft e. strict
72. She showed commitment to her work. The synonym of "commitment" is
a. dedication b. carelessness c. neglect d. loyalty e. indifference
73. The books are neatly arranged on the shelf. The synonym of "neatly arranged" is
a. organized b. disordered c. scattered d. tidy e. messy
74. She gave a sharp answer. The synonym of "sharp" is
a. blunt b. quick c. slow d. dull e. intelligent

رسالة اعتذار رسمية

A Formal Apology Letter

Definition of a formal apology letter

- ★ A letter written to politely say sorry for a mistake in a professional or serious situation.

رسالة تكتب للاعتذار بطريقة مهذبة عن خطأ في موقف رسمي أو جاد.

A Formal Apology Letter

1) Use Formal Greeting and Closing:

استخدم تحية وختام رسمية

- ★ (e.g., Dear Ms. Sara, / Sincerely,)

مثال: عزيزتي السيدة سارة، / مع خالص التحية

2) State the Reason Clearly:

اذكر السبب بوضوح

- ★ Directly say what you are apologizing for in the first paragraph.

قل مباشرة ما الذي تعتذر عنه في الفقرة الأولى

3) Acknowledge the Impact:

اعترف بالتأثير

- ★ Explain why your lateness was wrong (e.g., disruption, disrespect).

اشرح لماذا كان تأخرك خطأ (مثل: إحداث اضطراب، قلة احترام)

4) Promise Action:

وعد بالإجراء

- ★ State clearly how you will change your behavior.

وضح بجلاء كيف ستغير سلوكك

The difference between a formal and an informal apology letter

الفرق بين خطاب الاعتذار الرسمي وغير الرسمي

Aspect	الجانب	Formal Apology	الاعتذار الرسمي	Informal Apology	الاعتذار غير الرسمي
Purpose	الغرض	Professional, serious	مهني أو جاد	Personal, casual	شخصي أو غير رسمي
Tone	النبرة	Polite, respectful	مهذب، محترم	Friendly, relaxed	ودي، مرن
Language	اللغة	Full sentences, formal vocabulary	جمل كاملة، مفردات رسمية	Simple, casual, sometimes slang	بسيطة، عامية أحياناً
Phrases	العبارات	"I sincerely apologize.." "Please accept my apologies.."	"أعتذر بصدق" "يرجى قبول اعتذاري..."	"Sorry about that!" "My bad!"	"!أسف على ذلك" "!غلطي"
Situations	المواقف	Work mistakes, academic issues	أخطاء في العمل أو الدراسة	Friends, family, casual social situations	أصدقاء، عائلة، مواقف اجتماعية بسيطة

Writing Task

Write a formal apology letter to your school Principal, Ms. Sara, apologizing for being late to school three times this week.



Exercise Ph

Writing

- A formal apology is usually written as a
 a. litter b. letter c. story d. note
- Which of the following is an example of a formal closing in an apology letter?
 a. See ya! b. Sincerely, c. Bye for now d. Later!
- What is the first thing you should do in an apology letter?
 a. Describe unrelated events b. State the reason for the apology
 c. Promise action at the end d. Ask questions
- A formal apology is used in situations.
 a. funny b. professional c. casual d. friendly
- A formal apology letter should start with a greeting.
 a. formal b. casual c. friendly d. short
- The reason for apologizing is written at the of the letter.
 a. end b. outside c. middle d. beginning
- A formal apology letter should end with a closing.
 a. funny b. polite c. short d. formal
- The language in a formal apology letter should be
 a. slang b. rude c. polite d. careless
- "I sincerely apologize" is an example of language.
 a. informal b. formal c. friendly d. funny
- A formal apology letter explains the of the mistake.
 a. impact b. joke c. color d. size
- A apology letter includes a promise to change behavior.
 a. informal b. formal c. friendly d. funny
- Slang words should be in a formal apology letter.
 a. added b. avoided c. ignored d. copied
- A formal apology letter shows and respect.
 a. care b. humor c. anger d. politeness
- A formal apology letter is usually written for matters.
 a. funny b. personal c. simple d. serious
- "Sincerely" is a closing.
 a. casual b. formal c. friendly d. short
- Directly apologizing in the first paragraph makes your message more
 a. clear b. hidden c. confusing d. optional
- A formal apology letter avoids language.
 a. slang b. advice c. clear d. formal



General Exercises

on

Unit

12



A

Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the (2) correct answers out of the (5) options given:

- He is known for his reliability, but sometimes he fails to meet deadlines. The antonym of "reliability" is
a. carelessness b. trustworthiness c. dependability d. honesty e. negligence
- The trip was well-planned. The synonym of "well-planned" is
a. random b. careless c. prepared d. organized e. random

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The If you are, you will find that you have less stress in your daily life. 53
a. anxious b. worried c. confused d. organized
- By managing your time well, you are actually making a/an in your future.
a. invest b. investment c. investor d. investing
- The school organized a for students who won awards.
a. nightmode b. celebrity c. celebration d. cooperation
- She arrives early to class to avoid missing any important lesson.
a. exceptionally b. consistently c. Irregularly d. partially
- He worked hard to reliability in his role as a team leader.
a. feel b. fail c. pave d. prove
- is important when dealing with long-term projects that require attention to detail.
a. Disruption b. Disappointment c. Patience d. impatience
- By the time I get home, mother lunch. ابوكبير ٢٠٢٢
a. will have prepared b. prepared c. prepares d. will prepare
- Maryam reading the new novel by next Monday. القوصية ٢٠٢٢
a. will finish b. will be finished c. finished d. will have finished
- The government out a lot of projects by the end of 2030. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
a. had carried b. carrying c. carry d. will have carried
- By this time next month, I finished all my exams. ميت غمر ٢٠٢٤ المنيا ٢٠٢٢
a. had b. will have c. have d. will be
- A apology letter is not used with close friends.
a. narrative b. informal c. formal d. familiar
- When should you state the reason for your apology in a letter?
a. In the first paragraph directly b. Only in the closing
c. After talking about unrelated topics d. Never mention it

B

Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

١٨٠

Bridges are crucial links that carry cars, trucks and trains across bodies of water, mountains or other roads. As a result, they are one of the most important aspects of civil engineering. Bridge collapses can be tragic events, leading to loss of life and serious property damage. That's why bridge engineers, designers and builders must always take their jobs very seriously. The best way for them to prevent these accidents is to understand why bridges collapse in the first place. Understanding bridge collapses can lead to major changes in the design, construction and safety of future building projects. Historically, more bridges were made of wood and were much more susceptible to fire. This was particularly true of old-fashioned train bridges, where the spark created by the steel wheels and steel tracks could

sometimes cause a bridge to catch fire and burn to the ground. A large number of bridge accidents occur during the construction of the bridge itself. These accidents are often due to an error made by the engineers. The bridge collapses under its own weight, and this can be deadly for the workers on it at the time. Earthquakes damage all structures, including bridges. Luckily, this kind of collapse is relatively infrequent, especially with modern bridges. Engineers have learned to design bridges in earthquake zones on areas that are much more resistant to movement. The best way to avoid bridge failures is to plan for them. Modern technologies that can detect structural weakness, safer working environments and better designs can all help to reduce these terrible accidents.

- Why are bridges considered so important according to the article?
 - They are important parts of a transportation network.
 - They cost a lot of money.
 - When they collapse it's a serious problem.
 - They sometimes collapse.
- Which of the following is not mentioned as a defect in bridge construction?
 - A badly made part.
 - Mistakes of designers or engineers.
 - Poor-quality materials.
 - Fires and earthquakes.
- How can the people who make bridges stop collapses?
 - By studying for longer at university.
 - By studying the reasons for a collapse.
 - By asking engineering experts to check their work.
 - By spending more money.
- Which of the following reasons is given as the cause of a bridge catching fire?
 - The contact between train tracks and train wheels.
 - A lightning strike.
 - Smoking on board the train.
 - The extreme heat of a train.
- What role can modern technology have in reducing bridge accidents?
 - It can stop human error.
 - It can detect weak spots in the construction.
 - It can save effort and reduce cost.
 - It can select higher-quality materials.
- Which is an example of an error during construction?
 - The bridge catches fire.
 - A mistake is made in the design.
 - There is a natural disaster.
 - A train or boat crash.
- How common is it for an earthquake to destroy a bridge?
 - Very common in earthquake zone.
 - Very common.
 - Relatively common.
 - Relatively uncommon.

C

Writing

- Development of industry and agriculture is our only hope for increasing the national income and raising the standard of living for all members of the society.

- تنمية الصناعة والثقافة أملنا الوحيد لزيادة الدخل القومي ورفع مستوى المعيشة لجميع أفراد المجتمع.
 - تنمية الصناعة والزراعة أملنا الوحيد لزيادة الدخل القومي ورفع مستوى المعيشة لجميع أفراد المجتمع.
 - تنمية الصناعة والزراعة أملنا الوحيد لزيادة الدخل الدولي ورفع مستوى المعيشة لجميع أفراد المجتمع.
 - تنمية الصناعة والزراعة أملنا الوحيد لزيادة الدخل القومي ورفع مستوى المعيشة لجميع أفراد المجتمع.
٩. عندما يتمتع الناس بالحرية، يمكنهم تحقيق التقدم في جميع المجالات. ومع ذلك، فإن الحرية ليست مطلقة.

- When people have free, they can achieve progress in all fields. However, freedom is not absolute.
- When people are free, they can achieve progress in all fields. However, freedom is not absolutely.
- When people are free, they can do progress in all fields. However, freedom is not absolute.
- When people are free, they can achieve progress in all fields. However, freedom is not absolute.

Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

- We will finish lunch before the meeting starts. (will have)
- The team will score a goal before the match ends. (by the time)

Answer the following questions:

- What two financial gains did Fogg grant Passepartout after winning the wager?
- Explain the error Fogg and the others made regarding the International Date Line.

Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic: "Time is money"

4

Units (10, 11 & 12)



A

Vocabulary

1) Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

- "Finding your passion can increase your motivation." The synonym of motivation is
a. encouragement b. drive c. boredom d. laziness e. weakness
- "Eating healthy food helps maintain good nutrition." The meaning of nutrition is
a. proper diet b. healthy eating c. illness d. starvation e. hunger
- "Regular exercise helps people stay fit." The opposite of fit is
a. healthy b. strong c. weak d. tired e. active
- "Being punctual shows respect for others time." The antonym of punctual is
a. late b. on time c. tardy d. careful e. fast
- "People must not ignore their mental health." The meaning of ignore is
a. forget b. neglect c. care d. obey e. include

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- A person who knows what they enjoy doing has found their
a. routine b. passion c. schedule d. habit
- Drinking enough water is part of a lifestyle .
a. careless b. healthy c. stressful d. lazy
- Being late to school every day shows poor
a. nutrition b. punctuality c. fitness d. talent
- Finding your passion helps you stay and focused on your goals.
a. motivated b. delayed c. confused d. careless
- Getting enough sleep helps students feel more during the day.
a. energetic b. bored c. exhausted d. careless
- Healthy habits can prevent many problems.
a. health b. timetable c. traffic d. social
- Planning your tasks helps you use your time
a. effectively b. suddenly c. accidentally d. slowly
- I decided to my time in improving my English.
a. invest b. master c. install d. prove
- Setting clear goals helps students achieve in life.
a. success b. delay c. failure d. weakness

B

Language

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- She jogging every morning to stay healthy.
a. used to b. uses to c. is used to d. was used
- I expect we all the work by five o'clock this evening,
a. will have been done b. will have done
c. will be done d. will be doing

12. By the time my father comes home, I my research for three hours.
 a. will have done b. will do c. have done d. had been done
13. When I was in primary school, I to school on foot.
 a. used to going b. would go c. use to go d. would be going
14. If you sleep early, you feel energetic in the morning.
 a. would b. will c. had d. were
15. Students follow healthy habits to stay active and focused,
 a. are supposed to b. used to c. will have d. are using
16. By the end of this month, she a whole daily study schedule,
 a. completes b. will complete c. will have completed d. has completed
17. You submit the project on time, or you may lose marks.
 a. are able to b. are supposed to c. were used to d. will have

2) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

18. Will you finish the project before it is Friday? (by Friday)
 19. I no longer wake up late on school days. (used to)
 20. She didn't hurt you on purpose. (mean)
 21. She used to hate spicy food, but now she eats it. (got)

Translation

1) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, h, c, or d.

22. Innovation drives progress in communities by solving problems creatively and efficiently together. It encourages young people to develop ideas that improve lives sustainably everywhere.

- أ. يدفع الابتكار التقدم في المجتمعات من خلال حل المشكلات بإبداع وكفاءة معا، ويشجع الشباب على تطوير أفكار تحسن الحياة بشكل مستدام في كل مكان.
 ب. يوقف الابتكار التقدم في المجتمعات من خلال تجاهل المشكلات تماما، ويمنع الشباب من تطوير تفيد الحياة في أي مكان.
 ج. يغير الابتكار المجتمعات دون حل المشكلات بطريقة فعالة، ولا يشجع لشباب على تطوير أفكار تخدم الحياة مستقبلا.
 د. يؤثر الابتكار على المجتمعات من خلال الترفيه فقط، ويجعل الشباب يهتمون تطوير أفكار مفيدة للحياة دائم.

23. Healthy habits protect individuals by improving physical and mental well-being daily. They help societies reduce disease rates and increase productivity over time.

- أ. تؤثر العادات الصحية على الأفراد دون تحسين الصحة الجسدية أو النفسية، وتمنع المجتمعات من تقليل الأمراض أو زيادة الإنتاجية مستقبلا.
 ب. تقتصر العادات الصحية على النشاط البدني فقط، ولا تساعد المجتمعات على تقليل الأمراض أو تحسين الإنتاجية بمرور الزمن.
 ج. تقلل العادات الصحية من راحة الأفراد، ولا تساعد المجتمعات على تقليل الأمراض أو تحسين الإنتاجية بمرور الزمن.
 د. تحمي العادات الصحية الأفراد من خلال تحسين الصحة الجسدية والنفسية يوميا، وتساعد المجتمعات على تقليل معدلات الأمراض وزيادة الإنتاجية مع مرور الوقت.

2) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d.

٢٤. يساعد العمل التطوعي على تقوية الروابط الاجتماعية بين أفراد المجتمع. كما يعلم الشباب تحمل المسؤولية وخدمة الآخرين بإيجابية.

- أ. Voluntary work weakens relationships in society and prevents young people from helping others.

- b. Voluntary work focuses only on personal benefits and ignores social responsibility completely.
- c. Voluntary work helps strengthen social bonds among community members. It also teaches young people to take responsibility and serve others positively.
- d. Voluntary work limits cooperation between people and discourages positive behavior in communities.

٢٥. يساعد احترام الوقت على تنظيم الحياة اليومية وتحقيق الأهداف بكفاءة. كما يعكس الالتزام بالمواعيد احترام الآخرين وتقدير جهودهم.

- a. Respecting time wastes daily life and prevents people from achieving goals. It also affects valuing other and appreciating their efforts.
- b. Respecting time helps organize daily life and achieve goals efficiently. It also reflects valuing others and appreciating their efforts.
- c. Respecting time only affects personal schedules and has no social importance. It also affects valuing others and approaching their efforts.
- d. Respecting time causes stress and makes people ignore others efforts. It also reflects valuing others and approaching their effects.



Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions below.

Being a good citizen is an important responsibility for every individual in society. A good citizen respects laws, cares about others, and works to improve the community. Citizenship is not only about rights, but also about duties that help create a safe and organized society.

One way to be a good citizen is by respecting rules and laws. Following traffic laws, protecting public property, and respecting school rules help maintain order and safety. In addition, good citizens show respect toward others, regardless of their background or opinions. This behavior promotes tolerance and peaceful coexistence.

Another important aspect of good citizenship is participating positively in the community. Volunteering, helping neighbors, and taking part in community activities strengthen social bonds. Citizens should also care about the environment by keeping public places clean and saving natural resources.

Moreover, a good citizen is honest and responsible. Being truthful, completing duties on time, and respecting others' rights build trust within society. Young people, in particular, play a key role in shaping the future by showing positive behavior and good values.

In conclusion, good citizenship is essential for building strong and successful societies. When individuals act responsibly and care about others, they contribute to progress, stability, and a better quality of life for everyone.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The passage mainly discusses
 - a. school discipline
 - b. personal success
 - c. good citizenship
 - d. environmental problems
2. A good citizen should respect
 - a. only family members
 - b. rules and laws
 - c. personal opinions only
 - d. competition
3. Respecting others helps promote
 - a. conflict
 - b. tolerance
 - c. laziness
 - d. confusion
4. One example of positive community participation is
 - a. ignoring neighbors
 - b. breaking rules
 - c. volunteering
 - d. wasting resources

5. Caring about the environment includes
 - a. polluting streets
 - b. damaging public property
 - c. keeping public places clean
 - d. ignoring waste
6. Being honest and responsible helps build
 - a. fear
 - b. punishment
 - c. trust
 - d. delay
7. According to the passage, young people
 - a. have no role in society
 - b. shape the future with their behavior
 - c. should avoid responsibility
 - d. focus only on rights



Writing

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In a formal apology letter, the writer should begin with
 - a. informal greetings
 - b. a clear statement of apology
 - c. personal stories
 - d. jokes and humor
2. A formal apology letter should mainly use
 - a. slang and contractions
 - b. polite and respectful language
 - c. emotional and exaggerated expressions
 - d. short spoken phrases
3. One important element of a formal apology letter is
 - a. blaming others for the mistake
 - b. denying responsibility
 - c. explaining the reason for the apology
 - d. changing the topic
4. In a hobby review, the writer's main purpose is to
 - a. apologize to the reader
 - b. describe and evaluate the hobby
 - c. give instructions only
 - d. complain about free time
5. A good hobby review usually includes
 - a. unrelated personal problems
 - b. reasons why the hobby is enjoyable
 - c. formal complaints
 - d. excuses and apologies
6. The language used in a hobby review should be
 - a. very formal and official
 - b. clear and engaging
 - c. impolite and direct
 - d. unclear and repetitive

2) Write an essay about (150-180) words on: "Planning your time"



The Novel

Answer the following questions.

1. What does the buffalo delay suggest about travel during that period ?
2. Why is burning the ship an extreme but logical decision ?
3. Why is Phileas Fogg's decision to rescue Passepartout important to the story?
4. Why is Passepartout's anger toward Fix significant to the theme of loyalty?



Chapter

7

Arrest and Rescue: Calcutta to Hong Kong Arrival Calcutta

Key Vocabulary

journey ⁽ⁿ⁾	رحلة	law ⁽ⁿ⁾	قانون	determine ^(v)	يحدد
station ⁽ⁿ⁾	محطة	carriage ⁽ⁿ⁾	عربة	fine ⁽ⁿ⁾	غرامة
ship ⁽ⁿ⁾	سفينة	prisoners ⁽ⁿ⁾	سجناء / محتجزون	bail ⁽ⁿ⁾	كفالة
jungle ⁽ⁿ⁾	غابة	judge ⁽ⁿ⁾	قاضي	guilty ^(adj)	مذنب
voyage ⁽ⁿ⁾	رحلة بحرية	courtroom ⁽ⁿ⁾	قاعة محكمة	banknotes ⁽ⁿ⁾	أوراق نقدية
danger ⁽ⁿ⁾	خطر	charge ⁽ⁿ⁾	تهمة	escape ⁽ⁿ⁾	هروب
traveler ⁽ⁿ⁾	مسافر	temple ⁽ⁿ⁾	معبد	dock ⁽ⁿ⁾	ميناء / رصيف
detective ⁽ⁿ⁾	محقق	sacrilege ⁽ⁿ⁾	تدنيس المقدسات	depart ^(v)	يغادر
policemen ⁽ⁿ⁾	رجال شرطة	sentence ⁽ⁿ⁾	حكم / عقوبة	furious ^(adj)	غاضب جدا
arrest ⁽ⁿ⁾	اعتقال	prison ⁽ⁿ⁾	سجن	despair ⁽ⁿ⁾	يأس



Summary

After a long and difficult journey across the jungle, Phileas Fogg, Passepartout, and Aouda arrive in Calcutta on October 25th. They have only one hour before their ship, the Rangoon, leaves for Hong Kong. While Fogg remains calm, Detective Fix appears with policemen and arrests Fogg and Passepartout for an earlier incident in Bombay, when Passepartout entered a temple wearing shoes. They are taken to court and charged with sacrilege. Passepartout is sentenced to prison, and Fogg is also punished as his master. Fix feels confident that the delay will stop Fogg's journey. However, Fogg pays a very large bail without hesitation. The group rushes to the dock and boards the ship just in time. The chapter highlights Fogg's respect for the law, his calm personality, and his belief that saving a human life is more important than time or money.

بعد رحلة طويلة وصعبة عبر الغابة، يصل فيليبس فوج وباسبارتو وأودا إلى كلكتا في ٢٥ أكتوبر لم يكن أمامهم سوى ساعة واحدة قبل أن تغادر السفينة رانجون إلى هونغ كونغ بينما ظل فوج هادئاً، ظهر المحقق فيكس مع رجال الشرطة واعتقل فوج وباسبارتو بسبب حادث سابق في بومبي، عندما دخل باسبارتو معبداً وهو يرتدي حذاءه أخذوا إلى المحكمة واتهموا بتدنيس المقدسات حكم على باسبارتو بالسجن كما عوقب فوج باعتباره سيده شعر فيكس بالثقة بأن هذا التأخير سيوقف رحلة فوج، لكن فوج دفع كفالة كبيرة دون تردد أسرع الثلاثة إلى الميناء وركبوا السفينة في اللحظة الأخيرة يبرز الفصل احترام فوج للقانون وهدوء شخصيته وإيمانه بأن إنقاذ حياة إنسان أهم من الوقت أو المال.



Arrest and Rescue : Calcutta to Hong Kong Arrival Calcutta

القبض والإنقاذ : من كلكتا إلى هونغ كونج - الوصول إلى كلكتا

After a long and difficult journey across the jungle, Mr Fogg, Passepartout, and Aouda finally reached the great city of Calcutta on the afternoon of October 25th. The clock at the station showed exactly four o'clock. Their next ship, the Rangoon, was set to leave for Hong Kong at five. They had only one short hour to spare.

بعد رحلة طويلة وصعبة عبر الغابة، وصل السيد فوج، وباسبارتو، وأودا أخيراً إلى المدينة الكبيرة كلكتا بعد ظهر يوم ٢٥ أكتوبر. أظهرت الساعة في المحطة الساعة الرابعة تماماً. كانت سفينتهم التالية، رانجون، ستغادر إلى هونغ كونج في الخامسة. لم يكن لديهم سوى ساعة قصيرة متبقية.



Fogg, as usual, showed no sign of worry. His first thought was to make sure Aouda would be safely settled for the voyage. The dangers she had escaped in India still weighed heavily on his mind.

أما فوج، وكعادته، فلم يظهر أي علامة على القلق. وكان أول ما خطر بباله هو التأكد من أن أودا ستكون في أمان ومستقرة خلال الرحلة. فقد كانت الأخطار التي نجت منها في الهند ما تزال تشغل تفكيره بشدة.

Just as the three travelers stepped outside the station, Detective Fix, following closely behind two policemen, approached them.

وبمجرد أن خرج المسافرون الثلاثة من المحطة، اقترب منهم المفتش فيكس، وكان يتبعه عن قرب شرطيان.

"Mr Phileas Fogg?" one of them asked.

السيد فيليبس فوج؟ سأل أحدهم.

"I am he," said Fogg calmly.

أنا هو، قال فوج بهدوء.

"And this man is your servant?"

"وهذا الرجل خادمك؟"

"Yes," Fogg replied.

نعم، أجاب فوج.

"Both of you will come with me."

كلاكما سيأتي معي.

Passepartout opened his mouth to protest, but the officer raised his truncheon, and Fogg quietly walked to him to stay calm. Fogg always respected the law, even when he did not understand the reason.

فتح باسبارتو فمه ليعترض، لكن الضابط رفع هراوته، وسار فوج بهدوء نحوه ليظل هادئاً. فوج كان دائماً يحترم القانون، حتى عندما لم يفهم السبب.

"May this lady come with us?" Fogg asked, referring to Aouda.

"هل يمكن أن تأتي هذه السيدة معنا؟" سأل فوج، مشيراً إلى أودا.

After a moment, the officer agreed, and the three were taken in a heavy carriage through the streets of Calcutta. Fix followed silently, pleased that the events were going exactly as he had hoped.

بعد لحظة، وافق الضابط، وأخذ الثلاثة في عربة ثقيلة عبر شوارع كلكتا تبعهم فيكس بصمت، مسروراً لأن الأحداث كانت تسير تماماً كما كان يأمل.



Sudden Arrest

اعتقال مفاجئ

The carriage stopped at a government building. The travelers were taken into a small room with barred windows.

توقفت العربة عند مبنى حكومي. أخذ المسافرون إلى غرفة صغيرة بها نوافذ محاطة بالحديد.

"You will appear before Judge Obadiali at eight-thirty," the officer announced, and locked the door behind them سوف تمثلون أمام القاضي أوباديالي في الساعة الثامنة والنصف. وأغلق الباب خلفهم

Passepartout threw himself into a chair "We are prisoners! But what have we done?"

ألقي باسبارتو بنفسه على كرسي نحن سجناء! لكن ماذا فعلنا؟

Aouda, distressed, turned to Fogg "This is my fault," she said "It is for saving me that you have been put in danger Please leave me to my fate"

أودا، مضطربة، التفتت إلى فوج هذا خطاي. قالت لقد تعرضت للخطر لإنقاذي أرجوك اتركني لصيري

Fogg, as calm as ever, shook his head "Madam, this arrest is not on your account I will not leave you"

فوج. هادئ كالعادة. هز رأسه سيدتي هذا الاعتقال ليس بسببك لن أتركك

In the corner, Fix watched with satisfaction He knew exactly why they had been arrested: the old incident in Bombay, when Passepartout had entered the Malabar Hill temple wearing shoes, breaking a sacred rule Fix had informed the Calcutta police in the hope that Fogg would be delayed long enough for the warrant from London to arrive

في الزاوية. كان فيكس يراقب برضا كان يعلم بالضبط سبب اعتقالهم الحادثة القديمة في بومبي. عندما دخل باسبارتو معبد مالابار هيل وهو يرتدي حذاء مخالفا قاعدة مقدسة كان فيكس قد أبلغ شرطة كلكتا على أمل أن يتأخر فوج بما فيه الكفاية حتى تصل مذكرة الاعتقال من لندن

Bottom of Form

أمام القاضي

Before the Judge

At half past eight, they were taken into a courtroom filled with people Judge Obadiali entered, followed by his clerk In his hurry, he accidentally took the clerk's wig, causing a brief moment of confusion Passepartout grew nervous as precious minutes ticked away The judge began the case

في الساعة الثامنة والنصف. أخذوا إلى قاعة محكمة مليئة بالناس دخل القاضي أوباديالي، متبوعا بمساعد في عجله. أخذ القاضي عن غير قصد باروكة المساعد. مما سبب لحظة قصيرة من الارتباك أصبح باسبارتو متوترا بينما كانت الدقائق الثمينة تمر بدا القاضي في القضية

"Phileas Fogg?"

فيلياس فوج؟

"Present," said Fogg

حاضر. قال فوج

"Passepartout?"

باسبارتو؟

"Present," the valet replied

حاضر. أجاب الخادم

Three Indian merchants were brought in Passepartout recognized them immediately—they were the same men who had chased him from the temple in Bombay

أحضرت ثلاثة تجار هنود تعرف عليهم باسبارتو على الفور. كانوا نفس الرجال الذين طاردوه من المعبد في بومبي

The clerk read the charge: "Sacrilege committed in a temple at Malabar Hill"

قرأ المساعد التهمة: تدليس ارتكب في معبد في مالابار هيل

Passepartout jumped up "But it was not in Bombay! The crime was at Pillaji—where they were going to rob a woman! These men—!"

قفز باسبارتو من مكانه لكنها لم تكن في بومبي! الجريمة كانت في بيلاجي. حيث كانوا سيقومون بسرقة امرأة! هؤلاء الرجال!

"Pillaji?" the judge repeated "No, sir The crime is in Bombay You entered a holy temple with shoes on"

بيلاجي؟ كرر القاضي لا يا سيدتي الجريمة في بومبي لقد دخلت معبدا مقدسا وأنت ترتدي حذاء

Passepartout froze He suddenly understood "My shoes" he whispered

تجمد باسبارتو فهم فجأة حدثني همس

The clerk held up a pair of worn, dusty shoes—Passepartout's own The room murmured Fix smirked in his corner

رفع المساعد زوجا من الأحذية البالية والمغبرة. حذاء باسبارتو نفسه همس الحضور في الغرفة يتسم فيكس في زاويته

Fogg remained calm "I admit the facts," he said, "but I wish the merchants to admit what they were about to do at the temple of Pillaji"

ظل فوج هادئا اعترف بالحقائق. قال. الكنتي أود أن يعترف التجار بما كانوا على وشك فعله في معبد بيلاجي

The judge looked confused "That has nothing to do with this case" Passepartout sank lower in his seat Fogg checked his watch

نظر القاضي مرتبكا هذا لا علاقة له بهذه القضية انخفض باسبارتو في مقعده تحقق فوج من ساعته



The Sentence

الحكم

Judge Obadiali straightened his papers

"For violating the religious laws of India," he said sternly, "Jean Passepartout is sentenced to fifteen days in prison and a fine of three hundred pounds" Passepartout gasped The judge continued, "Phileas Fogg, as the master of the servant, is equally guilty of complicity You are sentenced to eight days in prison and a fine of one hundred and fifty pounds"

قام القاضي أوباديالي بترتيب أوراقه

"لانتهاك القوانين الدينية في الهند"، قال بصرامة، "يحكم على جان باسبارتو بخمسة عشر يوما في السجن وغرامة قدرها ثلاثمائة جنيه فوج باسبارتو. واصل القاضي، فيليبس فوج، كمالك للخادم، مذب بالمشاركة أيضا يحكم عليك بثمانية أيام في السجن وغرامة قدرها مائة وخمسون جنيه"

The courtroom stirred with shock Fix felt triumphant Eight days in jail would destroy Fogg's entire journey But Fogg stood, opened his travel-bag, and placed a thick packet of banknotes on the clerk's desk "I offer bail," he said simply

تحركت قاعة المحكمة بصدمة شعر فيكس بالنصر ثمانية أيام في السجن كانت ستدمر رحلة فوج بالكامل لكن فوج وقف، وفتح حقيبته، ووضع حزمة سميكة من النقود على مكتب المساعد، عرض كفالة، قال ببساطة

The judge blinked "You have the right to do so, but the amount must be large enough to guarantee your return" "Two thousand pounds," said Fogg

رمش القاضي لك الحق في ذلك، لكن يجب أن يكون المبلغ كبيرا بما يكفي لضمان عودتك "ألفي جنيه، قال فوج

The entire room gasped Even the merchants stared in disbelief The sum was enormous—far more than the fine The judge could not refuse "Bail is accepted," he announced

تنفست الغرفة كلها بصدمة حتى التجار نظروا بدهشة كان المبلغ هائلا — أكثر بكثير من الغرامة لم يتمكن القاضي من الرفض تم قبول الكفالة، أعلن



Escape to the Rangoon

الهرب إلى رانجون

"Let us go," said Fogg quietly

لنذهب، قال فوج بهدوء

They left the courthouse at once and hurried to the dock Fogg paid a coachman extra to race the carriage through the streets The Rangoon was preparing to depart They boarded just in time

غادروا المحكمة على الفور وأسرعوا إلى الرصيف دفع فوج للسائق مبلغا إضافيا لنسابق العربة عبر الشوارع كانت سفينة رانجون تستعد للإبحار ركبوا في الوقت المناسب

The merchants, still furious, arrived moments too late The ship had already begun to move Fix stood on the pier in despair His carefully planned trap had collapsed in seconds He had lost his chance in Calcutta, and if he missed Hong Kong as well, his mission would fail entirely

وصل التجار، لا يزالون غاضبين، بعد لحظات متأخرين جدا كانت السفينة قد بدأت بالفعل بالتحرك وقف فيكس على الرصيف في يأس انهارت فخه المخطط بعناية في ثوانٍ لقد فقد فرصته في كلكتا، وإذا فشل في الوصول إلى هونغ كونج أيضا، فإن مهمته ستفشل تماما

There was only one thing left to do: follow Fogg onto the Rangoon Fix bought a ticket with his own money and boarded the ship at the last moment

لم يتبق سوى شيء واحد للقيام به: اتباع فوج على متن رانجون اشترى فيكس تذكرة من ماله الخاص وركب السفينة في اللحظة الأخيرة



On the Bay of Bengal

في خليج البنغال

As the ship sailed into the Bay of Bengal, Aouda approached Fogg with concern "I hope you do not regret the trouble and cost I have caused," she said softly Fogg replied, "Madam, in saving you, I lost two days I do not regret it A human life is worth more than time or money"

Aouda bowed her head gratefully Passepartout wiped his eyes

Fogg then went below deck to check his log for Hong Kong, unaware that Fix was still following him—and more determined than ever The journey continued

بينما أبحرت السفينة في خليج البنغال، اقتربت أودا من فوج بقلق 'أمل ألا تندم على المتاعب والتكاليف التي سببتها، قالت بهدوء أجاب فوج، سيدتي، في إنقاذك فقدت يومين لا أندم على ذلك حياة الإنسان أغلى من الوقت أو المال' انحنى أودا برأسها امتناناً مسح باسبارتو عينيه ثم ذهب فوج إلى أسفل السفينة ليتحقق من سجله لهونغ كونغ، غير مدرك أن فيكس كان لا يزال يتبعه—وأكثر تصميمًا من أي وقت مضى استمرت الرحلة

Values in This Chapter القيم في هذا الفصل

- ❖ **Respect for the law:** Fogg follows the officers without resistance
 - ❖ **Using wealth responsibly:** Fogg pays an enormous bail to save time and protect his companions
 - ❖ **Moral courage:** Fogg values saving a life more than winning a challenge
 - ❖ **Honesty and responsibility:** Passepartout admits his mistake without hiding behind excuses
- احترام القانون: فوج يتبع الضباط بدون مقاومة
- استخدام الثروة بمسؤولية: فوج يدفع كفالة ضخمة لتوفير الوقت وحماية رفقاءه
- الشجاعة الأخلاقية: فوج يقدر إنقاذ حياة الإنسان أكثر من الفوز بالتحدي
- الصدق والمسؤولية: باسبارتو يعترف بخطئه دون الاختباء وراء الأعذار

Chapter 7 General Exercises

Setbook Questions & Answers



1. Why do you think Phileas Fogg insisted that Aouda remain with him?

لماذا تعتقد أن فيليبس فوج أصر على أن تبقى أودا معه؟

He wanted to protect her because she had no family or safe place.

كان يريد حمايتها لأنها لم يكن لديها عائلة أو مكان آمن

2. How do you think the bail amount changed the mood in the courtroom?

كيف تعتقد أن مبلغ الكفالة غير الجو داخل قاعة المحكمة؟

It surprised everyone and made the atmosphere calmer and hopeful.

فاجأ الجميع وجعل الجو أكثر هدوءًا وأملًا.

3. What does Phileas Fogg's silence in court suggest about his confidence?

ماذا يدل صمت فيليبس فوج في المحكمة على ثقته بنفسه؟

It shows that he was calm and confident about the result.

يدل على أنه كان هادئًا واثقًا من النتيجة

4. How do you think Detective Fix felt when the bail was accepted?

كيف تعتقد أن المحقق فيكس شعر عندما تم قبول الكفالة؟

He felt disappointed and frustrated because his plan failed.

شعر بالإحباط وخيبة الأمل لأن خطته فشلت.

5. Why did Phileas Fogg say that saving a life was worth more than time?

لماذا قال فيليبس فوج إن إنقاذ حياة إنسان أهم من الوقت؟

Because human life is more valuable than winning a bet or saving time.

لأن حياة الإنسان أغلى من كسب رهان أو توفير الوقت.

Critical Thinking Questions



6. Do you think Phileas Fogg was right to remain calm even when he was arrested? Why / why not?
هل تعتقد أن فيليبس فوج كان محقاً في بقاءه هادئاً حتى عند اعتقاله؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟
Yes, because staying calm helped him think clearly and act wisely.
نعم، لأن الهدوء ساعده على التفكير بوضوح والتصرف بحكمة.
7. In your point of view, was Detective Fix justified in arresting Fogg and Passepartout in Calcutta?
من وجهة نظرك، هل كان المحقق فيكس مبرراً في اعتقال فوج وباسبارتو في كلكتا؟
No, because Fix arrested them mainly to delay Fogg's journey.
لا، لأن فيكس اعتقلهما أساساً لتعطيل رحلة فوج.
8. If you were in Fogg's position, would you have paid such a large bail to save time? Why or why not?
إذا كنت في موقف فوج، هل كنت ستدفع كفالة كبيرة لتوفير الوقت؟ لماذا أو لماذا لا؟
Yes, because time was very important for winning the journey.
نعم، لأن الوقت كان مهماً جداً للفوز بالرحلة.
9. What do you think this chapter shows about Fogg's personality and values?
ما رأيك فيما يكشفه هذا الفصل عن شخصية فوج وقيمه؟
It shows that he is calm, respectful of the law, and determined.
يظهر أنه هادئ، يحترم القانون، ومصر.
10. Why do you think Fogg believes that saving a human life is more important than time or money?
لماذا تعتقد أن فوج يرى أن إنقاذ حياة إنسان أهم من الوقت أو المال؟
Because he values humanity and moral principles over material things.
لأنه يقدر الإنسانية والمبادئ الأخلاقية أكثر من الأمور المادية.
11. How can we infer that Fix was trying to delay Fogg's journey on purpose?
كيف يمكننا أن نستنتج أن فيكس كان يحاول تعطيل رحلة فوج عمداً؟
Because he arrested Fogg just before the ship's departure.
لأنه اعتقل فوج قبل مغادرة السفينة مباشرة.
12. Describe Phileas Fogg's reaction to being arrested. What does this calm response reveal about his character?
صف رد فعل فيليبس فوج عند اعتقاله. ماذا يكشف هدوؤه عن شخصيته؟
Fogg remained calm and did not resist, showing he is patient, confident, and respects the law.
ظل فوج هادئاً ولم يقاوم، ما يظهر أنه صبور وواثق ويحترم القانون.
13. Why was the bail amount of £2,000 so significant for both Fogg and the court authorities?
لماذا كانت كفالة بقيمة ٢٠٠٠ جنيه إسترليني مهمة جداً لكل من فوج وسلطات المحكمة؟
The bail was very high, showing Fogg's wealth and convincing the court he would return.
كانت الكفالة كبيرة جداً، ما يوضح ثروة فوج ويقنع المحكمة بأنه سيعود.
14. Why did Aouda feel personally responsible for the trouble Fogg faced in Calcutta?
لماذا شعرت أودا بالمسؤولية الشخصية عن المشاكل التي واجهها فوج في كلكتا؟
She thought Fogg's arrest happened because he saved her life.
كانت تعتقد أن اعتقال فوج حدث لأنه أنقذ حياتها.
15. How does the arrest incident illustrate the dangers and difficulties of traveling under a strict timetable?
كيف يوضح حادث الاعتقال مخاطر وصعوبات السفر ضمن جدول زمني صارم؟
The arrest shows that unexpected delays can threaten the success of a planned journey.
يظهر الاعتقال أن التأخيرات المفاجئة قد تهدد نجاح رحلة مخططة بدقة.

Test Yourself

1. Explain why Fogg was initially confused about the exact nature of the charge against them in court.
2. How did Detective Fix manage to arrange the arrest in Calcutta even though he still lacked the official warrant from London?
3. How did Fix's failure to delay Fogg in Calcutta force him to change his strategy for the rest of the journey?
4. What role did the merchants play in Fix's plan, and how did they react when Fogg secured a quick release by paying bail?
5. How might the story's plot have changed if Fix had actually possessed the official London warrant during the arrest in Calcutta?
6. How does losing £2,000 influence your perception of Fogg's wealth and determination to win the challenge?
7. What does this chapter reveal about the importance of loyalty between Fogg and Passepartout, even when Passepartout's mistake causes serious consequences?
8. Analyze Passepartout's outburst in court (My shoes!). How does this comedic moment affect the tone of the chapter?
9. Fogg paid a large bail instead of serving jail time. Analyze this choice in terms of the ongoing conflict between time and money in the story.
10. Discuss how the trial over the sacrilege charge reflects themes of colonial law and cultural misunderstanding.
11. What was Fogg's exact destination, and what departure time was he urgently trying to meet when leaving the court?
12. What does Fogg's calm acceptance of Fix's continued presence on the Rangoon suggest about his psychological state and confidence?
13. Contrast Passepartout's emotional reaction during the arrest with Fogg's calm behavior.
14. Evaluate Fix's actions in Calcutta. Was he simply performing his duty, or did his behavior cross into unethical conduct?
15. What humanitarian explanation did Fogg give to Aouda for the time he lost in India?



Chapter

8

Deception and Departure: Hong Kong and Yokohama

Key Vocabulary

voyage (n)	رحلة	drug (n)	مخدر / مادة منومة	delay (n)	تأخير
schedule (n)	جدول زمني	captain (n)	قبطان	trust (n)	ثقة
responsibility (n)	مسؤولية	danger (n)	خطر	challenge (n)	تحدي
crisis (n)	أزمة	loyalty (n)	ولاء	dedication (n)	التفاني
accusation (n)	اتهام	panicked (adj)	مذعور	bravery (n)	الشجاعة
confess (v)	يعترف	missed (adj)	فائت / تم تفويته	calmness (n)	الهدوء
storm (n)	عاصفة	detective (n)	محقق	concern (n)	قلق / اهتمام
rescue (v)	إنقاذ	payment (n)	دفعة / مبلغ مدفوع	identity (n)	هوية
reunion (n)	لم الشمل	signal (n)	إشارة	steamer (n)	سفينة بخارية
determination (n)	إصرار	separation (n)	فصل / انفصال	stowaway (n)	راكب خفي



Summary



Phileas Fogg, Aouda, Passepartout, and Detective Fix sailed on the Rangoon toward Hong Kong, but rough weather delayed them, making them one day late. Fogg's first concern was Aouda's safety, but her cousin had moved away, so she became a permanent member of the journey. The next ship to Yokohama, the Carnatic, had already sailed, and the next would leave in eight days. Fix revealed his identity to Passepartout, accused Fogg of robbing the Bank of England, and drugged him to delay warning Fogg. Unaware, Fogg hired a small pilot boat, the Tankadere, offering a huge sum to reach Shanghai in four days to intercept the American steamer General Grant. During the stormy voyage, Fix joined secretly. Passepartout accidentally became a stowaway on the Carnatic. Eventually, Fogg, Aouda, and Passepartout reunited in Yokohama and secured passage to San Francisco, continuing their adventurous journey.

أبحر فيليبس فوج وأودا وباسبارتو والمحقق فيكس على السفينة رانجون نحو هونغ كونغ. لكن الطقس العاصف أخرهم فوصلوا متأخرين بيوم واحد أول اهتمام فوج كان سلامة أودا، لكن ابن عمها قد انتقل، فأصبحت جزءاً دائماً من الرحلة السفينة التالية إلى يوكوهاما، الكارناتيك، كانت قد أبحرت بالفعل، والسفينة التالية ستغادر بعد ثمانية أيام كشف فيكس هويته لباسبارتو، واتهم فوج بسرقة بنك إنجلترا، ووضع مخدراً له لتأجيل تحذير فوج فوج، غير مدرك، استأجر سفينة صغيرة، تانكادير، ودفع مبلغاً كبيراً للوصول إلى شانغهاي في أربعة أيام لاعتراض الباخرة الأمريكية الجنرال جرانت خلال الرحلة العاصفة، انضم فيكس سراً إليهم أصبح باسبارتو بطريق الخطأ مسافراً خفياً على الكارناتيك في النهاية، اجتمع فوج وأودا وباسبارتو في يوكوهاما وحصلوا على تذاكر إلى سان فرانسيسكو، مواصلة رحلتهم المليئة بالمغامرات



The Voyage on the Rangoon

رحلة على متن السفينة رانجون

The steamship Rangoon, carrying Phileas Fogg, Aouda, Passepartout, and the persistent Detective Fix, cut across the Bay of Bengal toward the South China Sea. The voyage was planned to take eleven days. From the moment they left Calcutta, Fogg knew he had lost exactly two days. As always, he remained calm, recording every delay accurately. Aouda, now officially part of the group, was increasingly impressed by his calmness and sense of duty.

أبحرت السفينة البخارية رانجون حاملة فيليبس فوج وأودا وباسبارتو والمحقق المثابر فيكس عبر خليج البنغال نحو بحر الصين الجنوبي. كانت الرحلة مخططة لتستغرق أحد عشر يوماً منذ لحظة مغادرتهم كالكويتا، علم فوج أنه قد فقد يومين بالضبط وكما هو معتاد، ظل هادئاً، مسجلاً كل تأخير بدقة. أودا، التي أصبحت رسمياً جزءاً من المجموعة، أصبحت أكثر إعجاباً بهدوئه واحساسه بالمسؤولية.



Passepartout was still recovering from nearly being imprisoned and from watching his master spend huge sums of money without hesitation.

كان باسبارتو لا يزال يتعافى من تجربة سجنه تقريباً ومن مشاهدته لسيده ينفق مبالغ ضخمة من المال بلا تردد.

Near the Strait of Malacca, rough monsoon weather struck. The Rangoon was not one of the fast mail steamers Fogg preferred, and the high seas slowed them down even further. By the time they passed Singapore, they were already a day behind schedule, dangerously close to missing their connection in Hong Kong.

عند مضيق ملقا، ضربتهم عواصف موسمية قوية لم تكن السفينة رانجون من السفن السريعة المفضلة لدى فوج، وأبطأتهم الأمواج العالية أكثر بحلول الوقت الذي عبروا فيه سنغافورة، كانوا بالفعل متأخرين يوماً عن الجدول، وقريبين بشكل خطير من تفويت اتصالهم في هونغ كونغ.



Arrival in Hong Kong - November 6

الوصول إلى هونغ كونغ - 6 نوفمبر

They reached Hong Kong on November 6—one day later than planned. Fogg's first concern was Aouda's safety. He asked Passepartout to find her cousin, a wealthy merchant.

وصلوا إلى هونغ كونغ في 6 نوفمبر—متأخرين يوماً واحداً عن المخطط. كان أول اهتمام فوج سلامة أودا. طلب من باسبارتو أن يبحث عن ابن عمها، تاجر ثري.

Passepartout returned quickly with bad news: the cousin had moved to Holland two years earlier. Aouda was now alone, without family.

عاد باسبارتو بسرعة ومعه أخبار سيئة: كان ابن العم قد انتقل إلى هولندا منذ عامين. بلا عائلته.

Fogg immediately decided:

قرر فوج فوراً:

"We shall continue to Europe together. When we arrive in England, I will take care of you." Deeply moved, Aouda accepted. She was now a permanent member of the journey.

"سوف نستمر إلى أوروبا معاً وعندما نصل إلى إنجلترا، سأهتم بك. تأثرت أودا بشدة وقبلت أصبحت الآن عضواً دائماً في الرحلة."



The Missing Steamer - The Carnatic

السفينة المفقودة - الكارناتيك

Fogg then went to the steamship office to confirm their places on the Carnatic, the ship to Yokohama. But he discovered the worst news yet: The Carnatic had sailed twelve hours earlier. The next steamer would not depart for eight days. Passepartout panicked, but Fogg remained steady, knowing they had only 24 hours to find another way across the Pacific.

ثم ذهب فوج إلى مكتب السفن البخارية لتأكيد أماكنهم على الكارناتيك، السفينة المتجهة إلى يوكوهاما لكنه اكتشف الخبر الأسوأ حتى الآن: كانت الكارناتيك قد أبحرت قبل اثنتي عشرة ساعة السفينة التالية لن تغادر إلا بعد ثمانية أيام أصيب باسبارتو بالدعس، لكن فوج ظل هادئاً، عالماً أن لديهم فقط ٢٤ ساعة لإيجاد طريقة أخرى لعبور المحيط الهادئ

Fix's Desperate Plan

خطة فيكس اليائسة

Detective Fix, under enormous pressure, decided it was time to reveal his identity to Passepartout Fix confessed that he was a detective and accused Fogg of robbing the Bank of England Passepartout angrily denied the accusation but became confused and doubtful To stop him from warning Fogg, Fix put some medicine in Passepartout's cup of tea to make him fall asleep Half-conscious, Passepartout tried to say, "The Carnatic! She leaves tonight!" but collapsed into a deep sleep Fix left him there, sure that Fogg would be delayed

قرر المحقق فيكس، تحت ضغط هائل، أنه حان الوقت ليكشف هويته لباسبارتو اعترف فيكس بأنه محقق واتهم فوج بسرقة بنك إنجلترا أنكر باسبارتو الاتهام بغضب لكنه أصبح مرتبكاً ومشوشاً لمنعه من تحذير فوج، وضع فيكس بعض الدواء في كوب شاي باسبارتو لجعله ينام نصف واع، حاول باسبارتو أن يقول: الكارناتيك! تغادر الليلة! لكنه انهار في نوم عميق تركه فيكس هناك، متأكداً أن فوج سيتأخر

Fogg Finds an Alternative

فوج يجد بديلاً

Unaware of Fix's actions, Fogg searched the docks for any ship that could help He finally found John Bunsby, captain of the tiny pilot boat Tankadere, a 40-ton schooner Fogg offered an enormous sum – £100 a day plus £200 extra – to take him to Shanghai in four days If he reached Shanghai on time, he could intercept the American steamer General Grant to San Francisco It was a dangerous, almost impossible proposal, but Bunsby agreed At 8:00 pm, Fogg and Aouda boarded the Tankadere Fix suddenly appealed, pretending he urgently needed to travel to America and joining them They set sail – leaving Passepartout behind

غير مدرك لأفعال فيكس، بحث فوج في الميناء عن أي سفينة يمكن أن تساعد وأخيراً وجد جون بانسبي، قبطان السفينة الصغيرة تانكادير، وهي شراعية بوزن ٤٠ طناً

عرض فوج مبلغاً هائلاً – ١٠٠ جنيه إسترليني في اليوم زائد ٢٠٠ جنيه إضافية – لأخذهم إلى شانغهاي في أربعة أيام إذا وصل إلى شانغهاي في الوقت المحدد، يمكنه اعتراض السفينة الأمريكية جنرال جرانت إلى سان فرانسيسكو كانت خطة خطيرة، شبه مستحيلة، لكن بانسبي وافق في الساعة ٨:٠٠ مساءً، ركب فوج وأودا على متن تانكادير فجأة انضم فيكس متظاهراً بالحاجة الملحة للسفر إلى أمريكا أبحروا، تاركين باسبارتو خلفهم

The Lost Valet

الخادم الضائع

Passepartout woke hours later, drugged and dizzy He stepped into the docks and saw the Carnatic still there, not knowing it had returned temporarily for repairs Believing he had made it in time, he boarded the ship, laid in a cabin, and fell asleep

استيقظ باسبارتو بعد ساعات، مخدراً ودواراً خرج إلى الرصيف ورأى الكارناتيك ما زالت هناك، غير مدرك أنها عادت مؤقتاً للصيانة معتقداً أنه وصل في الوقت المناسب، ركب السفينة، استلقى في إحدى الكابائن، ونام

The Tankadere's Stormy Dash

سباق تانكادير العاصف

Meanwhile, the small Tankadere fought through violent storms in the South China Sea Fogg urged Bunsby to push the boat to its limits Fix secretly hoped the storm would stop them On November 9, Bunsby spotted a huge ship in the distance – the American mail steamer General Grant Fogg fired the schooner's small cannon to send an emergency signal The General Grant approached, and Fogg, Aouda, and Fix transferred aboard Fogg immediately paid Bunsby a generous bonus

في الوقت نفسه، كافحت السفينة الصغيرة تانكادير عبر عواصف عنيفة في بحر الصين الجنوبي حيث فوج بانسبي على دفع السفينة إلى أقصى حدودها سراً، كان فيكس يأمل أن توقف العاصفة تقدمهم في ٩ نوفمبر رصد بانسبي سفينة كبيرة في الأفق – السفينة الأمريكية جنرال جرانت أطلق فوج مدفع تانكادير الصغير لإرسال إشارة طارئة اقتربت جنرال جرانت، وانتقل فوج وأودا وفكس على متنها دفع فوج لبانسبي مكافأة سخية فوراً

Reunion in Yokohama

اللقاء في يوكوهاما

When they reached Yokohama, Fogg searched everywhere for Passepartout. The valet, now broke, had joined a troupe of Japanese acrobats called the "Long Noses," using his circus background to survive. Aouda noticed him during a practice session. Passepartout saw Fogg, went down in shock, and ran to him. After being released from his contract, he confessed that Fix was a detective Fogg already knew.

عندما وصلوا إلى يوكوهاما، بحث فوج في كل مكان عن باسبارتو. كان الخادم، المفلس الآن، قد انضم إلى فرقة من الأكروبات اليابانيين تدعى الأنوف الطويلة، مستخدماً خلفيته في السيرك للبقاء على قيد الحياة. لاحظته أودا أثناء تمرين رأى باسبارتو فوج، صدم، وركض إليه بعد أن أفرج عنه من عقده، اعترف بأن فيكس كان محققاً فوج كان يعرف ذلك بالفعل.

With no time to waste, Fogg bought three tickets on the General Grant to San Francisco – one for himself, one for Aouda, and one for Fix. They set off across the Pacific, each holding a different secret purpose.

دون وقت ضائع، اشترى فوج ثلاث تذاكر على متن جنرال جرانت إلى سان فرانسيسكو – واحدة لنفسه، واحدة لأودا، وواحدة لفيكس. انطلقوا عبر المحيط الهادئ، كل منهم يحمل هدفاً سرياً مختلفاً.

Values in This Chapter القيم في هذا الفصل

- ❖ **Dedication to the goal:** Fogg spends huge sums (£100/day + £200 bonus) to reach Shanghai in four days.
- ❖ **Bravery and responsibility:** Fogg promises to protect Aouda and guide her future.
- ❖ **Loyalty and misplaced trust:** Passepartout fiercely defends Fogg but trusts Fix, which leads to disaster.
- ❖ **Calmness vs desperation:** Fogg stays calm despite catastrophes, while Fix becomes careless and unethical.

- التفاني في الهدف: ينفق فوج مبالغ ضخمة (£100/يوم + £200 بونوس) للوصول إلى شانغهاي في أربعة أيام.
- الشجاعة والمسؤولية: يعد فوج بحماية أودا وتوجيه مستقبلها.
- الولاء والثقة المضللة: يدافع باسبارتو بشدة عن فوج لكنه يثق بفيكس، مما يؤدي إلى كارثة.
- الهدوء مقابل اليأس: يبقى فوج هادئاً رغم الكوارث، بينما يصبح فيكس مهملاً وغير أخلاقي.

Chapter 8 General Exercises

Setbook Questions & Answers

1. Why did Phileas Fogg feel responsible for Aouda?

لماذا شعر فيلياس فوج بالمسؤولية تجاه أودا؟

Because he rescued her and she had no family or protection.

لأنه أنقذها ولم يكن لديها عائلة أو حماية.

2. Why was missing the Carnatic a serious problem?

لماذا كان فوات سفينة كارنتيك مشكلة خطيرة؟

Because it delayed their journey and threatened the bet.

لأنه أخر رحلتهم وهدد الرهان.

3. Why did Passepartout panic when they missed the Carnatic, while Phileas Fogg remained calm and controlled?

لماذا شعر باسبارتو بالذعر عند فوات سفينة كارنتيك بينما ظل فيلياس فوج هادئاً ومسيطرًا؟

Passepartout was emotional, but Phileas Fogg trusted his plans.

كان باسبارتو عاطفياً، بينما كان فيلياس فوج يثق في خطته.

4. Why did Phileas Fogg reward John Bunsby generously?

لماذا كافأ فيلياس فوج جون بانسبي سخياً؟

Because he helped them cross the sea safely and quickly.

لأنه ساعدهم على عبور البحر بأمان وسرعة.

5. Why do you think Passepartout joined the acrobats?

لماذا تعتقد أن باسبارتو انضم إلى لاعبي الأكروبات؟

☞ To earn money and continue the journey.

ليكسب المال ويواصل الرحلة

Critical Thinking Questions

6. Do you think Fogg was right to make Aouda a permanent member of the journey? Why / why not?

هل تعتقد أن فوج كان محقاً في جعل أودا عضواً دائماً في الرحلة؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟

☞ Yes, because she had no safe place to go and Fogg cared about her safety.

نعم، لأنه لم يكن لديها مكان آمن تذهب إليه وكان فوج يهتم بسلامتها.

7. In your point of view, was Detective Fix's behavior toward Passepartout morally acceptable?

من وجهة نظرك، هل كان سلوك المحقق فيكس تجاه باسبارتو مقبولاً أخلاقياً؟

☞ No, because he lied to Passepartout and drugged him for his own goal.

لا، لأنه كذب على باسبارتو وخدّره لتحقيق هدفه الشخصي.

8. If you were in Passepartout's position, how would you have reacted after discovering Fix's true intentions?

إذا كنت في موقف باسبارتو، كيف كنت ستتصرف بعد اكتشاف نوايا فيكس الحقيقية؟

☞ I would feel angry and try to warn Fogg as fast as possible.

كنت سأشعر بالغضب وأحاول تحذير فوج بأسرع وقت ممكن.

9. What do you think Fogg's decision to hire the Tankadere shows about his personality?

ما رأيك فيما يكشفه قرار فوج باستئجار سفينة تانكادير عن شخصيته؟

☞ It shows that he is brave, determined, and willing to spend money to save time.

يظهر أنه شجاع ومصر ومستعد لدفع المال لتوفير الوقت.

10. Why do you think Fix continued to follow Fogg secretly during the dangerous voyage?

لماذا تعتقد أن فيكس واصل ملاحقة فوج سراً خلال الرحلة الخطرة؟

☞ Because he believed Fogg was a criminal and wanted to arrest him in England.

لأنه كان يعتقد أن فوج مجرم وأراد اعتقاله في إنجلترا.

11. How can we infer that chance and coincidence play an important role in the journey?

كيف يمكننا أن نستنتج أن الصدفة والظروف غير المتوقعة تلعب دوراً مهماً في الرحلة؟

☞ Because delays, storms, and accidental meetings changed the journey many times.

لأن التأخيرات والعواصف واللقاءات غير المتوقعة غيرت مسار الرحلة كثيراً.

12. What was Passepartout's first reaction when Fix claimed that Fogg was a criminal?

ما أول رد فعل لباسبارتو عندما ادعى فيكس أن فوج مجرم؟

☞ He angrily denied it and defended Fogg.

أنكر ذلك بغضب ودافع عن فوج.

13. Why did Fix change his plan from detaining Fogg in Hong Kong to joining him on the Tankadere?

لماذا غير فيكس خطته من احتجاز فوج في هونغ كونغ إلى الانضمام إليه؟

☞ Because his first plan failed and Fogg kept moving.

لأن خطته الأولى فشلت واستمر فوج في التقدم.

14. In what ways do Passepartout's experiences highlight his vulnerability?

كيف تُظهر تجارب باسبارتو ضعفه مقارنة بفوج؟

☞ He suffered confusion and poverty, unlike calm Fogg

عانى من الارتباك والفقر، بعكس فوج الهادئ

15. What does the dangerous Tankadere journey reveal about Fogg?

ماذا تكشف رحلة تانكادير الخطيرة عن فوج؟

☞ It shows his strong determination to succeed

تُظهر إصراره القوي على النجاح

Test Yourself

1. How did the news about Aouda's cousin complicate Fogg's commitment to her, and what was his subsequent decision?
2. What was the exact consequence of the Rangoon being one day late and the Carnatic leaving twelve hours early?
3. What was Fogg's calm response when Passepartout finally revealed Fix's identity in Yokohama?
4. Discuss the theme of dependence as seen in Aouda and Passepartout.
5. Evaluate the importance of time in this chapter
6. What does Fogg's acceptance of Fix's presence suggest?
7. If Aouda's cousin had been found, how might the story have changed?
8. Describe the tactics Fix used on Passepartout to both reveal his identity and silence him?
9. How did Fogg use his wealth and ingenuity to solve the crisis of missing the Carnatic?
10. Explain Passepartout's confusion about the Carnatic's departure and how he ended up in Yokohama?
11. Discuss whether Fogg's use of a very high payment to Captain Bunsby is ethical or simply practical given the urgency
12. Why did Fogg choose to take the Tankadere to Shanghai instead of sailing directly to Yokohama?
13. Analyze the moral conflict in Fix's decision to make Passepartout fall asleep.

انتظروا!!!!

GIANTS

كتاب مراجعة العملاقة
للفصل الثاني الثانوي





Chapter

9

Pacific Passage and Peril - Japan to San Francisco

Key Vocabulary

schedule ⁽ⁿ⁾	جدول زمني	affection ⁽ⁿ⁾	مودّة / مشاعر	honor ⁽ⁿ⁾	شرف
steamer ⁽ⁿ⁾	سفينة بخارية	strategy ⁽ⁿ⁾	خطة / استراتيجية	apologize ^(v)	يعتذر
reunion ⁽ⁿ⁾	لقاء / لم شمل	ally ⁽ⁿ⁾	حليف	duel ⁽ⁿ⁾	مبارزة
identity ⁽ⁿ⁾	هوية	voyage ⁽ⁿ⁾	رحلة	postponed ^(adj)	مؤجل
calm ⁽ⁿ⁾	هدوء	meridian ⁽ⁿ⁾	خط طول	ticket ⁽ⁿ⁾	تذكرة
confession ⁽ⁿ⁾	اعتراف	confused ^(adj)	مرتبك	diary ⁽ⁿ⁾	مفكرة / مذكرات
distressed ^(adj)	مضطرب / متأثر بشدة	collision ⁽ⁿ⁾	اصطدام	relieved ^(adj)	مرتاح
shame ⁽ⁿ⁾	خزي / عار	delay ⁽ⁿ⁾	تأخير	danger ⁽ⁿ⁾	خطر
courage ⁽ⁿ⁾	شجاعة	riot ⁽ⁿ⁾	شغب	integrity ⁽ⁿ⁾	نزاهة
innocent ^(adj)	بريء	insult ⁽ⁿ⁾	إهانة	journey ⁽ⁿ⁾	رحلة

Summary

The American steamer General Grant sails from Yokohama to San Francisco, and Phileas Fogg carefully plans the journey to recover lost time. After reuniting with Passepartout, Fogg calmly accepts the truth about Fix being a detective and remains focused on his schedule. Passepartout feels ashamed and confused but gradually realizes that Fogg's calmness represents true courage. Aouda watches Fogg's honorable behavior and develops deep respect and affection for him. Fix, now in a difficult position, travels on Fogg's ticket and hopes Fogg reaches Britain quickly so the arrest can be made. The Pacific crossing is mostly calm, though confusion arises when crossing the International Date Line, and a short delay occurs after the ship hits whales. They arrive in San Francisco on December 3rd, where Fogg defends Aouda's honor against an insulting man and agrees to a duel that is later postponed, allowing the journey to continue by train toward New York.

تبحر الباخرة الأمريكية "جنرال جرانت" من يوكوهاما إلى سان فرانسيسكو، ويخطط فيليبس فوج الرحلة بعناية ليعوض الوقت الذي فاتته وبعد أن يلتقي مجدداً بپاسپارتو، يتقبل فوج بهدوء حقيقة أن فيكس محقق، ويظل مركزاً على جدول رحلته يشعر بآسبارتو بالخجل والارتباك، لكنه يدرك تدريجياً أن هدوء فوج يمثل شجاعة حقيقية وتراقب عاودة سلوك فوج النبيل، فتتمو بداخلها مشاعر عميقة من الاحترام والإعجاب به أما فيكس، وقد أصبح في موقف صعب، فيسافر على تذكرة فوج، ويأمل أن يصل فوج إلى بريطانيا سريعاً حتى يتمكن من إلقاء القبض عليه يكون عبور المحيط الهادئ هادئاً في معظمه، رغم حدوث بعض الارتباك عند عبور خط التاريخ الدولي، وتأخير قصير بعد اصطدام السفينة بالحيتان ويصلون إلى سان فرانسيسكو في الثالث من ديسمبر، حيث يدافع فوج عن شرف عاودة أمام رجل مهين، ويوافق على مبارزة توجل لاحقاً، مما يسمح باستكمال الرحلة بالقطار نحو نيويورك.

The American mail steamer General Grant, a powerful paddle-wheel vessel, departed from Yokohama on the evening of November 14th, heading directly across the Pacific Ocean toward San Francisco. The twenty-two-day crossing had been carefully factored into Phileas Fogg's schedule. According to his plan, he was due to arrive on December 2nd.

غادرت السفينة البريديّة الأمريكيّة «جنرال جرانت»، وهي سفينة قويّة تعمل بعجلات جانبية، يوكوهاما مساء ١٤ نوفمبر متجهة مباشرة عبر المحيط الهادئ نحو سان فرانسيسكو كانت رحلة العبور التي تستغرق اثنين وعشرين يوما محسوبة بدقة ضمن جدول فيليبس فوج ووفقا لخطته. كان من المفترض أن يصل في ٢ ديسمبر



The reunion between Fogg and Passepartout had been dramatic, yet Fogg received the valet's confession about Fix's identity with the same unshakable calm he applied to all crises. His only priority remained the recovery of lost time. Despite the delays in India and the chaos in Hong Kong, he calculated that their interruption of the General Grant in Shanghai had put them only slightly behind schedule.

كان اللقاء بين فوج وباسبارتو مؤثرا، ومع ذلك استقبل فوج اعتراف خادمه بهوية فيكس بنفس الهدوء الذي لا يتزعزع الذي يواجه به جميع الأزمات ظل همه الوحيد هو تعويض الوقت الضائع ورغم التأخيرات في الهند والفوضى في هونغ كونغ، حسب أن اعترافهم لسفينة جنرال جرانت في شانغهاي جعلهم متأخرين قليلا فقط عن الجدول

Passepartout, however, was deeply distressed. He had expected outrage—perhaps even a confrontation—when revealing Fix's deception. Instead, Fogg simply acknowledged the information. The valet was tormented by shame for having been drugged by Fix and confused by his master's steady composure. He began to see Fogg's calmness not as oddness but as the profound courage of an innocent man wrongfully accused yet unbroken. أما باسبارتو فكان مضطربا بشدة كان يتوقع غضبا، وربما مواجهة، عند كشفه لخداة فيكس لكن فوج اكتفى بتقبل المعلومة بهدوء عانى باسبارتو من الخزي لأنه تم تخديره بواسطة فيكس، وارتبك من ثبات سيده وبدأ يرى هدوء فوج ليس كغرابية، بل كدليل على شجاعة عميقة لرجل بريء اتهم ظلما لكنه لم ينكسر

Aouda observed the strained triangle between the three men. She had seen Fogg's honor under pressure, especially toward her. Her respect for him deepened into genuine affection. لاحظت أودا العلاقة المتوترة بين الرجال الثلاثة وكانت قد رأت شرف فوج تحت الضغط، خاصة في تعامله معها فتحول احترامها له إلى مشاعر إعجاب صادقة

Fix's Changed Strategy

استراتيجية فيكس المتغيرة

Detective Fix was now in an awkward and frustrating situation. He was traveling on Fogg's ticket and forced to endure the polite company of the man he intended to arrest. Crucially, Fix knew that once they reached San Francisco, the British warrant—if it ever arrived—would not be valid. His only hope was to help Fogg return to British soil as fast as possible.

وجد المحقق فيكس نفسه في موقف محرج ومنحبط كان يسافر بتذكرة فوج، ومضطرا لتحمل صحبة الرجل المهرب الذي ينوي اعتقاله والأهم أنه كان يعلم أنه عند وصولهم إلى سان فرانسيسكو، فإن أمر القبض البريطاني—إن وصل أصلا—لن يكون صالحا وكان أمله الوحيد هو مساعدة فوج على العودة إلى الأراضي البريطانيّة بأسرع وقت ممكن

Thus, Fix became a reluctant ally. Ironically, he now needed Fogg to succeed.

وهكذا أصبح فيكس حليفا على مضض ومن المفارقة أنه أصبح الآن بحاجة إلى نجاح فوج

The Pacific Crossing

عبر المحيط الهادئ

The voyage itself was quiet and steady The General Grant was fast enough to make up some of the lost time Fogg spent much of the voyage playing whist with Aouda and, occasionally, with Fix Aouda proved to be a quick learner, and the games brought an unexpected sense of domestic calm to the long crossing

كانت الرحلة نفسها هادئة ومستقرة وكانت سفينة جنرال جران ت سريعة بما يكفي لتعويض بعض الوقت الضائع قضى فوج جزءا كبيرا من الرحلة يلعب الوست مع أودا وأحيانا مع فيكس وأثبتت أودا أنها سريعة التعلم، وجلبت هذه الألعاب شعورا غير متوقع بالهدوء الأسري خلال الرحلة الطويلة

The most notable event was their crossing of the 180th Meridian, the theoretical International Date Line Fogg carefully recorded speed and distance but failed to perceive that traveling eastward meant gaining an hour every 15 degrees of longitude Passepartout stubbornly kept his watch on London time and became utterly confused when he insisted it was December 2nd while ship's time already indicated December 3rd

كان الحدث الأبرز هو عبورهم خط الطول ١٨٠، المعروف نظريا بخط التاريخ الدولي سجل فوج السرعة والمسافة بعناية، لكنه لم يدرك أن السفر شرقا يعني كسب ساعة زمنية كل ١٥ درجة طول وأصر باسپارتو على إبقاء ساعته على توقيت لندن، مما جعله في حيرة تامة عندما أصر أن التاريخ هو ٢ ديسمبر بينما كان توقيت السفينة يشير إلى ٣ ديسمبر

The Incident with the

حادثة الحوت Whale

One dramatic moment occurred during a fog bank when the General Grant collided with a pod of whales The impact caused a violent shudder and forced a temporary stop Fogg noted the lost three hours in his log Fix, now desperate to avoid delays, grew increasingly anxious

وقعت لحظة درامية عندما اصطدمت سفينة جنرال جران بقطيع من الحيتان أثناء ضباب كثيف تسبب الاصطدام في اهتزاز عنيف وأجبر السفينة على التوقف مؤقتا دون فوج خسارة ثلاث ساعات في سجله وأصبح فيكس، الذي بات يائسا من أي تأخير، أكثر قلقا

Arrival in San Francisco - December 3rd ديسمبر ٣ الوصول إلى سان فرانسيسكو

On the morning of December 3rd—although Fogg still believed it to be December 2nd—the General Grant steamed through the Golden Gate and entered the booming port of San Francisco The city was a chaotic blend of wagons, trams, merchants, gold-seeking adventurers, and immigrants from all corners of the world

في صباح ٣ ديسمبر—رغم أن فوج كان لا يزال يعتقد أنه ٢ ديسمبر—دخلت سفينة جنرال جران عبر بوابة جولدن جيت إلى ميناء سان فرانسيسكو كانت المدينة مزيجا فوضويا من العربات، والترام، والتجار، ومغامري البحث عن الذهب، والمهاجرين من شتى أنحاء العالم

Fogg remained unimpressed He had one goal only: reach the train station

لم يبد فوج أي إعجاب كان لديه هدف واحد فقط: الوصول إلى محطة القطار

Their carriage soon became trapped in the middle of a riot connected to a heated election rally A violent crowd moved through the streets, overturning vehicles and shouting A tall man—a notorious troublemaker named Colonel Stamp Proctor—approached their carriage, mistaking it for that of a political opponent

سرعان ما علقت عربتهم وسط شغب مرتبط بتجمع انتخابي محتدم تحرك حشد عنيف في الشوارع، يقلب العربات ويصرخ اقترب رجل طويل، معروف بإثارة المشاكل يدعى الكولونيل ستامب بروكتور، من عربة فوج ظنا أنها تعود لخصم سياسي

Proctor made rude comments about Aouda Fogg quickly stepped out of the carriage

أطلق بروكتور تعليقات فظة عن أودا، فسارع فوج إلى النزول من العربة

"Sir," he said, "you are insulting a lady Apologize at once"

قال فوج: «سدي، إنك تهين سيدة اعتذر فوراً»

Proctor laughed and insulted them again Fogg, without lifting a hand, presented his card

ضحك بروكتور وواصل الإهانة فأخرج فوج بطاقته دون أن يرفع يده

A duel was formally arranged for December 4th at 10:00 am at the Presidio

تم ترتيب مبارزة رسمية ليوم ٤ ديسمبر الساعة العاشرة صباحا في بريسيديو

Departure for New York

الانطلاق إلى نيويورك

The riot cleared, and they reached the train station Fogg secured tickets for the Transcontinental Express, scheduled to take them across the continent to New York in seven days

انتهى الشغب ووصلوا إلى محطة القطار وحجز فوج تذاكر قطار العابر للقارات، الذي كان مقرراً أن ينقلهم عبر القارة إلى نيويورك خلال سبعة أيام

Just as the train was preparing to depart, a representative of Colonel Proctor arrived: the duel was postponed, as Proctor himself needed to travel east

وقبل انطلاق القطار مباشرة، وصل ممثل عن الكولونيل بروكتور ليخبرهم بتأجيل المباراة، لأن بروكتور نفسه كان مضطراً للسفر شرقاً

With the matter deferred, the train departed Fogg calmly opened his diary and wrote:

"San Francisco, December 3rd, 8:00 pm – Duel postponed"

ومع تأجيل الأمر، انطلق القطار وفتح فوج مفكرته بهدوء وكتب:

«سان فرانسيسكو، ٣ ديسمبر، الساعة ٨:٠٠ مساءً – تم تأجيل المباراة»

Aouda was moved by Fogg's defense of her honor Fix, meanwhile, was relieved that any harm to Fogg would ruin his hopes of making the arrest in England

تأثرت أودا بدفاع فوج عن شرفها أما فيكس فشعر بالارتياح، إذ إن أي أذى يصيب فوج كان سيقضي على أمله في اعتقاله في إنجلترا

The Pacific crossing was complete, but the dangers of the vast American continent now awaited them

اكتمل عبور المحيط الهادئ، لكن أخطار القارة الأمريكية الشاسعة كانت بانتظارهم

Values in This Chapter القيم في هذا الفصل

- ❖ **Honor above schedule:** Fogg breaks his rigid principle of punctuality to confront Proctor for insulting Aouda الشرف فوق الالتزام بالوقت: يكسر فوج مبدأه الصارم في الالتزام بالمواعيد لمواجهة بروكتور دفاعاً عن أودا
- ❖ **Bravery of innocence:** Passepartout observes that Fogg's calmness demonstrates the courage of an innocent man facing injustice شجاعة البراءة: يلاحظ باسبارتو أن هدوء فوج يعكس شجاعة رجل بريء يواجه الظلم
- ❖ **Reluctant alliance:** Fix temporarily supports Fogg's speed because he needs him to reach Britain quickly تحالف على مضض: يدعم فيكس سرعة فوج مؤقتاً لأنه يحتاجه للوصول إلى بريطانيا سريعاً
- ❖ **Growing affection:** Aouda's respect for Fogg deepens as she witnesses his honor and selflessness تنامي المشاعر: يزداد احترام أودا لفوج مع مشاهدتها لشرفه ونكران ذاته
- ❖ **Integrity under pressure:** Fogg remains courteous even to Fix, who intends to arrest him النزاهة تحت الضغط: يظل فوج مهذباً حتى مع فيكس الذي ينوي اعتقاله

Chapter 9 General Exercises

Setbook Questions & Answers

1. Why is Fogg unimpressed by San Francisco?
❖ Because he was focused on time, not on sightseeing.
لماذا لم يُعجب فوج بمدينة سان فرانسيسكو؟
لأنه كان يركز على الوقت وليس على مشاهدة المعالم
2. Explain why Detective Fix decided to aid Fogg in speeding up the journey across the Pacific.
❖ Because he wanted Fogg to reach England so he could arrest him there.
اشرح لماذا قرر المحقق فيكس مساعدة فوج في تسريع الرحلة عبر المحيط الهادئ؟
لأنه أراد أن يصل فوج إلى إنجلترا ليتمكن من القبض عليه هناك.
3. How does Fix's change of strategy reflect irony?
❖ Fix helped the man he wanted to arrest.
كيف يعكس تغيير استراتيجية فيكس نوعاً من المفارقة؟
ساعد فيكس الرجل الذي كان يريد القبض عليه

4. What does Fogg's diary symbolize in this chapter?

ماذا يرمز دفتر مذكرات فوج في هذا الفصل؟

It symbolizes order, discipline, and control of time.

يرمز إلى النظام والانضباط والتحكم في الوقت

Critical Thinking Questions



5. Do you think Phileas Fogg showed real courage during the voyage to San Francisco? Why / why not? هل تعتقد أن فيليبس فوج أظهر شجاعة حقيقية أثناء الرحلة إلى سان فرانسيسكو؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟

Yes, because he stayed calm, focused on his plan, and faced problems bravely.

نعم، لأنه ظل هادئاً ومركزاً على خطته وواجه المشكلات بشجاعة.

6. In your point of view, how did Passepartout's feelings change toward Fogg during this chapter? من وجهة نظرك، كيف تغيرت مشاعر باسبارتو تجاه فوج في هذا الفصل؟

He moved from shame and confusion to admiration and respect.

انتقل من الشعور بالخزي والارتباك إلى الإعجاب والاحترام.

7. If you were in Aouda's position, how would Fogg's behavior affect your feelings?

إذا كنت في موقف أودا، كيف كان سلوك فوج سيؤثر على مشاعرك؟

I would respect him more and feel safe with him.

كنت سأحترمه أكثر وأشعر بالأمان معه.

8. What do you think Fix's situation on the ship reveals about his character?

ما رأيك فيما يكشفه موقف فيكس على السفينة عن شخصيته؟

It shows that he is stubborn and obsessed with arresting Fogg.

يظهر أنه عنيد ومهووس باعتقال فوج.

9. Why do you think Fogg defended Aouda's honor in San Francisco?

لماذا تعتقد أن فوج دافع عن شرف أودا في سان فرانسيسكو؟

Because he is honorable and respects women.

لأنه رجل شريف ويحترم النساء.

10. How can we infer that delays and accidents still threaten Fogg's journey despite good planning? كيف يمكننا أن نستنتج أن التأخيرات والحوادث ما زالت تهدد رحلة فوج رغم التخطيط الجيد؟

From the whale accident and the confusion at the Date Line.

من حادثة الحيتان والارتباك عند خط التاريخ الدولي.

11. What made Fogg risk a delay by challenging Proctor?

ما الذي جعل فوج يخاطر بالتأخير ويتحدى بروكتور؟

Proctor insulted Aouda, and Fogg defended her honor.

بروكتور أهان أودا، وفوج دافع عن شرفها.

12. How did Aouda react to the duel decision?

كيف كان رد فعل أودا على قرار المبارزة؟

She was deeply moved and admired Fogg's courage.

تأثرت بشدة وأعجبت بشجاعة فوج.

13. What differences exist between the General Grant and earlier ships?

ما الفرق بين جنرال جرانت والسفن السابقة؟

It was larger, faster, and more reliable.

كانت أكبر وأسرع ويمكن الاعتماد عليها أكثر.

14. What does Fogg's diary note reveal about him?

ماذا يكشف تعليق فوج في مذكراته؟

It shows strong self-control and calmness.

يظهر ضبط النفس والهدوء.

15. Explain why Detective Fix decided to aid Fogg in speeding up the journey across the Pacific. اشرح لماذا قرر المحقق فيكس مساعدة فوج في تسريع الرحلة عبر المحيط الهادئ.

Fix knew the warrant would only be valid in England, so he needed Fogg to arrive quickly.

كان فيكس يعلم أن أمر القبض صالح فقط في إنجلترا، لذلك احتاج أن يصل فوج بسرعة.

Test Yourself

1. How did Passepartout's reaction change after Fogg confirmed he knew Fix was a detective?
2. Describe the atmosphere of San Francisco upon arrival.
3. How did the railroad affect Fogg's journey?
4. How did the riot challenge Fogg's personality?
5. How is honor shown by Fogg?
6. If Fogg were injured, what would happen?
7. How does romance appear in this chapter?
8. Why did the author choose San Francisco?
9. How does the Pacific crossing show contrast?
10. What is ironic about Fix's situation?
11. What was the significance of the General Grant crossing the 180th Meridian?
12. Why was the duel postponed?

انتظروا!!!

Giants

كتاب مراجعة العلاقة
للمصنف الثاني الثانويالعلاقة
GIANTS



Chapter

10

Rail Across America - San Francisco to New York

Key Vocabulary

departure ⁽ⁿ⁾	مغادرة	passengers ⁽ⁿ⁾	ركاب	heroic ^(adj)	بطولي
platform ⁽ⁿ⁾	رصيف القطار	timetable ⁽ⁿ⁾	جدول مواعيد	loyalty ⁽ⁿ⁾	ولاء
conductor ⁽ⁿ⁾	قائد القطار	map ⁽ⁿ⁾	خريطة	courage ⁽ⁿ⁾	شجاعة
crowd ⁽ⁿ⁾	حشد	landscape ⁽ⁿ⁾	منظر طبيعي	honor ⁽ⁿ⁾	شرف
threat ⁽ⁿ⁾	تهديد	bridge ⁽ⁿ⁾	جسر	sacrifice ⁽ⁿ⁾	تضحية
wilderness ⁽ⁿ⁾	برية	plains ⁽ⁿ⁾	سهول	adventure ⁽ⁿ⁾	مغامرة
departure ⁽ⁿ⁾	مغادرة	suspension ⁽ⁿ⁾	تعليق / تعليق مؤقت	devotion ⁽ⁿ⁾	تفانٍ / إخلاص
deserts ⁽ⁿ⁾	صحاري	collapse ⁽ⁿ⁾	انهيار	suspension ⁽ⁿ⁾	تعليق
grasslands ⁽ⁿ⁾	سهول عشبية	momentum ⁽ⁿ⁾	زخم	collapse ⁽ⁿ⁾	انهيار
railroad ⁽ⁿ⁾	سكة حديد	attack ⁽ⁿ⁾	هجوم	reinforce ^(v)	يعزز

Summary

Phileas Fogg begins the overland journey on the Transcontinental Express from San Francisco to New York, facing mountains, deserts, and plains. The train offers comfort, but dangers arise, including delays from buffalo herds, a risky crossing of the Platte River bridge, and an attack by Sioux warriors. Fogg stays calm, calculating lost time and prioritizing loyalty over strict schedule adherence. Passepartout's bravery helps save passengers, though he is captured. Aouda's admiration for Fogg grows as she witnesses his courage, honor, and devotion. Colonel Proctor briefly challenges Fogg to a duel, but cooperation emerges to confront shared dangers. Fogg's decisive actions highlight courage, loyalty, and honor, balancing the journey's challenges with moral integrity, while Fix reluctantly supports him. The chapter emphasizes teamwork, selflessness, and maintaining principles in the face of danger.

يبدأ فيليبس فوج رحلته البرية على متن قطار "الترانسكونتيننتال إكسبريس" من سان فرانسيسكو إلى نيويورك، عابراً الجبال والصحاري والسهول ويوفر القطار قدراً من الراحة، لكن الأخطار سرعان ما تظهر، ومنها التأخير بسبب قطعان الجاموس، وعبور خطير لجسر نهر بلات، وهجوم من مجاريبي قبيلة السيو يظل فوج هادئاً، يحسب الوقت الضائع، ويقدم الوفاء والولاء على الالتزام الصارم بالجدول الزمني وتسهم شجاعة باسبارتو في إنقاذ الركاب، رغم وقوعه في الأسر ويزداد إعجاب عاودة بفوج حين تشهد شجاعته وشرفه وإخلاصه ويتحدى الكولونيل بروكتور فوج لمبارزة قصيرة، لكن سرعان ما يتعاون الجميع لمواجهة الأخطار المشتركة وتبرز قرارات فوج العاقبة قيم الشجاعة والولاء والشرف، إذ يوازن بين تحديات الرحلة والنزاهة الأخلاقية، بينما يساعده فيكس على مضض ويؤكد الفصل أهمية العمل الجماعي، والتضحية بالنفس، والتمسك بالمبادئ في مواجهة الخطر.

The departure of the Transcontinental Express from San Francisco on the evening of December 3rd signaled the start of Phileas Fogg's most demanding overland journey—3,786 miles of track stretching across mountains, deserts, and grasslands toward New York

انطلاق القطار السريع عبر القارة من سان فرانسيسكو مساء ٣ ديسمبر أعلن بداية الرحلة البرية الأكثر تحدياً لفيلياس فوج—٣,٧٨٦ ميلاً من السكك الحديدية تمتد عبر الجبال والصحاري والمروج نحو نيويورك



The newly completed Transcontinental Railroad was celebrated as a marvel

of modern engineering, capable of carrying passengers across the continent in just seven days, provided no misfortune intervened

تم الاحتفاء بالسكك الحديدية العابرة للقارة المكتملة حديثاً بإنجاز هندسي حديث مذهل، قادر على نقل الركاب عبر القارة في سبعة أيام فقط، بشرط ألا تحدث أي كوارث

The group occupied a wide section with wide windows, comfortable berths, and access to a dining car—a welcome change from the tight pilot boat and the airless cabins of earlier voyages Fogg spent the first hours examining timetables and railway maps, maintaining his full attention to accuracy Aouda watched him quietly, understanding the weight of the schedule but also feeling the warmth of gratitude for all he had done Passepartout, happy to be on solid ground again, delighted in the unfolding American landscape Fix, meanwhile, sat tensely nearby, monitoring Fogg with an unease he tried to hide

احتلت المجموعة عربة واسعة بها نوافذ كبيرة، وأسرة مريحة، وإمكانية الوصول إلى عربة الطعام—تغيير مرحب به بعد ضيق القوارب الصغيرة وكبائن السفن السابقة الخائفة قضى فوج الساعات الأولى في فحص الجداول والخرائط، محافظاً على اهتمامه الكامل بالدقة راقبته أودا بصمت، مدركة ثقل الجدول الزمني لكنها شعرت أيضاً بالامتنان لكل ما فعله كان باسبارتو سعيداً بعودته إلى الأرض الصلبة، مستمتعاً بالمناظر الأمريكية المتتابعة أما فيكس، فجلس متوتراً بالقرب منهم، يراقب فوج بقلق حاول إخفاءه

Through the Sierra Nevada

عم جبال سييرا نيفادا

The train ascended through the Sierra Nevada mountains, passing Sacramento and climbing through snowy high passes Passepartout was amazed by the vast pine forests and steep cliffs The smooth crossing brought him comfort after the unpredictable dangers of sea travel Fogg observed the landscape but remained absorbed in his calculations

صعد القطار عبر جبال سييرا نيفادا، ماراً بسكرامنتو وصاعداً عبر الممرات العالية المغطاة بالثلوج اندهش باسبارتو من الغابات الشاسعة والصخور الشاهقة منحنه الرحلة المريحة شعوراً بالراحة بعد المخاطر البحرية غير المتوقعة راقب فوج المناظر لكنه ظل منغمساً في حساباته

Delays in the Desert

التأخيرات في الصحراء

Once the train descended into the lonely expanses of Nevada and Utah, the problems began

Much of the track had been built quickly, resulting in weak bridges, unstable rails, and long stretches vulnerable to sandstorms, wildlife, and sudden weather changes



The first major delay occurred outside Salt Lake City A massive herd of buffalo—thousands strong—covered the rails from horizon to horizon The engineers fired whistles, shouts, and even discharged steam, but the animals were indifferent For three hours, the train sat motionless Fogg quietly logged the lost time, while Passepartout became visibly anxious Fix, who needed Fogg to reach England as soon as possible, silently suffered with each passing minute

عندما هبط القطار إلى المساحات الشاسعة المنعزلة في نيفادا ويوتا، بدأت المشاكل تم بناء معظم المسار بسرعة، ما أدى إلى جسور ضعيفة، وسكك غير مستقرة، وأجزاء طويلة معرضة للعواصف الرملية والحيوانات البرية والتغيرات الجوية المفاجئة حدث أول تأخير كبير خارج مدينة سولت ليك غطت قطيع ضخم من الجاموس—آلاف من الحيوانات—السكك من الأفق إلى الأفق استخدم المهندسون الصافرات والصراخ وحتى إطلاق البخار، لكن الحيوانات لم تهتم لثلاث ساعات، ظل القطار ساكناً سجل فوج الوقت المفقود يهدوء، بينما أصبح باسبارتو متوتراً بشكل واضح أما فيكس، الذي كان بحاجة لفوج للوصول إلى إنجلترا بأسرع وقت، فقد عانى بصمت مع مرور كل دقيقة



Aouda's Growing Concern

قلق أودا المتزايد

Throughout the desert journey, Aouda's affection for Fogg deepened She saw the pressure on his shoulders and the sacrifices he had made—not once for himself, but always for her, and for honor She tried gently to encourage him, offering moments of conversation and comfort

Fogg responded politely, but his mind never left the ticking schedule

خلال الرحلة الصحراوية، تعمقت محبة أودا لفوج رأت الضغط على كتفيه والتضحيات التي قدمها—ليس لنفسه أبداً، بل دائماً من أجلها ومن أجل الشرف حاولت بلطف تشجيعه، مقدمة لحظات من الحديث والراحة رد فوج بأدب، لكن ذهنه لم يغادر الجدول الزمني المتواصل



The Return of Colonel Proctor

عودة العقيد بروكتور

At Kearney, Nebraska, the train paused briefly Fogg and Aouda stepped onto the platform for fresh air when a familiar voice cut through the crowd Colonel Stamp Proctor—fiery, confrontational, and still furious from the San Francisco incident—approached

"So, sir, you have not forgotten your promise?" he sneered

"I have not forgotten," Fogg replied calmly, prepared to defend Aouda's honor once more

A crowd gathered Proctor demanded an immediate duel on the open area Fogg agreed without hesitation Fix, panicking at the thought of any further delay, attempted to intervene

The conductor, realizing the eruption of a potential riot, forced both men back onto the train

Proctor promised the matter was far from settled

Aouda saw again how deeply Fogg's code of honor ran, even against his rigid devotion to time Her admiration for him grew

في كيرني، نبراسكا، توقف القطار لفترة قصيرة خرج فوج وأودا إلى الرصيف لتنشق الهواء حين قطع صوت مألوف الحشد اقترب العقيد ستامب بروكتور—ناري، استعراضي، وما زال غاضباً من حادث سان فرانسيسكو قال بسخرية: "إذن، سيدي، لم تنس وعدك؟"

رد فوج بهدوء: "لم أنس، مستعداً للدفاع عن شرف أودا مرة أخرى تجمع الحشد طالب بروكتور بخوض مباراة فورية في الساحة المفتوحة وافق فوج دون تردد حاول فيكس، المذعور من أي تأخير إضافي، التدخل أدرك القائد احتمال اندلاع شغب، فأعاد كلا الرجلين إلى القطار وعد بروكتور بأن القضية لم تحسم بعد رأت أودا مرة أخرى مدى عمق تمسك فوج بشرفه، حتى على حساب التزامه الصارم بالوقت زاد إعجابها به



The Platte River Bridge

جسر نهر بلات

The train sped across the plains of the Midwest until it reached the rickety suspension bridge over the Platte River near Fort Kearney Built in haste, weakened by weather, and visibly unstable, the bridge posed a grave danger Crossing at normal speed risked collapse

The conductor made a daring proposal: If the train crossed at full speed, momentum might prevent the structure from failing beneath it

Fogg immediately supported the plan "Let us proceed at full speed If the bridge must fall, it will fall behind us"

Many passengers were horrified, but the decision was made The engine reversed to build momentum, then surged forward with trembling intensity The train shot across the bridge in seconds, barely touching the weakened beams

The moment the last carriage reached solid ground, the bridge collapsed into the raging river below

اندفع القطار عبر سهول الغرب الأوسط حتى وصل إلى جسر معلق مهتز فوق نهر بلات بالقرب من فورت كيرني بني على عجل، وتضعف بسبب الطقس. وكان غير مستقر بشكل واضح، ما شكل خطراً كبيراً كان عبوره بسرعة عادية قد يؤدي إلى الانهيار قدم القائد اقتراحاً جريئاً: إذا عبر القطار بأقصى سرعة، قد تمنع الزخم انهيار الهيكل تحته دعم فوج الخطأ فوراً لنمض بأقصى سرعة إذا كان الجسر سينهار، فسيسقط خلفنا" شعر العديد من الركاب بالرهبة، لكن تم اتخاذ القرار رجعت المحرك لبناء الزخم، ثم انطلقت إلى الأمام بشدة مرتجفة اجتاز القطار الجسر في ثوانٍ، بالكاد لامس العوارض الضعيفة هي اللحظة التي وصلت فيها آخر عربة إلى الأرض الصلبة، انهار الجسر في النهر الهائج أدناه

Chapter 10 General Exercises

Setbook Questions & Answers



- Why does the journey across America represent a major challenge for Phileas Fogg?
لماذا تمثل الرحلة عبر أمريكا تحدياً كبيراً لفيليبس فوج؟
Because it involved danger, delays, and unexpected events.
لأنها كانت مليئة بالمخاطر والتأخيرات والأحداث غير المتوقعة.
- Why is the decision to cross the bridge at full speed significant?
لماذا كان قرار عبور الجسر بأقصى سرعة مهماً؟
Because it showed courage and urgency to save time.
لأنه أظهر الشجاعة والحرص على توفير الوقت.
- What does Fix's cooperation during the attack suggest?
ماذا يدل تعاون فيكس أثناء الهجوم؟
It suggests loyalty and concern for the group's safety.
يدل على الولاء والحرص على سلامة المجموعة.
- How does Aouda influence Phileas Fogg emotionally?
كيف تؤثر أودا في فيليبس فوج عاطفياً؟
She brings out his kindness and emotional growth.
تظهر جانبه الإنساني وتطوره العاطفي.
- Do you think Phileas Fogg's calm behavior helped the group survive the dangers of the journey? Why / why not?
هل تعتقد أن هدوء فيليبس فوج ساعد المجموعة على النجاة من مخاطر الرحلة؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟
Yes, because his calmness helped him make wise decisions under pressure.
نعم، لأن هدوءه ساعده على اتخاذ قرارات حكيمة تحت الضغط.

Critical Thinking Questions



6. In your point of view, was Passepartout brave during the Sioux attack?

من وجهة نظرك، هل كان باسبارتو شجاعاً أثناء هجوم السيوكس؟

Yes, because he risked his life to save the passengers. نعم، لأنه خاطر بحياته لإنقاذ الركاب.

7. If you were in Fogg's position, would you choose loyalty over strict timing? Why?

إذا كنت في موقف فوج، هل كنت ستختار الولاء بدل الالتزام بالوقت؟ لماذا؟

Yes, because helping others is more important than keeping a schedule. نعم، لأن مساعدة الآخرين أهم من الالتزام بالجدول الزمني.

8. What do you think Aouda learned about Fogg during this part of the journey?

ما رأيك فيما تعلمته أودا عن فوج خلال هذا الجزء من الرحلة؟

She learned that he is courageous, loyal, and honorable. تعلمت أنه شجاع ومخلص وشريف.

9. Why do you think Colonel Proctor cooperated with Fogg after challenging him?

لماذا تعتقد أن الكولونيل بروكتور تعاون مع فوج بعد أن تحداه؟

Because they faced common dangers and needed teamwork. لأنهم واجهوا أخطاراً مشتركة واحتاجوا إلى العمل الجماعي.

10. How can we infer that teamwork was essential to overcome the journey's dangers?

كيف يمكننا أن نستنتج أن العمل الجماعي كان ضرورياً لتجاوز مخاطر الرحلة؟

Because passengers and crew worked together to survive the attacks. لأن الركاب وطاقم القطار عملوا معاً للنجاة من الهجمات.

11. How did Fogg demonstrate his calmness and decision-making skills during the crisis at the Platte River bridge?

كيف أظهر فوج هدوءه ومهاراته في اتخاذ القرار خلال أزمة جسر نهر بلات؟

He agreed to cross the bridge at full speed calmly and confidently. وافق على عبور الجسر بسرعة كاملة بهدوء وثقة.

12. Why was the loss of approximately thirty hours due to the rescue mission so devastating to Fogg's schedule?

It delayed his arrival in New York and added pressure to his tight plan. آخر وصوله لنيويورك وزاد الضغط على خطته الضيقة.

13. What role did Detective Fix play during the Sioux attack, and how did his actions align with his ultimate goal?

He fought to protect passengers because Fogg's success ensured a chance to arrest him later. قاتل لحماية الركاب لأن نجاح فوج يضمن فرصة القبض عليه لاحقاً.

14. Why was the kidnapping of Passepartout the most consequential event of the American journey up to that point?

لماذا كان اختطاف باسبارتو الحدث الأكثر تأثيراً في الرحلة الأمريكية حتى ذلك الحين؟

It delayed the journey and tested his courage and loyalty. آخر الرحلة واختبر شجاعته وولائه.

15. If you were Fix, would you have joined Fogg on the rescue mission, and why or why not?

إذا كنت مكان فيكس، هل كنت ستنتضم إلى فوج في مهمة الإنقاذ؟ ولماذا أو لماذا لا؟

Yes, helping Fogg was the only way to arrest him later. نعم، لأن مساعدة فوج كانت الطريقة الوحيدة للقبض عليه لاحقاً.

Test Yourself

1. How did Colonel Stamp Proctor become an ally to Fogg, despite their initial arrangement to fight a duel?
2. Describe Passepartout's heroic, yet ultimately costly, action that resulted in his capture.
3. How did Aouda react to Fogg's decision to risk his life and the wager to save Passepartout?
4. Discuss the theme of American frontier justice and violence as reflected in the political riot and the Sioux attack.
5. Why was Fogg, the man of steady routine, ready to engage in a spontaneous duel in the middle of the American prairie?
6. How did Fogg's continued, courteous treatment of Fix throughout this dangerous journey intensify the psychological conflict for the detective?
7. Discuss the role of Colonel Proctor's character from enemy to temporary ally in developing the themes of honor and necessity in the face of crisis.
8. Analyze Fogg's decision to prioritize human loyalty (rescuing Passepartout) over financial calculation (winning the challenge). What does this reveal about his true values?
9. In what way does this chapter challenge the idea that Fogg's wealth and planning can overcome all obstacles?
10. How did Fogg's action during the Sioux attack (leaving the train to rescue Passepartout) contrast with his initial commitment to the challenge?
11. What specific dangers did the Transcontinental Railroad present to the travelers, and how did these reflect the time period?

GIANTS

انتظروا!!!!

كتاب مراجعة العمالة
للصف الثاني الثانوي

العمالة
GIANTS
العمالة



Chapter

11

The Race for the Henrietta: New York to Liverpool

Key Vocabulary

rescue ⁽ⁿ⁾	إنقاذ	breeze ⁽ⁿ⁾	نسيم / هواء خفيف	alternative ⁽ⁿ⁾	بديل
glide ^(v)	ينساب / ينزلق	negotiate ^(v)	يتفاوض	sledge ⁽ⁿ⁾	زلجة
harbor	ميناء	mutiny ⁽ⁿ⁾	تمرد / عصيان	remarkable ^(adj)	ملحوظ، رائع
chaos ⁽ⁿ⁾	فوضى	unconscious	فاقد الوعي	herbal ⁽ⁿ⁾	عشبي
overcome ^(v)	يتغلب على	overwhelmed ^(adj)	مندهش	defeated ^(adj)	مهزوم
urgent ^(adj)	عاجل	crew ⁽ⁿ⁾	طاقم السفينة	conserve ⁽ⁿ⁾	يحفظ
swift ^(adj)	سريع	harsh ⁽ⁿ⁾	قاسي / شديد	discipline	انضباط
improvise ^(v)	يتكسر	pursuit ⁽ⁿ⁾	مطاردة	hesitation ⁽ⁿ⁾	تردد
captive ⁽ⁿ⁾	أسير	strategy ⁽ⁿ⁾	استراتيجية	exhausted ⁽ⁿ⁾	مرهق
expedition ⁽ⁿ⁾	رحلة / بعثة	mission ⁽ⁿ⁾	مهمة	diversion ⁽ⁿ⁾	تحويل

Summary

Phileas Fogg continued his great adventure, accompanied by courageous soldiers and Colonel Proctor, to rescue his loyal valet, Passepartout, prioritizing loyalty and honor over his schedule. After a grueling pursuit of the Sioux, they freed Passepartout, but lost about thirty hours, missing the Transcontinental Express. Fogg refused to give up, using a fast wind-sledge to reach Omaha and Chicago, then New York. Upon arrival, he missed the ship to Liverpool, so he chartered the small schooner Henrietta, negotiating with Captain Speedy for a swift journey. After the captain refused, Fogg persuaded the crew to follow him and took control of the ship, even burning parts of it to conserve fuel and increase speed. Finally, Fogg and his companions reached Liverpool in time to return to the Reform Club, demonstrating bravery, loyalty, and smart use of wealth to protect his friends and achieve his goal.

واصل فيليبس فوج مغامرته العظيمة بعد أن توجه مع الجنود الشجعان والكولونيل بروكتور لإنقاذ خادمه المخلص باسبارتو، متجاهلاً الجدول الزمني لصالح الولاء والشرف بعد مطاردة شاقة للسيكس، تمكنوا من تحرير باسبارتو، ولكن فقدوا نحو ثلاثين ساعة، ما أدى إلى تفويت قطار ترانسكانتينتال فوج لم يستسلم، واستعان بمركبة ثلجية سريعة للوصول إلى أوماها ثم شيكاغو، واستمروا نحو نيويورك عند الوصول، فاته القارب المخصص إلى ليفربول، فاضطر لاستئجار السفينة الصغيرة هنريتا، وتفاوض مع القبطان سييدي للحصول على مسار سريع بعد رفض القبطان، استمال الطاقم وأخذ السيطرة على السفينة، ثم اضطر لحرق أجزاء السفينة لتوفير الوقود وتسريع الوصول في النهاية وصل فوج ورفاقه إلى ليفربول في الوقت المناسب للعودة إلى نادي ريفورم، مثبتاً شجاعته، ولائه، واستخدامه الذكي للمال لضمان إنقاذ أحبائه وتحقيق هدفه

The Rescue and the Missed Connection

Phileas Fogg, accompanied by the courageous soldiers and Colonel Stamp Proctor, rushed into the freezing American wilderness to rescue his loyal valet, Passepartout. They had departed on the evening of December 6th, leaving Aouda, Fix, and the remaining passengers behind with the damaged train carriages.

فيلياس فوج، برفقة الجنود الشجعان والعقيد ستامب بروكتور، اندفعوا إلى البرية الأمريكية المتجمدة لإنقاذ خادمه المخلص، باسپورتو غادروا في مساء يوم ٦ ديسمبر، تاركين أودا وفيكس والركاب الباقين خلفهم مع عربات القطار التالفة.



Guided by loyalty and honor—virtues that momentarily outweighed even his legendary punctuality—Fogg pressed forward through the night. They followed the faint tracks left by the retreating Sioux, moving across rugged plains filled with danger and uncertainty.

مسترشداً بالولاء والشرف—الفضائل التي فاقت لفترة قصيرة حتى دفته الأسطورية—واصل فوج طريقه طوال الليل تبعوا آثار السيوف الضعيفة المتروكة من انسحابهم، متحركين عبر سهول وعرة مليئة بالخطر وعدم اليقين.

After nearly twenty-four hours of relentless pursuit and a brief but fierce clash with a small group of warriors, the rescue party located the main Sioux camp. Through a daring and silent strategy, they distracted the guards long enough for Fogg to slip into a tent where Passepartout lay bound. Without hesitation, Fogg cut the ropes and pulled his servant free. Then escape was swift and successful. By the time they returned to the train's location, the engine had just arrived with reinforcements from a nearby military post.

بعد ما يقرب من أربع وعشرين ساعة من المطاردة المستمرة واشتباك قصير ولكنه عنيف مع مجموعة صغيرة من المحاربين، وصل فريق الإنقاذ إلى المعسكر الرئيسي للسيو من خلال استراتيجية جريئة وصامتة، شتتوا حراس المعسكر بما يكفي ليتمكن فوج من التسلل إلى خيمته. كان فيها باسپورتو مقيداً بدون تردد، قطع فوج الحبال وأطلق سراح خادمه ثم كان الهروب سريعاً ونجحاً وعندما عادوا إلى موقع القطار، كانت المحرك قد وصل للتو مع تعزيزات من موقع عسكري قريب.

Aouda and Fix were overwhelmed with relief when they saw Fogg and Passepartout return safely. Their reactions, however, came from very different hearts: Aouda from gratitude and admiration, Fix from the grim satisfaction that the bank robber was still on course for Britain.

أودا وفيكس غمرتاهما الراحة عند رؤيتهما فوج وباسپورتو يعودان بأمان ومع ذلك، جاءت ردود أفعالهم من قلوب مختلفة تماماً: أودا من الامتنان والإعجاب، وفيكس من الرضا القاتم لأن لص البنك لا يزال متجهاً نحو بريطانيا.

But joy quickly turned to dread. Fogg checked his watch: it was the evening of December 7th. Nearly thirty hours had been lost. The Transcontinental Express was gone, and the next train would arrive far too late. The challenge seemed doomed.

لكن الفرح تحول بسرعة إلى رهبة. تحقق فوج من ساعته: كان مساء يوم ٧ ديسمبر وقد فقد ما يقرب من ثلاثين ساعة القطار العابر للقارة قد غادر، والقطار التالي سيصل متأخراً جداً بدا أن التحدي محكوم عليه بالفشل.

The Wind-Sledge Solution

حل الزلاجة الهوائية

Fogg, refusing to surrender, immediately sought an alternative plan. The remaining passengers told him that the next major station—Omaha, Nebraska—was still fifty miles away, accessible only by crossing open area now dusted with snow.

فوج، رافضاً الاستسلام، سعى على الفور لخطة بديلة أخبره الركاب الباقون أن المحطة الرئيسية التالية—أوماها، نبراسكا—لا تزال على بعد خمسين ميلاً، ويمكن الوصول إليها فقط عبر مساحة مفتوحة مغطاة الآن بالثلوج.

A captain from the military post explained that horses would move too slowly through the deep drifts But he offered an unusual alternative: a wind-sledge, a light vehicle fitted with runners and a tall sail, used by hunters to cross frozen ground at remarkable speeds

شرح قائد من الموقع العسكري أن الخيول ستتحرك ببطء شديد عبر الثلوج العميقة لكنه قدم بديلا غير عادي: الزلاجة الهوائية، وهي مركبة خفيفة مزودة بزلاجات وصارية طويلة، يستخدمها الصيادون لعبور الأرض المجمدة بسرعات مذهلة

Fogg seized the opportunity He hired the sledge and its driver, Mudge, at an incredible price

A powerful eastward wind filled the sail—perfect for the then desperate journey

هبّت رياح شرقية قوية وملأت الشراع—مثالية للرحلة اليائسة في ذلك الوقت

Fogg, Aouda, Passepartout, and Fix climbed aboard the small, uncomfortable craft The ride was very cold yet thrilling The sledge raced across the frozen area, gliding over the snow with astonishing speed

صعد فوج وأودا وباسبورتو وفيكس على متن المركبة الصغيرة وغير المريحة كانت الرحلة باردة جدا لكنها مثيرة اندفعت الزلاجة عبر المنطقة المجمدة، تنزلق فوق الثلج بسرعة مذهلة

They reached Omaha just as the first Chicago-bound train was departing Fogg had regained much of the lost time through determination and expense From Omaha they sped to Chicago, and from Chicago, they caught a direct express to New York

وصلوا إلى أوماها تماما عند مغادرة أول قطار متجه إلى شيكاغو استعاض فوج عن الكثير من الوقت الضائع بعزمته ونفقاته ومن أوماها أسرعوا إلى شيكاغو، ومن شيكاغو، استقلوا القطار السريع مباشرة إلى نيويورك

The journey was swift but tense Fix became increasingly anxious, Passepartout did everything he could to encourage his master, and Aouda watched over Fogg with quiet, constant concern They crossed America's vast landscape, passed the Great Lakes, and entered the busy stretch of the eastern states

كانت الرحلة سريعة لكنها متوترة أصبح فيكس أكثر قلقا، وباسبورتو فعل كل ما في وسعه لتشجيع سيده، وأودا راقبت فوج بقلق هادئ ومستمر عبروا الأراضي الشاسعة لأمريكا، ومروا بالبحيرات العظمى، ودخلوا المنطقة المزدحمة في الولايات الشرقية



Arrival in New York: December 11th

الوصول إلى نيويورك: ١١ ديسمبر

The group arrived in New York City at 11:45 am on December 11th, an extraordinary recovery considering the Sioux attack

وصلت المجموعة إلى مدينة نيويورك في الساعة ١١:٤٥ صباحا يوم ١١ ديسمبر، وهو انتعاش استثنائي بالنظر إلى هجوم السيوي

Fogg rushed to the docks, certain that he would catch the White Star liner China, scheduled to sail for Liverpool at 12:00 pm He believed he had fifteen minutes to spare

اندفع فوج نحو الأرصفة، واثقا من أنه سيلحق بسفينة وايت ستار تشاينا، المقرر إبحارها إلى ليفربول الساعة ١٢:٠٠ ظهرا كان يعتقد أن لديه خمس عشرة دقيقة متبقية

The docks were chaotic After pushing through the crowds, Fogg reached the collect terminal only to see the China already steaming out of the harbor, its funnels trailing thick smoke

كانت الأرصفة فوضوية بعد أن دفع نفسه عبر الحشود، وصل فوج إلى محطة الاستلام ليجد أن السفينة تشاينا قد أبحرت بالفعل، وأن مداخنها تخرج دخانا كثيفا

لقد فاتته الموعد بفارق خمس وأربعين دقيقة

He had missed it by forty-five minutes

This was the worst disaster yet The next transatlantic ship would not depart for a week Fogg could not afford even a single day's delay His face momentarily showed distress, but only for a heartbeat

كانت هذه أسوأ كارثة حتى الآن لن تغادر السفينة العابرة للأطلسي التالية لمدة أسبوع لم يكن بإمكان فوج تحمل تأخير حتى يوم واحد ظهر القلق على وجهه للحظة قصيرة فقط

"We must find another means," he said simply

"قال ببساطة: يجب أن نجد وسيلة أخرى"

The Desperate Purchase of the Henrietta

الشراء اليائس لهينريتا

Fogg guided Aouda and Passepartout to a small hotel and immediately began inspecting the docks for any ship capable of crossing the Atlantic

قاد فوج أودا وباسبورتو إلى فندق صغير وبدأ فوراً بتفقد الأرصفة بحثاً عن أي سفينة قادرة على عبور الأطلسي

At last, he found one: a three-masted schooner called the Henrietta, anchored at Pier 11. It was small but strong, built for speed and used mainly for pilot duty or swift cargo runs. أخيرا، وجد واحدة: شراعية بثلاث صواري تدعى "هنريتا"، مرساة في الرصيف ١١ كانت صغيرة لكنها قوية، مبنية للسرعة وتستخدم أساسا لخدمات الطيار أو نقل البضائع السريع

Its captain, Andrew Speedy, was a grizzled, irritable man with little patience for negotiation. كان قبطانها، أندرو سييدي، رجلا شيبا سريع الغضب، قليل الصبر على التفاوض

"Captain Speedy," Fogg said "I wish to charter your vessel to Liverpool"

قال فوج: القبطان سييدي، أرغب في استئجار سفينتك إلى ليفربول

Speedy burst into loud laughter

انفجر سييدي في ضحك صاخب

"To Liverpool? The Henrietta is bound for Bordeaux—and she'll not change course for any price"

"إلى ليفربول؟ السفينة هنريتا متجهة إلى بوردو — ولن تغير مسارها بأي ثمن"

Fogg immediately presented his famous bag of money

قدم فوج على الفور حقيبته الشهيرة من النقود

"Two thousand pounds to take us to Liverpool"

"ألفي جنيه لنقلنا إلى ليفربول"

Speedy refused. He had a contract for Bordeaux

رفض سييدي. كان لديه عقد إلى بوردو

Fogg raised the offer

رفع فوج عرضه

"Two thousand to take us to Bordeaux, and another two thousand to take us on to Liverpool"

"الفان إلى بوردو، والفان أخرى لنقلنا إلى ليفربول"

The captain, stunned by the enormous sum, agreed—but only to take them as passengers and only on the Bordeaux route. Fogg paid at once and returned for his companions.

القبطان، مذهول من المبلغ الهائل، وافق — ولكن فقط لنقلهم كركاب وفقط على خط بوردو ودفع فوج على الفور وعاد لأصحابه

That evening, the four boarded the Henrietta. Captain Speedy, though enriched, was irritable and deeply suspicious.

في تلك الليلة، صعد الأربعة على متن "هنريتا" القبطان سييدي، رغم أنه أصبح أغنى، كان سريع الغضب ومشبوهًا بشدة

The Mutiny and the Fire

التمرد والنار

The Henrietta sailed from New York on the night of December 11th. Fogg soon realized that Captain Speedy would never willingly divert toward Liverpool. So he prepared an even bolder plan.

أبحرت هنريتا من نيويورك في ليلة ١١ ديسمبر أدرك فوج سريعا أن القبطان سييدي لن يغير مساره نحو ليفربول طواعية لذا حضر خطة أكثر جرأة

Two days later, he approached the captain

بعد يومين، اقترب من القبطان

"I wish to buy your ship," he said calmly

"أقول بهدوء: أرغب في شراء سفينتك"

Speedy refused

رفض سييدي

Fogg increased his offer: £800 per mast, plus the value of the hull

رفع فوج عرضه: ٨٠٠ جنيه لكل صاري، بالإضافة إلى قيمة الهيكل

Speedy refused again

رفض سييدي مرة أخرى

Realizing negotiation was hopeless, Fogg quietly spoke with the crew. Tempted by generous bonuses, they agreed to support him.

بعد أن أدرك أن التفاوض مستحيل، تحدث فوج بهدوء مع الطاقم مغرون بالمكافآت سخية، وافقوا على دعمه

Fogg invited Captain Speedy to his cabin to rest and talk. He offered him a very strong herbal tea that made the captain feel extremely tired, and he soon fell into a deep sleep. While Speedy was unconscious, Fogg took control of the ship. He ordered the crew—now loyal to him because of his authority—to change course toward Liverpool. The captain woke up two days later, locked in his cabin and furious, but unable to stop what had happened.

دعا فوج القبطان سييدي إلى مقصورته للراحة والتحدث قدم له شايًا عشبيًا قويًا جدًا جعله يشعر بتعب شديد، وسرعان ما غرق في نوم عميق بينما كان سييدي فاقدًا للوعي، تولى فوج السيطرة على السفينة أمر الطاقم — المخلص له الآن بسبب سلطته — بتغيير المسار نحو ليفربول استيقظ القبطان بعد يومين، محبوسًا في مقصورته وغاضبًا، لكنه لم يستطع إيقاف ما حدث



Burning the Ship for Steam

حرق السفينة لتوليد البخار

Mid-Atlantic, another crisis struck: the coal was running low Strong headwinds consumed fuel at a rapid pace The engineer warned Fogg that they would never reach Ireland not with the remaining coal

في منتصف الأطلسي، ضربت أزمة أخرى: الفحم كان ينقذ الرياح المعاكسة القوية استهلكت الوقود بسرعة حذر المهندس فوج أنهم لن يصلوا إلى أيرلندا بالوقود المتبقي

Fogg made his most astonishing decision yet

اتخذ فوج قراره الأكثر إثارة للدهشة حتى الآن

He called Captain Speedy, now defeated, and said:

استدعى القبطان سيدي، المهزم الآن، وقال

"I will pay you one thousand pounds for the remainder of your vessel—everything except the engine and iron framework"

"سأدفع لك ألف جنيه لبقية سفينتك — كل شيء ما عدا المحرك والإطار الحديدي"

He intended to burn the ship itself

كان ينوي حرق السفينة نفسها

Speedy, overwhelmed by the money and the madness of the plan, accepted Fogg immediately ordered the crew to break down the wooden masts, cabins, deck structures, and railings All were fed into the furnace

وافق سيدي، المذهول من المال وجنون الخطة، أمر فوج الطاقم فورا بتفكيك الصواري الخشبية، الكبائن، هيكل السطح والسيارات تم تغذية كل ذلك في الفرن

The Henrietta became a roaring furnace blazing across the Atlantic The ship grew lighter and faster but also smaller with every hour By the time they sighted the Irish coast, only an iron shell remained

تحولت السفينة هنريتا إلى فرن ضخم يشتعل عبر الأطلسي أصبحت السفينة أخف وأسرع لكنها أيضا أصغر مع كل ساعة بحلول الوقت الذي رأوا فيه الساحل الأيرلندي، لم يتبق سوى هيكل حديدي

They reached Queenstown Harbor on the morning of December 20th Fogg sold the remaining iron hull to a trader and hurried with his companions by train to Dublin From there they crossed the Irish Sea on a fast ferry and reached Liverpool on the morning of December 21st

وصلوا إلى ميناء كوينزتاون صباح ٢٠ ديسمبر باع فوج الهيكل الحديدي المتبقي لتاجر وأسرع مع رفاقه بالقطار إلى دبلن ومن هناك عبروا بحر أيرلندا على عبارة سريعة ووصلوا إلى ليفربول صباح ٢١ ديسمبر

Fogg checked his watch: 11:40 am He still had nine hours and five minutes to reach the Reform Club

تحقق فوج من ساعته: ١١:٤٠ صباحا لا يزال أمامه تسع ساعات وخمس دقائق للوصول إلى نادي الإصلاح

As they stepped onto the platform, a rare, fleeting smile touched Fogg's lips He had done it

عندما صعدوا إلى الرصيف، ارتسمت ابتسامة نادرة وسريعة على شفتي فوج لقد فعلها

He had returned to England in time

لقد عاد إلى إنجلترا في الوقت المناسب

Values in This Chapter القيم في هذا الفصل

♦♦ **Respect for the law:** Fogg follows the officers without resistance, showing discipline and acceptance of legal authority

♦ احترام القانون: فوج يتبع الضباط دون مقاومة، مظهرا الانضباط والقبول بالسلطة القانونية

♦♦ **Using wealth responsibly:** Fogg pays an enormous bail not to show off, but to save time and protect his companions

♦ استخدام المال بمسؤولية: فوج يدفع كفالة ضخمة ليس للتباهي، بل لتوفير الوقت وحماية رفاقه

♦♦ **Moral courage:** Fogg proves that saving a life is more important to him than winning a wager or gaining praise

♦ الشجاعة الأخلاقية: يثبت فوج أن إنقاذ الحياة أهم بالنسبة له من الفوز بهان أو الحصول على مدح

♦♦ **Honesty and responsibility:** Passepartout admits his mistake openly, without excuses, accepting the consequences of his actions

♦ الصدق والمسؤولية: يعترف باسبورتو بخطئه بصراحة، دون أعذار، مقبلا عواقب أفعاله

Chapter 11 General Exercises

Setbook Questions & Answers



1. How does the rescue mission change the course of the journey?

كيف غيّرت مهمة الإنقاذ مسار الرحلة؟

It delayed the journey but proved Fogg's humanity.

أخرت الرحلة لكنها أثبتت إنسانية فوج.

2. How does the wind-sledge symbolize Phileas Fogg's character?

كيف ترمز الزلجة الشراعية لشخصية فيلياس فوج؟

It shows his creativity, courage, and determination.

تظهر إبداعه وشجاعته وإصراره.

3. Why is missing the China described as the worst disaster yet?

لماذا وُصف فوات سفينة تشاينا بأنه أسوأ كارثة حتى الآن؟

Because it nearly ended the journey and the bet.

لأنه كاد ينهي الرحلة والرهان.

4. Why is Captain Speedy difficult to negotiate with?

لماذا كان القبطان سيدي صعب التفاوض معه؟

Because he was greedy and cared only about money.

لأنه كان جشعاً ولا يهتم إلا بالمال.

5. Do you think Phileas Fogg was right to risk losing time in order to rescue Passepartout? Why / why not?

هل تعتقد أن فيلياس فوج كان محقاً في المخاطرة بالوقت من أجل إنقاذ باسبارتو؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟

Yes, because loyalty and friendship were more important than time.

نعم، لأن الولاء والصداقة كانا أهم من الوقت.

Critical Thinking Questions



6. In your point of view, what does Fogg's decision to use a wind-sledge show about his character?

من وجهة نظرك، ماذا يُظهر قرار فوج باستخدام المركبة الثلجية عن شخصيته؟

It shows that he is creative, determined, and never gives up.

يُظهر أنه مبدع ومصمم ولا يستسلم أبداً.

7. If you were in Fogg's position, would you have taken control of the Henrietta? Why?

إذا كنت في موقف فوج، هل كنت ستسيطر على السفينة هنريتا؟ لماذا؟

Yes, because it was the only way to continue the journey.

نعم، لأنه كان الحل الوحيد لمواصلة الرحلة.

8. What do you think burning parts of the ship reveals about Fogg's way of thinking?

ما رأيك فيما يكشفه حرق أجزاء من السفينة عن طريقة تفكير فوج؟

It shows that he uses money and resources wisely to reach his goal.

يُظهر أنه يستخدم المال والموارد بذكاء لتحقيق هدفه.

9. Why do you think the crew agreed to follow Fogg instead of Captain Speedy?

لماذا تعتقد أن الطاقم وافق على اتباع فوج بدلاً من القبطان سيدي؟

Because Fogg paid them well and showed strong leadership.

لأن فوج دفع لهم جيداً وأظهر قيادة قوية.

10. If Fogg had arrived two hours earlier, how would the encounter with Fix in Liverpool likely have played out differently?

لو وصل فوج قبل ساعتين، كيف كان سيختلف اللقاء مع فيكس في ليفربول؟

Fogg might have had more time to avoid arrest or resolve the misunderstanding calmly.

ربما كان لدى فوج وقت أطول لتجنب الاعتقال أو حل سوء الفهم بهدوء.

11. How can we infer that courage and loyalty were more important than the schedule in this chapter?
كيف يمكننا أن نستنتج أن الشجاعة والولاء كانا أهم من الجدول الزمني في هذا الفصل؟
☞ Because Fogg chose to save Passepartout even though it caused long delays.
لأن فوج اختار إنقاذ باسبارتوت رغم ما سببه ذلك من تأخيرات كبيرة.
12. Why was Captain Speedy initially so resistant to Fogg's offers, despite the large sums of money involved?
لماذا كان القبطان سبيدي في البداية مقاومًا لعروض فوج رغم الأموال الكبيرة؟
☞ He feared danger and did not trust outsiders, even with money offered.
لأنه خاف من الخطر ولم يثق بالغريباء، رغم الأموال المعروضة.
13. How did Detective Fix justify his decision to arrest Fogg immediately upon arrival in Liverpool?
كيف برّر المحقق فيكس قراره باعتقال فوج فور وصوله إلى ليفربول؟
☞ He believed Fogg was the Bank of England robber and wanted to act before he escaped.
لأنه اعتقد أن فوج سارق بنك إنجلترا وأراد التحرك قبل هروبه.
14. Why did Fix's success in arresting Fogg come at the moment of Fogg's greatest potential triumph?
لماذا جاء نجاح فيكس في اعتقال فوج عند لحظة انتصاره المحتمل الأكبر؟
☞ Fogg had almost completed his journey in time, so the arrest threatened his victory.
لأن فوج كان على وشك إكمال رحلته في الوقت المناسب، فكان الاعتقال يهدد فوزه.
15. What was Fogg's ultimate time calculation upon arrival in Liverpool, and why was this margin so critical?
ما هو حساب فوج النهائي للوقت عند وصوله إلى ليفربول، ولماذا كان هذا الفارق حاسمًا؟
☞ He had nine hours before his deadline; every minute counted to reach the Reform Club.
بقي له تسع ساعات قبل الموعد النهائي، وكل دقيقة كانت مهمة للوصول إلى نادي ريفورم.

Test Yourself

1. How did Fogg successfully recover much of the time lost during the thirty-hour rescue mission?
2. Explain the mutiny engineered by Fogg on the Henrietta, and how he was able to gain the crew's loyalty.
3. Describe the physical state of the Henrietta by the time it reached the Irish coast.
4. What was the exact nature of the legal formality Fogg had to submit to upon being arrested?
5. How does the wind-sledge journey across the plains represent Fogg's determination to utilize any means of transportation, regardless of comfort or convention?
6. Evaluate the conflict between Captain Speedy's professional contract (to go to Bordeaux) and Fogg's need for speed. Whose morality is superior in this situation?
7. In what ways does the final hour of the journey to Liverpool, followed by the immediate arrest, serve as the ultimate climax of Fogg's external conflict?
8. How did Aouda's presence affect Fogg's decision-making in New York and on the Henrietta?
9. What does the total amount of money Fogg was willing to spend in this chapter tell you about the depth of his personal fortune and his commitment to the challenge?
10. Discuss the theme of time as a resource in this chapter, specifically how Fogg manipulates and sacrifices resources (money, property) to manage time.
11. What does Fogg's calm acceptance of his arrest reveal about his adherence to the rule of law, even when he knows he is innocent?
12. What does Fogg's decision to burn the ship's wooden structure for fuel reveal about his commitment to the challenge and his view of financial loss?
13. Analyze Fogg's desperate purchase of the Henrietta and the subsequent burning of the ship. Is this action considered as reckless or brilliant? Justify your view.



Chapter

12

The Final Hour: Arrest, Proposal, and Victory

Key Vocabulary

scented (adj)	معطر	heartbroken (adj)	محطم القلب	depart (v)	يفادر
dock (n)	ميناء / رصيف	questioned (adj)	مشكوك فيه	blurred (adj)	مشوش
platform (n)	الرصيف	accusation (n)	اتهام	astounding (adj)	مذهل
scan (n)	فحص	booked (adj)	تم حجزه	realize (n)	يدرك
horizon (n)	الأفق	mock (v)	يسخر من	proposal (n)	اقتراح
deadline (n)	الموعد النهائي	defeated (n)	مهزوم	composure (n)	رياضة جاش / هدوء
unshaken (adj)	غير متأثر	embarrassed (adj)	محرج	integrity (n)	نزاهة
tension (n)	توتر	special (adj)	خاص	selflessness (n)	إيثار
traitor (n)	خائن	nerves (n)	أعصاب	scent (n)	رائحة
detention (n)	احتجاز	precision (n)	دقة	crowded (adj)	مزدحم



Summary



Phileas Fogg, Aouda, and Passepartout returned to Liverpool after their journey around the world, only for Fogg to be mistakenly arrested by Detective Fix for the Bank of England robbery. Despite tension and anger, Fogg remained calm and composed, while his friends anxiously waited. Fix later discovered the real culprit had been caught, leading to Fogg's release; he reclaimed his lost money and held Fix accountable without resentment. They hurried to London, with Fogg precisely calculating every second to meet the Reform Club's deadline. Crossing the International Date Line gave them an extra day, allowing them to arrive with one minute to spare. Finally, after settling accounts and losing part of his fortune, Fogg proposed to Aouda, ending their extraordinary journey happily, highlighting patience, loyalty, honor, and selflessness.

عاد فيليبس فوج وأودا وباسبارتو إلى ليفربول بعد رحلتهم حول العالم، ليعتقل فوج خطأ من قبل المحقق فيكس بتهمة سرقة بنك إنجلترا رغم التوتر والغضب، حافظ فوج على هدوئه وراحته، بينما انتظر أصدقاؤه بفارغ الصبر اكتشاف فيكس لاحقاً أن الجاني الحقيقي تم القبض عليه، فتم إطلاق سراح فوج، الذي استعاد ماله ووافق على مواجهة المسؤولية دون كراهية بعد ذلك، ساروا سريعاً إلى لندن، وحسب فوج كل ثانية بدقة للوصول إلى نادي ريفورم قبل الموعد النهائي عبرهم للخط الزمني الدولي منحهم يوماً إضافياً، ما مكنهم من الوصول قبل دقيقة واحدة فقط في النهاية، بعد تسوية الحسابات وخسارة جزء من ثروته، عرض فوج الزواج على أودا، لينتهي رحلتهم الاستثنائية بسعادة، مع إظهار القيم الأساسية: الصبر، الولاء، الشرف، والإيثار.



The Rescue and the Missed Connection

The morning air in Liverpool was fresh, scented with the smell of coal smoke from the crowded docks Phileas Fogg, Aouda, Passepartout, and Detective Fix stepped onto the platform of the busy Liverpool train station on Saturday, December 21st Fogg's eyes scanned the horizon with his usual calm precision, already calculating connections to London The journey around the world had brought him back to British soil with barely nine hours to spare before his 8:45 pm deadline at the Reform Club

كان هواء الصباح في ليفربول منعشاً معطراً برائحة دخان الفحم من الأرصفة المزدحمة خرج فيليبس فوج وأودا وباسبارتو والمحقق فيكس إلى رصيف محطة القطار المزدحمة في ليفربول يوم السبت ٢١ ديسمبر كانت عينا فوج تفحصان الأفق بدقته المعتادة الهادئة وهو يحسب بالفعل اتصالاته إلى لندن لقد أعادته رحلة حول العالم إلى التراب البريطاني مع بقاء أقل من تسع ساعات قبل



الموعد النهائي في نادي ريفورم الساعة ٨:٤٥ مساءً

Fix, his patience exhausted after months of following Fogg across continents, saw his opportunity With a heavy hand, he clapped Fogg on the shoulder Mr Phileas Fogg, he declared, voice sharp with authority, "you are under arrest!"

رأى فيكس: بعد أن نفذ صبره من متابعة فوج عبر القارات لعدة أشهر، فرصته بيده الثقيلة، صفع فوج على الكتف وقال بصوت حاد ومهيب: السيد فيليبس فوج: أنت تحت الاعتقال!

Fogg, unshaken by storms, shipwrecks, and hostile lands, felt a rare flicker of tension cross his usually calm face Passepartout, boiling with anger, lunged at Fix "Ah, Monsieur Fix! You knew it all along! You traitor!"

لم يهتز فوج من العواصف أو حطام السفن أو الأراضي المعادية، لكنه شعر بشرة نادرة من التوتر على وجهه الهادئ المعتاد انقض باسبارتو غاضباً على فيكس قائلاً: أه. مونسيور فيكس! لقد كنت تعرف كل شيء طوال الوقت! أيها الخائن!

"Passepartout, calm yourself," Fogg said, his voice steady "We must submit to the law" قال فوج بصوت ثابت: باسبارتو: هدي نفسك علينا أن نخضع للقانون

Fix hurried Fogg to the Custom House for formal detention, leaving Aouda and Passepartout heartbroken on the platform Fogg's fortune seemed lost, his honor questioned, and his precise plans threatened by an unjust accusation

أسرع فيكس بفوج إلى دار الجمارك للاعتقال الرسمي. تاركاً أودا وباسبارتو حزينين على الرصيف بدا أن ثروة فوج ضائعة، وأن شرفه محل تساؤل، وخططه الدقيقة مهددة بسبب اتهام غير عادل



Imprisonment and Despair

الاعتقال والياس

Inside the stark, quiet cell, Fogg was fingerprinted, booked, and left alone He sat with perfect calmness, though his mind raced through the chain of events that had led him here He glanced at his watch: 1:30 pm Time, which he had measured so precisely, now mocked him

داخل الزنزانة القاسية والهادئة، تم أخذ بصمات فوج، وتسجيله. وترك وحيداً جالساً بهدوء تام. رغم أن عقله كان يسرع في استرجاع سلسلة الأحداث التي أوصلته إلى هنا ألقي نظرة على ساعته: ١:٣٠ مساءً الوقت الذي كان يقيسه بدقة صار الآن يسخر منه

Outside, Passepartout and Aouda waited anxiously Aouda, though unfamiliar with English law, felt the weight of guilt "It is because of me," she whispered to Passepartout "He risked everything for my safety, and now he suffers"

في الخارج. انتظر باسبارتو وأودا بقلق شعرت أودا. رغم عدم درايتها بالقانون الإنجليزي. بثقل الشعور بالذنب همست لباسبارتو: "إنه بسببي لقد خاطر بكل شيء من أجل سلامتي. والآن هو يعاني"

Passepartout's loyalty weakened for the briefest moment Could his master truly be a criminal? Yet deep down, he knew Fogg's honor was absolute

تراجعت ولاء باسبارتو للحظة وجيزة هل يمكن أن يكون سيده حقاً مجرماً؟ ومع ذلك، في أعماق قلبه، كان يعلم أن شرف فوج مطلق



The True Culprit and Fogg's Release

الجانبي الحقيقي وإطلاق سراح فوج

At 5:30 pm, Fix returned, pale and shaken "Sir," he said, "there has been a grave mistake The real Bank of England robber, James Strand, was arrested in Brighton seventy-two hours ago The money has been recovered"

عاد فيكس الساعة ٥:٣٠ مساءً، شاحبا ومرتبجا قال: سيدي. لقد حدث خطأ جسيم السارق الحقيقي لبنك إنجلترا. جيمس ستراند، تم اعتقاله في برايتون قبل اثنتين وسبعين ساعة وتم استرداد المال

Fogg raised an eyebrow, calm as ever "You may leave, Mr Fix The warrant is no longer valid"

رفع فوج حاجبه. هادئا كالعادة يمكنك المغادرة. سيد فيكس لم يعد الأمر مستندا إلى مذكرة اعتقال صالحة

Fogg retrieved the 2,000 pounds lost in Calcutta from his travel funds and handed it to Fix, ensuring responsibility was acknowledged without hatred Fix left, defeated and embarrassed, while Fogg prepared for the final leg of his journey

استعاد فوج مبلغ ٢٠٠٠ جنيه ضائع في كلكتا من أمواله المخصصة للسفر وسلمه لفيكس. ضامنا الاعتراف بالمسؤولية دون كراهية غادر فيكس. مهزوما ومحرجا. بينما استعد فوج للمرحلة الأخيرة من رحلته



The Race to London

السباق إلى لندن

At 5:35 pm, Fogg, Aouda, and Passepartout hurried to arrange a special train to London The station buzzed with activity, and the delay of the private engine tested their nerves Fogg watched his chronometer with precision, calculating every second

في الساعة ٥:٣٥ مساءً. أسرع فوج وأودا وباسبارتو لترتيب قطار خاص إلى لندن كانت المحطة تعج بالنشاط. وأدى تأخر المحرك الخاص إلى اختبار أعصابهم راقب فوج كرونومتره بدقة. محسوبا كل ثانية

The train roared through the countryside, past rivers and towns, while Fogg's mind remained fixed on the Reform Club They arrived at London's terminus at 8:40 pm, leaving just five minutes to reach the brass doors of the Club A cab was hailed, and the streets of London blurred past them in a rapid motion

زار القطار عبر الريف. ماضيا على الأنهار والمدن. بينما ظل ذهن فوج مركزا على نادي ريفورم وصلوا إلى محطة لندن الساعة ٨:٤٠ مساءً. تاركين خمس دقائق فقط للوصول إلى أبواب النادي النحاسية استأجروا عربة. ومرت شوارع لندن بهم بسرعة كبيرة

The Twist of Fate: The Lost Day

Passepartout, racing through the streets, realized something astonishing: by crossing the International Date Line eastward, they had gained a day The Club's members believed it was Saturday, December 21st, but in reality, it was still Friday, December 20th

التحول في القدر: اليوم الضائع أدرك باسبارتو. وهو يركض عبر الشوارع. شيئا مذهلا: عبرهم للخط الزمني الدولي شرقا أكسبهم يوما إضافيا كان أعضاء النادي يعتقدون أنه السبت، ٢١ ديسمبر. لكن الواقع كان أنه لا يزال الجمعة، ٢٠ ديسمبر

At 8:44 pm, Fogg stepped into the Reform Club The five members stared in disbelief as Fogg calmly announced, "Gentlemen, I am here" He had arrived with one minute to spare, completing his journey in seventy-nine days, twenty-three hours, and fifty-nine minutes

في الساعة ٨:٤٤ مساءً، دخل فوج إلى نادي ريفورم حذر الأعضاء الخمسة بدهشة بينما أعلن فوج بهدوء: أيها السادة. أنا هنا لقد وصل مع بقاء دقيقة واحدة فقط. مكتملا رحلته في تسعة وسبعين يوما وثلاث وعشرين ساعة وتسع وخمسين دقيقة



The Aftermath: Ruin and Proposal

العواقب: الخراب والاقتراح

The next day, Fogg settled the accounts. The journey had cost £19,000, leaving him only a small portion of his original fortune. Fogg proposed to Aouda, saying, "It would be a great honor for me if you became my wife." The wedding was arranged for the following morning, December 23rd, bringing a happy conclusion to the extraordinary eighty-day journey.

في اليوم التالي، قام فوج بتسوية الحسابات. كلفت الرحلة ١٩,٠٠٠ جنيه، تاركاً له جزءاً صغيراً فقط من ثروته الأصلية. عرض فوج الزواج على أودا قائلاً: "سيكون شرفاً عظيماً لي إذا أصبحت زوجتي." تم ترتيب الزفاف في صباح اليوم التالي، ٢٣ ديسمبر، ليختتم رحلة الأيام الثمانين الاستثنائية بسعادة.

القيم في هذا الفصل Values in This Chapter

- ❖ **Respect for the law:** Fogg submits to arrest calmly, demonstrating discipline and honor despite unjust accusations.
- ❖ **Patience and composure:** He remains poised under imprisonment and the looming deadline.
- ❖ **Loyalty and devotion:** Passepartout and Aouda supported Fogg emotionally.
- ❖ **Integrity and fairness:** Fogg holds Fix accountable for financial losses without hatred.
- ❖ **Love and selflessness:** Fogg prioritizes Aouda's happiness over his own wealth or pride.
- ❖ **Perseverance and ingenuity:** Fogg overcomes temporal and logistical challenges to triumph.

• احترام القانون: فوج يخضع للاعتقال بهدوء، مظهراً الانضباط والشرف رغم الاتهامات غير العادلة.

• الصبر ورياسة الجاش: يظل متزناً أثناء السجن والموعد النهائي الوشيك.

• الولاء والتفاني: دعم باسبارتو وأودا فوج عاطفياً.

• النزاهة والإنصاف: يحاسب فوج فيكس على الخسائر المالية دون كراهية.

• الحب والإيثار: يضع فوج سعادة أودا فوق ثروته أو كبريائه.

• المثابرة والابتكار: يتغلب فوج على التحديات الزمنية واللوجستية لينتصر.

Chapter 12 General Exercises

Setbook Questions & Answers



1. Why is Fogg's calm reaction to the arrest important to the chapter's message?

لماذا تعدّ ردة فعل فوج الهادئة تجاه القبض عليه مهمة لرسالة الفصل؟

It shows his self-control and respect for rules.

تظهر ضبط النفس واحترام القوانين.

2. What does Passepartout's anger reveal about loyalty in the chapter?

ماذا يكشف غضب باسبارتو عن معنى الوفاء في هذا الفصل؟

It shows his strong loyalty and devotion to Fogg.

يظهر وفاءه الشديد وإخلاصه لفوج.

3. What does Fix's mistake show about human judgment?

It shows that people can be confident yet wrong.

ماذا تظهر غلطة فيكس عن الحكم البشري؟

تظهر أن الإنسان قد يكون واثقاً لكنه مخطئ.

4. Why does Fogg say, "We must submit to the law"?

Because he believed in justice and legal order.

لماذا قال فوج: «يجب أن نخضع للقانون»؟

لأنه كان يؤمن بالعدالة والنظام القانوني.

5. How does Fogg's calm reaction reflect his values during the crisis of arrest?

كيف تعكس ردة فعل فوج الهادئة قيمه أثناء أزمة القبض عليه؟

It reflects discipline, patience, and moral strength.

تعكس الانضباط والصبر والقوة الأخلاقية.

Critical Thinking Questions



6. Do you think Phileas Fogg was right to submit calmly to arrest in Liverpool? Why / why not?
هل تعتقد أن فيلياس فوج كان محقاً في خضوعه للاعتقال بهدوء في ليفربول؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟
Yes, because he respected the law and trusted justice. نعم، لأنه احترم القانون وثق في العدالة.
7. In your point of view, how did Fix's mistake affect Fogg's journey at the final stage?
من وجهة نظرك، كيف أثر خطأ فيكس على رحلة فوج في مرحلتها الأخيرة؟
It caused a dangerous delay and almost made Fogg lose the wager. تسبب في تأخير خطير وكاد يجعل فوج يخسر الرهان.
8. If you were in Fogg's position, how would you feel after being arrested unfairly?
إذا كنت في موقف فوج، كيف كنت ستشعر بعد اعتقالك ظلماً؟
I would feel upset, but I would try to stay calm like Fogg. كنت سأشعر بالضيق، لكنني سأحاول البقاء هادئاً مثل فوج.
9. What do you think the discovery of the extra day reveals about the role of time in the story?
ما رأيك فيما يكشفه اكتشاف اليوم الإضافي عن دور الزمن في القصة؟
It shows that time can change everything if calculated correctly. يظهر أن الزمن يمكن أن يغير كل شيء إذا حسب بدقة.
10. Why do you think Fogg forgave Fix despite losing valuable time because of him?
لماذا تعتقد أن فوج سامح فيكس رغم خسارته وقتاً ثميناً بسببه؟
Because Fogg was fair, honorable, and not revengeful. لأن فوج كان عادلاً وشريفاً ولا يسعى للانتقام.
11. How can we infer that Fogg's greatest reward was not money?
كيف يمكننا أن نستنتج أن أعظم مكافأة لفوج لم تكن المال؟
Because he gained love, happiness, and personal fulfillment. لأنه كسب الحب والسعادة والرضا الشخصي.
12. What does Aouda's marriage proposal reveal about the transformation of her feelings for Fogg throughout the journey?
ماذا يكشف عرض أودا للزواج عن تحول مشاعرها تجاه فوج طوال الرحلة؟
She had grown to love and trust Fogg deeply. أصبحت تحب فوج وتثق به بعمق.
13. What two specific financial gains did Fogg grant Passepartout after winning the wager?
ما هما المكسبان الماليان المحددان اللذان منحهما فوج لباسبارتو بعد الفوز بالرهان؟
A share of the winnings and the 2,000 pounds from Calcutta. حصة من الأرباح و ٢٠٠٠ جنيه من كلكتا.
14. If Fogg had not been arrested and had arrived five minutes late, how would the conclusion have been different, and how would he have reacted?
لو لم يُعتقل فوج ووصل متأخراً بخمس دقائق، كيف كان سيكون الاختتام مختلفاً؟
He would have lost the wager but stayed calm and dignified. كان سيخسر الرهان لكنه سيظل هادئاً ومجترماً.

Test Yourself

1. How did the timing of the true robber's arrest serve as the greatest irony and tragedy of Fix's long pursuit?

2. Describe the emotional state of Phileas Fogg while he was imprisoned, and how it differed from his behavior during other setbacks.
.....
3. Explain the simple yet profound reason why Fogg and Passepartout were convinced they had lost the wager.
.....
4. Explain in detail the error Fogg and the others made regarding the International Date Line.
.....
5. How did Passepartout manage to be at the Reform Club at the precise moment to correct the date error?
.....
6. Besides winning the £20,000, what was the ultimate prize Fogg gained from his circumnavigation?
.....
7. How did Fogg demonstrate that he forgave Detective Fix, despite the detective's actions causing Fogg to lose five critical hours?
.....
8. Evaluate Aouda's decision to propose marriage to Fogg while he was believed to be ruined. What statement does this make about the nature of their relationship?
.....
9. How does the discovery of the lost day reinforce the novel's central theme of time? Why is the time gained by traveling east a critical piece of global knowledge?
.....
10. In what ways does Passepartout's character flaw (his tendency to keep his watch on London time) ultimately become the key to Fogg's victory?
.....
11. What literary purpose does the £19,000 expenses serve, and why did Verne (the author) make the profit of the challenge so small (£1,000)?
.....
12. Discuss the change in Fogg's character from a cold, mechanical man of habit to a man of profound feelings and love, as evidenced in this final chapter.
.....
13. The novel ends not with the triumph of speed, but with the quiet victory of love. Evaluate the author's final message on the true value of life's journey.
.....
14. Why was it crucial that Fogg's victory was a matter of seconds rather than a comfortable margin of several days?
.....
15. Why did Fix's arrest of Fogg in Liverpool completely fulfill his duty, even though he knew the warrant was likely still invalid?
.....

Islamic Values

القيم الإسلامية

Key Vocabulary

circumstances	أحوال / ظروف	esteem	تقدير	virtuous	فاضل
compulsion	إكراه	hypocrite	منافق	benevolence	إحسان
consistent	متسق / ثابت	inner	داخلي	excellence	تفوق
deeds	أعمال	upright	مستقيم	passion	شغف
flawlessly	بلا خلل / بدون عيب	occasions	مناسبات	proficiency	كفاءة
hatred	كراهية	outer	خارجي	birthright	حق أصيل
malice	حقْد	praiseworthy	جدير بالحمد / بالثناء	manners	أخلاق
plagiarism	سرقة فكرية / انتحال	preaching	وعظ	polite	مؤدب
persuasion	إقناع	ranks	درجات	privacy	خصوصية
trustworthy	الأمين / الجدير بالثقة	springboard	نقطة انطلاق	property	ملك / ثروة
conformity	مطابقة	quality	قيمة	truthful	صادق
cultivate	زرع	altruism	الإيثار	truthfulness	الصدق

- Islam is a religion of mercy, kindness, tolerance, and ease.
الإسلام دين الرحمة والطف والتسامح واليسر.
- Tolerance is essential for protecting human rights and the rule of law.
التسامح ضروري لحماية حقوق الإنسان وسيادة القانون.
- It is a core principle of Islam and a moral religious duty.
هو مبدأ أساسي في الإسلام وواجب أخلاقي ديني.
- Tolerance means respecting, accepting, and appreciating diversity.
التسامح يعني احترام وقبول وتقدير التنوع.
- tolerance is the willingness to accept differing opinions or behaviors.
وفقاً لقاموس أكسفورد، التسامح هو الاستعداد لقبول الآراء أو التصرفات المختلفة.
- UNESCO defines tolerance as allowing people to follow their own beliefs peacefully.
تعرف اليونسكو التسامح بأنه السماح للناس باتباع معتقداتهم بسلام.
- Islam encourages sharing its message without coercion.
الإسلام يشجع على نشر رسالته بدون إكراه.
- Muslims are taught to forgive and show patience when wronged.
يُعلم المسلمون أن يغفروا ويصبروا عند التعرض للظلم.
- Tolerance comes from recognizing the dignity and freedom of others.
يأتي التسامح من الاعتراف بكرامة وحريات الآخرين.
- It should be emphasized and cultivated through education and policy.
يجب التأكيد عليه وتنميته من خلال التعليم والسياسات.
- Teaching children tolerance helps create a peaceful, inclusive society.
تعليم الأطفال التسامح يساعد في بناء مجتمع سلمي وشامل.



12. Muslims should avoid stereotypes and engage respectfully with other cultures.
يجب على المسلمين تجنب الصور النمطية والتعامل باحترام مع الثقافات الأخرى.
13. Tolerance does not mean compromising Islamic beliefs but fostering dialogue.
التسامح لا يعني التنازل عن المعتقدات الإسلامية بل تعزيز الحوار.
14. Islam promotes coexistence, as seen in neighborhoods with mosques, churches, and synagogues.
الإسلام يشجع على التعايش، كما يظهر في الأحياء التي تضم مساجد وكنائس وكُنس.
15. The Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) and his teachings are the foundation of Islamic tolerance.
النبي محمد ﷺ وتعاليمه هما أساس التسامح في الإسلام.
16. Justice in Islam applies equally to all, regardless of religion, gender, or status.
العدل في الإسلام ينطبق على الجميع بغض النظر عن الدين أو الجنس أو المكانة.
17. Caliph Ali's fair court judgment exemplifies Islamic justice in practice.
حكم الخليفة علي العادل في المحكمة يمثل العدالة الإسلامية عملياً.
18. Altruism is a key Islamic value, showing selfless concern for others.
الإيثار قيمة إسلامية رئيسية، تظهر الاهتمام بالآخرين دون أنانية.
19. The companions of the Prophet displayed great altruism, sharing wealth and helping others.
أظهر صحابة النبي إيثاراً عظيماً، حيث شاركوا ثرواتهم وساعدوا الآخرين.
20. Islam is a religion of love, peace, and cooperation for the common good.
الإسلام دين المحبة والسلام والتعاون من أجل الخير العام.



Choose the correct answer

1. Tolerance is a religious moral duty that is not based on..... towards religions and beliefs.
a. interest b. eagerness c. indifference d. enthusiasm
2. Tolerance must be among Muslims.
a. pressed b. emphasized c. passed d. passed
3. Everyone is free to adhere to one's own
a. convictions b. persuasion c. contradiction d. rejection
4. Tolerance means the diversity of the world's cultures.
a. expecting b. respecting c. rejecting d. disrespecting
5. We should the message of Islam to others and call them to become Muslims.
a. envy b. meet c. convey d. leave
6. Islam teaches tolerance on all individuals, group and state.
a. levels b. grades c. classes d. places
7. Tolerance is the that upholds human rights.
a. material b. device c. mechanism d. machine
8. We should avoid towards other cultures and races.
a. steps b. challenges c. attitudes d. stereotypes
9. Tolerance is a part of a Muslim's belief.
a. integral b. inessential c. eternal d. internal
10. Islam us to be tolerant and forgive others.
a. discourages b. urges c. pushes d. rushes
11. History is a to the Islamic justice.
a. wit b. looker c. witness d. sign

12. Everyone has a for justice.
a. hunger b. inspiring c. desire d. aspiring
13. Minds of young pupils can be by reading religious stories.
a. elevated b. elaborated c. indicated d. inflamed
14. Citizens mustn't be in Islam, as they have equal rights and duties.
a. stressed b. impressed c. oppressed d. depressed
15. Islamic justice Muslims' enemies.
a. inspired b. astonished c. admired d. desired
16. She is so that she gives what she needs to others to help them
a. alternative b. enthusiastic c. altruistic d. interesting
17. The opposite of altruism is
a. generosity b. bravery c. richness d. selfishness
18. We should work towards good values with our best
a. endeavours b. eases c. idleness d. apathy
19. Altruism is by Allah in the Quran.
a. raised b. paced c. based d. praised
20. Islam calls for and cooperation for the common good.
a. awareness b. acquaintance c. consciousness d. experience

← **B** Write [T] for true statements and [F] for false ones →

1. One should not tolerate the existence of opinions that s/he dislikes or disagrees with. [.....]
2. Practicing of tolerance means toleration of social injustice. [.....]
3. Practicing of tolerance does not mean weakening one's convictions. [.....]
4. Human beings are naturally diverse in their behavior and values. [.....]
5. Tolerance comes from our recognition of the fundamental freedom of thought, conscience and belief. [.....]
6. Tolerance does not uphold cultural pluralism. [.....]
7. There must be some kind of tolerance between Muslims and non-Muslims. [.....]
8. Islam teaches no tolerance for injustice or oppression. [.....]
9. Tolerance in Islam is not lip service. [.....]
10. Both the Quran and the Sunna encourage tolerance and forgiveness. [.....]
11. Justice means to follow your own desires. [.....]
12. The judge must stick to justice to settle disputes. [.....]
13. Prophet's (BPUH) words and actions reflect justice. [.....]
14. The rich and the poor may adhere to justice. [.....]
15. Islam embraces the highest level of justice. [.....]
16. Selflessness is a humanitarian endeavor praised by all societies. [.....]
17. An altruistic individual shows a selfish concern for oneself. [.....]
18. Selfishness means making a sacrifice by giving others preference over oneself. [.....]
19. Altruism is a sign of true faith in Allah (GBTH). [.....]
20. Altruism indicates that Islam is a religion of fear not love and peace. [.....]

1-F, 2-F, 3-T, 4-T, 5-T, 6-F, 7-T, 8-T, 9-T, 10-T, 11-F, 12-T, 13-T, 14-T, 15-T, 16-T,
17-F, 18-F, 19-T, 20-F

Translation

A

Translate the following into Arabic

1. Tolerance means accepting the fact that human beings, who are naturally diverse in their appearance, situation, speech, behavior and values, have the right to live in peace.

يعني التسامح قبول حقيقة أن البشر، الذين يختلفون بطبيعتهم في المظهر والظروف والكلام والسلوك والقيم، لهم الحق في العيش بسلام.

2. Mercy, respect and tolerance towards different beliefs stem from the essence of Islam, and the teachings that Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) has prescribed.

الرحمة والاحترام والتسامح تجاه المعتقدات المختلفة تنبع من جوهر الإسلام وتعاليم النبي محمد (صلى الله عليه وسلم).

3. Muslims and non-Muslims, male or female, black or white are all equal under Islamic law and are subjected to the same rules of justice.

المسلمون وغير المسلمين، ذكورا وإناثا، سودا وبياضا، جميعهم متساوون في ظل الشريعة الإسلامية ويخضعون لنفس قواعد العدالة.

4. Altruism denotes selfless acts done for the benefits of others in spite of personal needs. It is a humanitarian endeavor praised by all societies.

الايثار يعني القيام بأفعال غير أنانية لصالح الآخرين على الرغم من الاحتياجات الشخصية. إنه جهد إنساني تشيد به جميع المجتمعات.

D

Translate the following into English

١. التسامح هو العفو عند المقدرة والتغاضي حينما يخطئ الآخرون.

☞ Tolerance is forgiving when one is able to take revenge and overlooking others' mistakes.

٢. يدعو الإسلام إلى نشر التسامح والرحمة بين الناس على اختلاف دينهم ومعتقداتهم.

☞ Islam calls for spreading tolerance and mercy among people of different religions and beliefs.

٣. بالعدل تبني الأمم وبدونه تزول.

☞ With justice, nations are built, and without it, they collapse.

٤. الليثار مبدأ إسلامي يؤدي إلى نشر المحبة والترابط المجتمعي، وهو ترجمة واقعية لتعاليم الإسلام.

☞ Altruism is an Islamic principle that leads to spreading love and social cohesion, serving as a practical translation of Islamic teachings.

Unit 6

Iconic Figures

شخصيات أيقونية

Key Vocabulary

adamantly	بصلابة	personality	شخصية	sorrow	أسى / حزن
chieftain	زعيم قبيلة	prolific	حافظ	widows	أرامل
craving	رغبة شديدة	cradle	مهد	collaborate	يتعاون / ينسق
enormous	ضخم	transmission	نقل	courage	شجاعة
expeditions	غزوات / بعثات	tribe	قبيلة	exemplary	قدوة / مثالي
formidable	هائل	valuable	قيم / ذو قيمة	imprisoned	مستجون
gifted	موهوب	disabled	عاجز	opposition	معارضة
legacy	تراث / ميراث	generous	كريم	rivals	منافسين
memorization	حفظ	hardship	ضائقة / معاناة	rulers	حكام
narrator	راوي	profits	فوائد / مكاسب	strengthen	يقوي

1) Moses (BPUH)

موسى عليه السلام

- Moses (BPUH) is mentioned 136 times in the Qur'an, making him one of the most significant prophets of Allah (GBTH).
موسى عليه السلام ذكر ١٣٦ مرة في القرآن، مما يجعله من أهم أنبياء الله تعالى.
- He was born in Egypt and placed in a casket on the Nile to save him from Pharaoh's decree to kill newborn Israelite boys.
ولد في مصر ووضعه في تابوت على النيل لينقذه من أمر فرعون بقتل كل مولود من بني إسرائيل.
- Pharaoh's wife adopted Moses, raising him as her own son.
تبنت زوجة فرعون موسى وربته كابن لها.
- As an adult, Moses (BPUH) fled to Midan, married, and lived there for eight to ten years.
عندما كبر موسى عليه السلام، فر إلى مدين، وتزوج، وعاش هناك لمدة ثماني إلى عشر سنوات.
- Allah (GBTH) granted him miracles, including turning his stick into a snake and his hand shining brightly.
منحه الله تعالى معجزات، منها تحويل عصاه إلى ثعبان وإشراق يده بالضوء.
- Allah (GBTH) commanded Moses to confront Pharaoh and call him to worship Allah, assisted by his brother Harun.
أمره الله تعالى بمواجهة فرعون ودعوته لعبادة الله، بمساعدة أخيه هارون.
- Moses received the Torah, which guides the Israelites and foretells the prophethood of Muhammad (BPUH).
تلقى موسى التوراة، التي تهدي بني إسرائيل وتنبئ بنبوته محمد ﷺ.
- He performed many miracles, including the parting of the Red Sea, to save the Israelites from Pharaoh's army.
أدى العديد من المعجزات، بما في ذلك شق البحر الأحمر، لإنقاذ بني إسرائيل من جيش فرعون.
- Moses had direct conversations with Allah (GBTH), earning him the title "the one addressed by Allah."
كان لموسى محادثات مباشرة مع الله تعالى، مما أكسبه لقب "المخاطب من الله".
- His life teaches believers to trust Allah's wisdom and remain steadfast despite challenges.
حياته تعلم المؤمنين الثقة بحكمة الله والثبات على الإيمان رغم الصعوبات.

2) Ubada ibn al-Samit

عبادة بن الصامت

1. Ubada ibn al-Samit al- Ansarī (APWH) was a prominent companion present at the first and second pledges at Aqaba.
عبادة بن الصامت الأنصاري (رضي الله عنه) كان صحابياً بارزاً حاضراً في البيعتين الأوليين بالعقبة.
2. He was the leader of Banū ' Awf ibn al-Khazraj, a tribe of the Ansar in Yathrib.
كان قائد بني عوف بن الخزرج، إحدى قبائل الأنصار في يثرب.
3. Ubada was one of the first twelve people of Yathrib to embrace Islam.
كان عبادة من أوائل اثني عشر شخصاً من يثرب الذين أسلموا.
4. He served as a Nuqbā' representative and was about forty years old at that time.
خدم كممثل للنواب وكان عمره حينها حوالي أربعين عاماً.
5. Ubada was a scribe who wrote down the revelations for Prophet Muhammad (BPUH).
كان عبادة كاتباً سجل الوحي للنبي محمد ﷺ.
6. He was also a fearless warrior who participated in major battles like Badr, Uhud, and Khandaq.
كان أيضاً محارباً شجاعاً شارك في معارك كبرى مثل بدر وأحد والخندق.
7. He played a key role as a field commander during the Muslim conquest of Egypt.
لعب دوراً رئيسياً كقائد ميداني أثناء الفتح الإسلامي لمصر.
8. Ubada was skilled in engineering and helped plan the city of Fustat and its first mosque.
كان عبادة ماهراً في الهندسة وساهم في تخطيط مدينة الفسطاط ومسجدها الأول.
9. He served as a Qur'an teacher, Mufti, and judge, appointed by Caliph Umar ibn al-Khattab.
خدم كمعلم قرآن، مفتي وقاض، بتعيين من الخليفة عمر بن الخطاب.
10. Ubada ibn al-Samit passed away in Ramla, Palestine, in 34 AH (667 CE) at the age of 72.
توفي عبادة بن الصامت في الرملة بفلسطين عام ٣٤ هـ (٦٦٧ م) عن عمر يناهز ٧٢ عاماً.

3) Al-Layth ibn Sa'd

الليث بن سعد

1. Al-Layth ibn Sa'd was a great Imam of Islamic jurisprudence and a pious, humble, and kind-hearted scholar.
الليث بن سعد كان إماماً عظيماً في الفقه الإسلامي وعالماً تقياً، متواضعاً وطيب القلب.
2. His full name is al-Layth ibn Sa' d ibn ' Abd al-Ra·mān al-Fahmī, and he was born in 94 AH (713 CE) in Qalqashanda, Egypt.
اسمه الكامل الليث بن سعد بن عبد الرحمن الفهمي، وُلد عام ٩٤ هـ (٧١٣ م) في قلقشندا، مصر.
3. From a young age, he pursued religious knowledge and studied under prominent scholars of his time.
منذ صغره، طلب العلم الديني ودرس عند كبار علماء عصره.
4. He was known for his sharp intellect, genius, and excellence in learning.
كان معروفاً بذكائه الحاد وعبقريته وتميزه في التعلم.
5. In 113 AH, he traveled to Hijaaz to perform Hajj and further his knowledge.
في ١١٣ هـ، سافر إلى الحجاز لأداء الحج وزيادة علمه.
6. Al-Layth was a trusted jurist and hadith narrator, attracting students from all regions.
كان الليث فقيهاً موثقاً وراويًا للحديث، وجذب الطلاب من كل المناطق.
7. Scholars praised his memory, knowledge, and mastery of religious matters, with Imam al-Shāfi' ī saying he was more knowledgeable than Malik.
أشاد العلماء بحفظه ومعرفته وإتقانه للشؤون الدينية، وقال الإمام الشافعي إنه أعلم من مالك.
8. He held high administrative posts, including head of the Administration of Finance in Egypt, but declined to become the ruler of Egypt.

تولى مناصب إدارية عالية، بما في ذلك رئيس إدارة المالية في مصر، لكنه رفض أن يصبح حاكمًا لمصر.

9. Despite his wealth, he was generous and spent most of his money on charity for scholars, students, and the poor.

على الرغم من ثرائه، كان كريماً وأنفق معظم أمواله في الصدقة لدعم العلماء والطلاب والفقراء.

10. Al-Layth ibn Sa'd passed away on 15 Sha'ban, 175 AH (791 CE) in Cairo, and his funeral was attended by many people.

توفي الليث بن سعد في ١٥ شعبان ١٧٥ هـ (٧٩١ م) في القاهرة، وحضر جنازته عدد كبير من الناس.

4) Nusayba Bint Ka'b (the Courageous Woman) نسبية بنت كعب

1. Nusayba Bint Ka'b Al-Maziniyya embraced Islam from its early days and lived in Madina as a member of Bani al-Najjar.

نسبية بنت كعب المزنية أسلمت منذ بدايات الإسلام وعاشت في المدينة من قبيلة بني النجار.

2. She was the sister of Abd Allah ibn Ka'b and mother of Abd Allah and Ḥabīb ibn Zayd al-Anasra.

كانت أخت عبد الله بن كعب وأم عبد الله وحبيب بن زيد الأنصاري.

3. Nusayba was one of the first two courageous women to pledge allegiance to Prophet Muhammad (BPUH).

كانت نسبية من أوائل امرأتين شجاعتين بايعتا النبي محمد ﷺ.

4. She fought bravely alongside men in the Battle of Uhud, defending the Prophet (BPUH) with her sword and bow.

قاتلت بشجاعة بجانب الرجال في معركة أحد، مدافعة عن النبي ﷺ بسيفها وقوسها.

5. She sustained at least 12 major wounds in Uhud, one of which took a year to heal.

أصيبت بها لا يقل عن ١٢ جرحاً كبيراً في أحد، واستغرق أحدها عاماً كاملاً للشفاء.

6. The Prophet (BPUH) praised her courage and prayed for her to be in Paradise.

أشاد النبي ﷺ بشجاعتها ودعا لها بالجنة.

7. In her sixties, she fought at Al-Yamama during Abu Bakr's rule, losing a hand and sustaining 11 wounds.

في ستينيات عمرها، قاتلت في اليمامة خلال حكم أبي بكر رضي الله عنه، وفقدت يداً وأصيبت بأ١١ جرحاً.

8. After the martyrdom of her sons, she displayed immense patience and devoted herself to educating women in Madina.

بعد استشهاد ولديها، أظهرت صبراً هائلاً وكرست حياتها لتعليم نساء المدينة.

9. Nusayba questioned the Qur'an about women's mention, leading to the revelation of a verse addressing her concern.

استفسرت نسبية عن ذكر النساء في القرآن، فأنزل الله تعالى آية لتجيب على استفسارها.

10. She passed away in 13 AH and was buried in al-Baqī ' Cemetery, leaving a legacy of courage and strength.

توفيت نسبية في السنة ١٣ هـ ودُفنت في قبر البقيع، تاركة إرثاً من الشجاعة والقوة.



Choose the correct answer

- Moses (PBUH) was born in into an Israelite household.
 - Palestine
 - Egypt
 - Gaza
 - Jerusalem
- The Pharaoh's wife Moses (PBUH) and raised him.
 - adapted
 - grew
 - adopted
 - brought
- Although Moses (PBUH) invited Pharaoh to worship Allah alone, Pharaoh him.
 - obeyed
 - abide
 - disobeyed
 - paid
- Banū Isrā'īl were so that Moses (PBUH) was supported by so many miracles.
 - stubborn
 - obedient
 - dependent
 - humble

5. As Banu Israil disobeyed Moses (PBUH), he them for the rest of his life.
a. accompanied b. occupied c. relied on d. departed
6. Ubadh was one of those who attended the first and second at Aqabah.
a. conference b. meeting c. pledges d. assembly
7. Ubadh was a fearless.....who participated in every battle the Prophet (PBUH) fought.
a. handsome b. warrior c. architect d. scribe
8. Ubadh was a/an as he knew how to plan buildings.
a. warrior b. handsome c. architect d. scribe
9. Ubadh was in planning and developing the city of Fustat.
a. involved b. produced c. introduced d. induced
10. Ubadh died in
a. Egypt b. Mecca c. Medina d. Palestine
11. Al-Layth ibn Sa' d was a/an.....scholar, a sincere, humble, and kind-hearted person.
a. old b. big c. righteous d. ancient
12. Al-Layth was born in
a. Egypt b. Isfahan c. Persia d. Iran
13. Since Al-Layth was young, he had a/an mind.
a. idle b. fabulous c. lazy d. simple
14. Al-Layth several jobs.
a. appointed b. worked c. attended d. occupied
15. He was so that he used to spend most of his money in charity to support his fellow scholars.
a. generous b. sincere c. honest d. genius
16. Nusaybah Islam from the very beginning.
a. pressed b. impressed c. adapted d. adopted
17. Nusaybah was so that she fought alongside men in battle.
a. kind-hearted b. shy c. weak d. courageous
18. Muslim women play roles in every field they take part in.
a. distinguished b. extinguished c. disregarded d. invisible
19. Nusaybah was the most distinguished woman who took part in the Battle of
a. Uhud b. Badr c. Yarmouk d. Khaybar
20. The synonym of sustained in the sentence (She sustained at least 12 major wounds) is
a. maintained b. suffered c. upheld d. provid

← **B** Write [T] for true statements and [F] for false ones →

1. Moses (BPUH) is a well-known prophet and messenger of Allah (GBTH). [.....]
2. Moses (BPUH) was raised far away from Pharaoh's palace. [.....]
3. The Torah foretells the prophethood of Prophet Muhammad (BPUH). [.....]
4. The Pharaoh was drowned in the Nile. [.....]
5. Harun and Moses passed away after they arrived in Jerusalem. [.....]
6. Ubada ibn al-Samit was a mere warrior. [.....]
7. Ubada ibn al-Samit was one of those who were present during the first and second pledges at Aqaba. [.....]
8. Ubada ibn al-Samit embraced Islam after the second pledge at Aqaba. [.....]
9. Ubada ibn al-Samit served in Egypt as a corps commander. [.....]
10. Ubada ibn al-Samit died in Egypt. [.....]

11. Al-Layth was one of the great jurists and scholars of Egypt. [.....]
12. Al-Layth was born in a village in Egypt. [.....]
13. Al-Layth was a prominent scholar who never narrated ḥadīth. [.....]
14. Al-Layth was asked to be the ruler of Egypt, but he refused. [.....]
15. Al-Layth was one of the poor scholars. [.....]
16. Nusayba was an inspirational example of strong Muslim womanhood. [.....]
17. Nusayba displayed immense patience and strength. [.....]
18. Nusayba wondered why women are mentioned more than men in the Qur'ān. [.....]
19. She was the most distinguished woman who took part in the Battle of Badr. [.....]
20. Nusayba died in the 13th Hijrī year and was buried in Mecca. [.....]

1-T, 2-T, 3-T, 4-T, 5-F, 6-F, 7-T, 8-T, 9-T, 10-F, 11-T, 12-F, 13-F, 14-T, 15-T, 16-T, 17-T, 18-F, 19-T, 20-T

Translation



Translate the following into Arabic

1. The Torah contained teachings about the Oneness of Allah, the Day of Judgment. It also foretold the prophethood of Prophet Muhammad (PBUH).
احتوت التوراة على تعاليم حول وحدانية الله ويوم القيامة. كما تنبأت بنبوّة النبي محمد (صلى الله عليه وسلم).
2. Ubadah Ibn As-Samit was one of the main field commanders during the Muslim conquest of Egypt.
كان عبادة بن الصامت أحد القادة الميدانيين الرئيسيين خلال الفتح الإسلامي لمصر.
3. Al-Layth ibn Sa' d was one of the greatest jurists. He was a pious scholar, a sincere , generous , and kind-hearted person.
كان الليث بن سعد أحد أعظم الفقهاء. كان عالماً تقياً، مخلصاً، كريماً وطيب القلب.
4. Nusaybah's courage in the battlefield was also matched by her steadfastness in faith. When both of her sons were martyred , she displayed immense patience and strength.
كانت شجاعة نسبية في ميدان المعركة مماثلة لثباتها في الإيمان. عندما استشهد ابنها، أظهرت صبراً وقوة هائلين.



Translate the following into English

١. عاند بنو إسرائيل نبي الله موسى عليه السلام بعد أن جاءتهم البينات فعاقبهم الله عز وجل على ذلك
The Israelites disobeyed Prophet Moses (PBUH) after clear signs came to them, so Allah punished them for that.
٢. ينبغي على المسلم أن يتخذ الصحابة قدوة له في حياته اليومية.
A Muslim should take the Companions as role models in his daily life
٣. ينبغي للمسلم الحرص على طلب العلم فإنه لا يتعارض مع كسب المال.
A Muslim should strive to seek knowledge, as it does not conflict with earning money.
٤. للمرأة المسلمة دورها الفعال في كل المجالات والتاريخ الإسلامي يشهد بذلك.
The Muslim woman has an active role in every field, and Islamic history testifies to that.

A

Vocabulary & Structure

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- "An inclusive society accepts diversity." "Inclusive" here can be replaced by
a. selfish b. included c. unfair d. welcoming e. shy
- "After the match, they quarreled over the referee's call." "Quarrel over" here can be replaced by
a. argue over b. dispute c. agree on d. reconcile e. cooperate

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- A civilized society respects cultural and opinion
a. cooperation b. diversity c. fairness d. empathy
- To is to make a person or thing part of a group, list, or total.
a. belong b. invite c. include d. wave
- If the team leader had welcomed the members warmly, the team valued and included.
a. felt b. have felt c. would feel d. would have felt

B

Translation

Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d.

It has always been said that failure is instructive. The person who is really intelligent learns much more from his failures than from his successes.

- يقال دائما أن الفشل مفيد، فالشخص الذكي فعلا يتعلم من إخفاقاته أكثر بكثير من نجاحاته.
- يقال دائما أن الفشل من، فالشخص الذكي فعلا يتعلم من إخفاقاته أكثر بكثير من نجاحاته.
- يقال دائما أن الفشل مستفيد، فالشخص الذكي فعلا يتعلم من إخفاقاته أكثر بكثير من نجاحاته.
- يقال دائما أن الفشل مفيد، فالشخص الذكي فعلا يتعلم من إخفاقاته أقل بكثير من نجاحاته.

C

Writing

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- Water won't boil unless it is heated. (If)
- If I get up early, I will catch the 6:00 o'clock bus. (unless)

A

Vocabulary & Structure

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- "They had to delay the match because of bad weather." "Delay" here is a synonym of
 a. ensure b. put off c. value d. postpone e. reflect
- "The security forces decided to separate the two teams." "Separate" here is a synonym of
 a. recognition d. mentorship b. enthusiasm c. divide e. split

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- They finished the project faster because of good
 a. obstacles b. teamwork c. quarrels d. household
- means creating new ideas or solutions.
 a. Campaign b. Innovation c. Note-taking d. Funding shout,
- I can hear you well. You shout.
 a. are not permitted b. are prohibited c. aren't allowed d. don't have to

B

Translation

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d.

تسهم المشروعات القومية الكبرى التي يجري تنفيذها في كل أنحاء مصر في حل الكثير من المشكلات الاقتصادية، وتوفير فرص عمل للشباب الطامح إلى حياة أفضل.

- The major international projects that are being implanted throughout Egypt contribute to solving many economic problems and providing job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.
- The major national projects that are being implemented throughout Egypt contribute to solve many economic problems and provide job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.
- The major national projects that are being implemented throughout Egypt contribute to solving many economic problems and providing job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.
- The major global projects that are being implemented throughout Egypt contribute to solving many economical problems and providing job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.

C

Writing

Write your own campaign poster about

"recycling".

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A

Vocabulary & Structure

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

- "After the meeting, the teacher asked students to gather in the school hall." "Gather" here is an antonym of
 a. assemble b. scatter c. collect d. meet e. disperse
- "He really respects his teachers." "Respects" here is a synonym of
 a. esteem b. promote c. insult d. honor e. ignore

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Students for the morning assembly in the school yard.
 a. echo b. gather c. raise d. reflect
- To means to appreciate or look at something with approval.
 a. inspire b. respect c. admire d. ban
- My uncle has stayed with me for a month, but now he to leave.
 a. is wanting b. wants c. wanted d. will want

B

Translation

Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d.

Traveling abroad is not an aim in itself but it helps us communicate with other countries and peoples.

- إن السفر للخارج ليس هدفا في حد ذاته، ولكنه يساعدنا على التواصل مع الشعوب الأخرى.
- إن السفر للخارج ليس هدفا في حد ذاته، ولكنه يساعدنا على التواصل مع الدول الأخرى.
- إن السفر للخارج يعتبر هدفا في حد ذاته، وقد يساعدنا على التواصل مع الدول والشعوب الأخرى.
- إن السفر للخارج ليس هدفا في حد ذاته، ولكنه يساعدنا على التواصل مع الدول والشعوب الأخرى.

C

Writing

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- My father doesn't like eating pizza. (enjoys)

- Zeinab thinks the homework is difficult. (seems)

A

Vocabulary & Structure

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

- "A good teacher can encourage students to do their best." "**Encourage**" here is an antonym of
 a. discourage b. inspire c. deter d. urge e. support
- "The app lets users create customized workout plans " "**Customized**" here is closest in meaning to
 a. personalized b. ordinary c. difficult d. bespoke e. public

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The students felt after three long exams in one day.
 a. intense b. overwhelmed c. confident d. encouraged
- means a period of time spent doing one activity.
 a. Deadline b. Workshop c. Session d. Bowl
- means a healthy emotional state.
 a. Balance b. Stress c. Pressure d. Failure

B

Translation

Q Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d.

الهوايات المفيدة تساعد الشباب على تنمية المهارات وبناء الشخصية وتحقيق التوازن النفسى فى الحياة اليومية الصحية.

- Hobbies only entertain people without developing skills or supporting mental health.
- Hobbies make young people waste time and ignore skills, personality, and mental balance.
- Useful activities stop young people from building character or improving their daily lives.
- Useful hobbies help young people develop skills, build character, and achieve psychological balance in healthy daily life.

C

Writing

Write a review of about (180) words about

'Spending your free time wisely'

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A

Vocabulary & Structure

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- "A helmet is essential for safe cycling." "Essential" here is a synonym of
a. drowsy b. crucial c. optional d. smooth e. vital
- "Jury gave a positive answer and encouraged the team." "Positive" here is a synonym of
a. hopeful b. optimistic c. strict d. slippery e. resistant

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- helps cool your body when it is too hot.
a. Sweat b. Joint c. Kidney d. Brush
- A is one of a pair of organs that clean the blood and produce urine.
a. kidney b. stomach c. joint d. bone
- Did your grandfather in a bank when he was younger?
a. to work b. use to work c. used to work d. working

B

Translation

Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d.

The greatest barrier to success is the fear of failure. However, failure is the first step on the road towards real success.

- أكبر عائق أمام النجاح هو الخوف من الفشل، ومع ذلك فإن الفشل هو الخطوة الأولى على طريق النجاح.
- أكبر حاجز أمام النجاح هو الخوف من الفشل، ومع ذلك فإن المحاولة هي الخطوة الأولى على طريق النجاح.
- أكبر عائق أمام النجاح هو الخوف من الفشل، ومع ذلك فإن الفشل ثم النجاح هو الخطوة الأولى على طريق النجاح الحقيقي.
- أكبر عائق أمام الفشل هو الخوف من النجاح، ومع ذلك فإن الفشل هو الخطوة الأولى على طريق النجاح الحقيقي.

C

Writing

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- As a student, I always got up early. (used)
.....
- Every night during our childhood, our mother read us a bedtime story. (would)
.....

A

Vocabulary & Structure

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

- "Because of her irregular attendance, Jory missed many lessons." "**Attendance**" here is an antonym of
 a. presence b. nonattendance c. absence d. participation e. registration
- "Water is an important resource for life." "**Resource**" here can be replaced by
 a. direction b. disappointment c. command d. supply e. asset

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- It is a positive quality to stay even in hard times; hope does matter.
 a. apologetic b. punctual c. optimistic d. spontaneous
- means arriving or happening exactly at the arranged or expected time.
 a. Punctual b. Spontaneous c. Optimistic d. Consistent
- I'm sorry, I can't go to your party. I to the dentist this afternoon.
 a. am going b. will go c. will have gone d. going

B

Translation

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d.

يعتمد النقل والكثير من الصناعات بشكل كامل على النفط، لذا نحن بحاجة إلى البحث عن مصادر بديلة من الطاقة المتجددة لأن النفط سينفذ في المستقبل.

- Transportation and a lot of factories completely reliant on natural gas so we need to look for alternative sources of renewable energy because oil will run out in the future.
- Flights and many industries completely reliant on oil so we need to look for alternative sources of nonrenewable energy because oil will run out in the future.
- Transportation and many industrialists completely rely on oil so we need to look for alternative sources of renewable energy because oil will run away in the future.
- Transportation and a lot of industries completely depend on oil so we need to look for alternative sources of renewable energy because oil will run out in the future.

C

Writing

Write a formal apology letter of about (180 words) to a neighbor apologizing for bad behavior from your little brothers and their dog. Your name is Ali.

"Your neighbor's name is Hany."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....